

Making Everything Easier!™

Microsoft®

# SharePoint 2013

FOR  
**DUMMIES®**  
A Wiley Brand

## Learn to:

- Get up to speed with SharePoint 2013 and take advantage of new features
- Set up and effectively manage your SharePoint site
- Use SharePoint in the cloud with Office 365 and SharePoint Online
- Leverage SharePoint capabilities to drive business value

**Ken Withee**

Author of SharePoint 2010 Development  
For Dummies





# *Microsoft* *SharePoint® 2013*

FOR  
**DUMMIES®**

A Wiley Brand

**by Ken Withee**

FOR  
**DUMMIES®**

A Wiley Brand

**Microsoft® SharePoint® 2013 For Dummies®**

Published by

**John Wiley & Sons, Inc.**

111 River Street

Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774

[www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com)

Copyright © 2013 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

**Trademarks:** Wiley, the Wiley logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com, Making Everything Easier, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. Microsoft and SharePoint are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

**LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ. FULFILLMENT OF EACH COUPON OFFER IS THE SOLE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE OFFEROR.**

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit [www.wiley.com/techsupport](http://www.wiley.com/techsupport).

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at <http://booksupport.wiley.com>. For more information about Wiley products, visit [www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com).

Library of Congress Control Number: 2013933951

ISBN 978-1-118-51071-1 (pbk); ISBN 978-1-118-64528-4 (ebk);  
ISBN 978-1-118-64525-3 (ebk); ISBN 978-1-118-60383-3 (ebk)

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

## *About the Author*

**Ken Withee** has been a Microsoft SharePoint consultant for many years. He currently writes for the Microsoft TechNet and MSDN sites and is President of Portal Integrators, LLC ([www.portalint.com](http://www.portalint.com)). Portal Integrators is a software development and services company focused on developing world-class business solutions for the SharePoint platform. He lives with his wife Rosemarie in Seattle, Washington and is the author or coauthor of many other books, including *Microsoft Office 365 For Dummies*, *SharePoint 2010 Development For Dummies*, *Microsoft Business Intelligence For Dummies* (all published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.), as well as *Professional Microsoft SQL Server 2011 Reporting Services* and *Professional Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Reporting Services* (both published by WROX). Ken has also written a number of other published works in journals and magazines.

Ken earned a Master of Science degree in Computer Science studying under Dr. Edward Lank at San Francisco State University. Their work has been published in the LNCS journals and was the focus of a presentation at the IASTED conference in Phoenix. Their work has also been presented at various other Human Computer Interaction conferences throughout the world.

Ken has more than 13 years of professional computer and management experience. He is a Microsoft Certified Technology Specialist and is certified in SharePoint, SQL Server, and .NET.



## Dedication

I dedicate this book to two people. The first is my grandma, Tiny Withee, who turns 100 years old this year. The second is my wife and best friend, Rosemarie Withee, who encouraged me daily throughout this time-intensive process. I owe her a rain check for all of the late nights and weekends this book consumed, and I hope to make it up to her over the rest of our lives. I love you!

## Author's Acknowledgments

I would like to acknowledge my grandma Tiny Withee, who turns 100 years old this year and is still going strong. I would also like to acknowledge my wife Rosemarie Withee, mother Maggie Blair, father Ken Withee, sister Kate Henneinke, and parents-in-law Alfonso and Lourdes Supetran and family.

I would like to thank Elczar Adame, SharePoint Server MVP, for all of his help and patience. Elczar is truly a master at SharePoint and I am thankful for his patience as I peppered him with questions throughout writing this book.

An extraordinary amount of thanks to Katie Mohr, Jean Nelson, Mike Talley, and the rest of the *For Dummies* team for providing more support than I ever thought possible. It is truly amazing how much work goes into a single book.

Special thanks to my leadership team at Microsoft — David Maguire, Cheryl Jenkins, and Shelley Benson — for letting me take on this important project. The *For Dummies* brand is a place I have always gone to understand technology at a fundamental level, and I appreciate Microsoft’s support on this project.

And of course, last, but definitely not least, thank you to Vanessa Williams for shepherding the *SharePoint For Dummies* series to this point and her assistance in passing this honorable torch to me for this book and into the future.

## **Publisher's Acknowledgments**

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments at <http://dummies.custhelp.com>. For other comments, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

### ***Acquisitions and Editorial***

**Project Editor:** Jean Nelson

**Acquisitions Editor:** Katie Mohr

**Copy Editor:** Jean Nelson

**Technical Editor:** Mike Talley

**Editorial Manager:** Jodi Jensen

**Editorial Assistant:** Annie Sullivan

**Sr. Editorial Assistant:** Cherie Case

**Cover Photo:** © René Mansi / iStockphoto.com

### ***Composition Services***

**Project Coordinator:** Katherine Crocker

**Layout and Graphics:** Jennifer Creasey,  
Joyce Haughey

**Proofreader:** Christine Sabooni

**Indexer:** Potomac Indexing, LLC

---

## **Publishing and Editorial for Technology Dummies**

**Richard Swadley**, Vice President and Executive Group Publisher

**Andy Cummings**, Vice President and Publisher

**Mary Bednarek**, Executive Acquisitions Director

**Mary C. Corder**, Editorial Director

## **Publishing for Consumer Dummies**

**Kathleen Nebenhaus**, Vice President and Executive Publisher

## **Composition Services**

**Debbie Stailey**, Director of Composition Services

# Contents at a Glance

---

<b><i>Introduction .....</i></b>	<b>1</b>
<b><i>Part I: Getting Started with SharePoint 2013.....</i></b>	<b>7</b>
Chapter 1: Getting to Know SharePoint 2013 .....	9
Chapter 2: Introducing SharePoint Online.....	23
Chapter 3: Wrangling SharePoint Functionality.....	31
<b><i>Part II: Diving Headfirst into SharePoint 2013 .....</i></b>	<b>37</b>
Chapter 4: Getting to Know the Team Site .....	39
Chapter 5: Working with Web Pages .....	51
Chapter 6: Working with Web Parts .....	61
Chapter 7: Getting Familiar with Apps .....	73
Chapter 8: Creating a Custom App .....	89
Chapter 9: Viewing Data in Your Apps.....	107
<b><i>Part III: Becoming a SharePoint Administrator.....</i></b>	<b>125</b>
Chapter 10: Getting Familiar with Site Settings .....	127
Chapter 11: Configuring Site Navigation .....	139
Chapter 12: Understanding SharePoint Features .....	149
Chapter 13: Changing the Look and Feel of Your Site.....	153
Chapter 14: Securing Your SharePoint Site .....	167
<b><i>Part IV: Getting Social and Going Mobile .....</i></b>	<b>185</b>
Chapter 15: Taking Control of Your Personal Profile and Content .....	187
Chapter 16: Getting Social .....	199
Chapter 17: Taking SharePoint Mobile.....	223
<b><i>Part V: Managing Enterprise Content .....</i></b>	<b>229</b>
Chapter 18: Sharing and Approving Content .....	231
Chapter 19: Finding What You Need with Search.....	257
Chapter 20: Archiving Documents and Records.....	273
Chapter 21: Gaining Total Control with Workflow.....	285

<b><i>Part VI: Office 365 and SharePoint Online .....</i></b>	<b>303</b>
Chapter 22: Creating a Public Website in SharePoint Online.....	305
Chapter 23: Creating a Client Portal in SharePoint Online .....	317
<b><i>Part VII: The Part of Tens .....</i></b>	<b>327</b>
Chapter 24: Ten Hot SharePoint 2013 Topics on the Microsoft TechNet Website .....	329
Chapter 25: Ten Ways to Maintain Control with Governance.....	335
Chapter 26: Ten Ways to Become a SharePoint Guru.....	341
<b><i>Index .....</i></b>	<b>347</b>

# Table of Contents

---

<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>1</b>
Who Should Read This Book.....	2
How to Use This Book.....	2
Foolish Assumptions.....	3
How This Book Is Organized .....	3
Part I: Getting Started with SharePoint 2013 .....	4
Part II: Diving Headfirst into SharePoint 2103 .....	4
Part III: Becoming a SharePoint Administrator .....	4
Part IV: Getting Social and Going Mobile.....	4
Part V: Managing Enterprise Content.....	4
Part VI: Office 365 and SharePoint Online .....	5
Part VII: The Part of Tens.....	5
Icons Used in This Book .....	5
Where to Go from Here.....	6
 <b>Part I: Getting Started with SharePoint 2013 .....</b>	<b>7</b>
 <b>Chapter 1: Getting to Know SharePoint 2013.....</b>	<b>9</b>
Wrapping Your Head around SharePoint.....	9
No, really, what is SharePoint?.....	10
A Microsoft product .....	11
Many different SharePoint definitions .....	12
More than a website .....	14
Getting Familiar with SharePoint Building Blocks.....	15
Taking a Peek at a SharePoint Site .....	16
Getting Familiar with SharePoint Terminology .....	17
Branding.....	18
Business Connectivity Services .....	18
Business intelligence .....	18
eDiscovery .....	19
Identity management.....	19
Mobile.....	20
Records management and compliance.....	20
Search.....	21
Social .....	21
Web content management.....	22



<b>Chapter 2: Introducing SharePoint Online.....</b>	<b>.23</b>
Getting Familiar with SharePoint Online .....	24
Understanding Why SharePoint Online Has Become So Popular .....	25
Differences between SharePoint Online and SharePoint On Premise ....	26
Exploring the Benefits of SharePoint Online.....	26
Data center and hardware .....	27
Software platform .....	28
Backup, redundancy, and security.....	29
<b>Chapter 3: Wrangling SharePoint Functionality.....</b>	<b>.31</b>
Coming to Terms with Website Templates .....	31
Show Me the Apps .....	33
Working with Web Pages .....	33
Wiki page.....	34
Web Part page .....	34
Publishing page.....	34
Understanding Web Parts.....	34
Digging into SharePoint Features .....	35
SharePoint Tools .....	36
Integrating with Office 2013.....	36
<b>Part II: Diving Headfirst into SharePoint 2013.....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Chapter 4: Getting to Know the Team Site.....</b>	<b>.39</b>
Creating a SharePoint Site .....	39
Requesting a SharePoint Site .....	41
Viewing Your Team Site in the Browser .....	43
Accessing Team Sites in Office 365 .....	44
Introducing the SharePoint Team Site .....	46
Uploading documents .....	47
Sharing your site.....	48
Getting organized.....	48
Changing the look and logo of your site .....	49
Staying in sync and collaborating.....	50
<b>Chapter 5: Working with Web Pages .....</b>	<b>.51</b>
Introducing the Ribbon.....	51
Understanding SharePoint Web Pages .....	52
Choosing a wiki page .....	52
Choosing a Web Part page.....	53
Choosing a Wiki Content page over a Web Part page or vice versa .....	53

Creating a New Wiki Content Page .....	55
Adding media.....	56
Managing wiki pages.....	58
Categorizing your wiki pages .....	59
Creating a New Web Part Page.....	60
<b>Chapter 6: Working with Web Parts .....</b>	<b>61</b>
Adding a Web Part to Your Page .....	61
Choosing the Right Web Part .....	63
Changing Web Part Properties.....	67
Reviewing Web Part properties .....	67
Editing Web Part properties.....	68
Deleting or minimizing Web Parts .....	69
Connecting Web Parts.....	69
<b>Chapter 7: Getting Familiar with Apps .....</b>	<b>73</b>
Introducing SharePoint Apps.....	73
Adding Apps to Your Site .....	74
Accessing App Settings.....	76
Configuring the General Settings .....	78
Changing the title, description, and navigation.....	79
Versioning settings .....	79
Advanced settings .....	82
Validation settings .....	86
Rating settings.....	87
Audience Targeting settings.....	87
Form settings.....	87
<b>Chapter 8: Creating a Custom App .....</b>	<b>89</b>
Planning Your Custom App .....	89
Creating a Custom App .....	90
Adding Columns to Your App .....	91
Getting to know column types .....	94
Validating data entry .....	96
Working with the Title Column.....	98
Importing a Spreadsheet as an App .....	100
Taking Your App to the Next Level: Calculated and Lookup Columns ..	101
Creating a calculated column.....	102
Using a lookup column.....	103
Downloading Apps from the SharePoint Store .....	104
<b>Chapter 9: Viewing Data in Your Apps .....</b>	<b>107</b>
Viewing the View .....	107
Getting to Know Your View Formats.....	109

Creating a Standard View .....	109
Choosing columns for your view .....	112
Filtering apps with views .....	113
Grouping results .....	114
Quickly edit app data with Quick Edit .....	116
Choosing a display style .....	117
Managing App Data in a Datasheet View .....	117
Using Ad Hoc Views .....	119
Creating a Calendar View .....	120
Displaying Tasks in a Gantt View .....	120
Managing Existing Views .....	121
Modifying your views .....	121
Setting the default view.....	122
Other SharePoint built-in views .....	122
Displaying Views via Web Parts.....	123

## ***Part III: Becoming a SharePoint Administrator ..... 125***

### **Chapter 10: Getting Familiar with Site Settings..... 127**

Finding Site Settings .....	127
Digging into Site Settings .....	129
Users and Permissions.....	129
Web Designer Galleries .....	130
Site Administration.....	132
Search.....	133
Look and Feel .....	134
Site Actions .....	136
Site Collection Administration .....	137

### **Chapter 11: Configuring Site Navigation ..... 139**

Understanding How to Configure SharePoint Navigation .....	139
Configuring SharePoint Navigation .....	140
Configuring global navigation .....	141
Configuring current navigation .....	143
Configuring Static Navigation.....	144
Navigation Using Web Parts .....	146
Understanding Managed Navigation.....	147

### **Chapter 12: Understanding SharePoint Features ..... 149**

Getting a High-Level View of SharePoint Features .....	149
Turning On and Off Features.....	150
Exploring Common Features.....	151
Extending SharePoint with Features .....	152

---

<b>Chapter 13: Changing the Look and Feel of Your Site . . . . .</b>	<b>153</b>
The Look and Feel Section of Site Settings.....	154
Changing Your Site Icon .....	154
Changing the Look of Your Site .....	156
A note on fonts .....	158
A word on usability.....	159
The benefits of composed looks .....	160
Changing Team Site Navigation .....	160
Going global with the top link bar .....	161
Staying local with Quick Launch.....	163
<b>Chapter 14: Securing Your SharePoint Site. . . . .</b>	<b>167</b>
Using SharePoint Groups.....	168
Adding users to a group.....	168
Understanding the permission structure .....	170
Securing a site collection .....	171
Securing Apps, Folders, Documents, and Items .....	173
Creating unique permissions for a subsite.....	173
Removing existing permissions .....	174
Creating unique permissions for an app or document .....	175
Managing permissions scenarios.....	176
Viewing a group's permissions .....	177
Checking a user's permissions.....	178
Granting Administrative Access .....	180
Viewing Site Permissions.....	181
Managing SharePoint Designer Access.....	184
<b>Part IV: Getting Social and Going Mobile ..... . . . . .</b>	<b>185</b>
<b>Chapter 15: Taking Control of Your Personal Profile and Content . . . . .</b>	<b>187</b>
Finding Your My Site Hubs and Profile .....	187
Aggregating SharePoint Activity with Your Newsfeed.....	188
Saving Stuff with SkyDrive.....	189
Adding documents to your SkyDrive .....	190
Following a document from another site.....	191
Tracking Your Favorite Sites .....	192
Reaching Out with a Blog .....	194
Expressing Yourself with Your Profile .....	196
Creating a holistic profile experience .....	196
Filling in your profile information.....	196

<b>Chapter 16: Getting Social .....</b>	<b>199</b>
Sharing and Tracking Using the Ribbon .....	200
Tagging for Yourself and Others .....	200
Information Sharing with Blogs and Wikis .....	202
Creating a blog site .....	203
Posting to a blog .....	204
Using wikis to collaborate and coauthor .....	205
Communicating with Discussion Boards.....	208
Creating a Discussion Board app.....	208
Posting and replying to a subject .....	209
Connecting with Others Using Feeds, Microblogs, and RSS .....	210
Staying connected with feeds and microblogs .....	211
Viewing RSS feeds .....	212
Reading RSS feeds with Outlook .....	214
Displaying RSS feeds of other sites.....	214
Alert Me .....	217
Staying in Sync with Lync .....	221
<b>Chapter 17: Taking SharePoint Mobile .....</b>	<b>223</b>
Viewing SharePoint on a Mobile Device .....	223
Creating Views for Small Screens .....	224
Targeting Devices Using Channels .....	225
Pushing Content to a Windows Phone.....	225
Keeping Track of Locations.....	226
Viewing Office Documents on Your Phone or Tablet .....	226
<b>Part V: Managing Enterprise Content .....</b>	<b>229</b>
<b>Chapter 18: Sharing and Approving Content .....</b>	<b>231</b>
Sharing Your Documents.....	231
Getting Your Documents into an App.....	232
Uploading a single document .....	233
Uploading multiple documents .....	234
Uploading documents into a folder .....	237
Working with Documents .....	240
Using the ellipsis .....	240
Editing a document's properties .....	241
Checking documents in and out .....	242
Sending a link to your document .....	245
Viewing documents in the browser.....	246
Using Office 2013.....	247
Recovering Deleted Documents .....	248

Configuring Content Approval .....	250
Turning on content approval .....	251
Identifying approvers .....	253
Casting an approving eye.....	253
Disapproving: Not just for stern parents .....	255
Getting alerts on approval/rejection status .....	255
<b>Chapter 19: Finding What You Need with Search . . . . .</b>	<b>257</b>
Understanding How SharePoint Search Works .....	257
Searching for Content .....	258
Searching for a string using quotation marks .....	259
Wildcard searches .....	259
Including and excluding terms.....	260
Building compound search queries using Boolean operators....	260
Getting fancy with the parentheses.....	261
Finding terms in proximity .....	261
Same meaning, different terms .....	262
Viewing and Refining Search Results .....	263
Making Search Your Users' Best Friend .....	264
Removing Content from Search Results .....	269
Reviewing Search Analytics .....	270
Adding a Search Center Site.....	270
<b>Chapter 20: Archiving Documents and Records . . . . .</b>	<b>273</b>
Defining the Terms .....	273
Creating Information Management Policies.....	274
Setting Up a Records Center .....	277
Using the Content Organizer.....	279
Managing Records in Place .....	281
Placing Records on Litigation Hold.....	283
<b>Chapter 21: Gaining Total Control with Workflow . . . . .</b>	<b>285</b>
Getting Up to Speed with SharePoint Workflow .....	285
Understanding Workflow in SharePoint 2013 .....	286
Getting Up to Speed on SharePoint Designer.....	288
Connecting to a SharePoint site.....	288
Creating a workflow .....	290
Rediscovering the Out-of-the-Box Approval Workflow.....	292
Deciding whether to use content approval	
or approval workflows.....	292
Configuring the approval workflows .....	293
Setting up an approval workflow .....	293
Approval workflow options .....	296
Initiating a workflow .....	297
Approving an item .....	298
Checking the status of an approval workflow .....	300

***Part VI: Office 365 and SharePoint Online ..... 303*****Chapter 22: Creating a Public Website in SharePoint Online ..... 305**

Creating Your New Website .....	305
Using a Vanity Domain Name.....	308
Updating and Adding Web Pages .....	310
Reviewing what you get with your new site .....	310
Adding a new page.....	311
Editing your pages .....	313
Updating page properties .....	314
Changing the Site's Look and Feel.....	315

**Chapter 23: Creating a Client Portal in SharePoint Online ..... 317**

Planning for Your Client Portal.....	317
Locking Down the Portal .....	320
Managing User Accounts .....	321
Launching Your Portal.....	325

***Part VII: The Part of Tens ..... 327*****Chapter 24: Ten Hot SharePoint 2013 Topics  
on the Microsoft TechNet Website..... 329**

SharePoint for IT Pros.....	329
Recently Published Content.....	329
Explore SharePoint 2013.....	330
Plan for SharePoint.....	330
SharePoint Development .....	330
Install and Configure SharePoint .....	331
Operate and Maintain .....	332
Using SharePoint .....	332
Business Intelligence.....	332
Workflow Resource Center.....	333

**Chapter 25: Ten Ways to Maintain Control with Governance ..... 335**

Failure Is Not an Option (Neither Is Looking Away and Whistling) .....	335
Getting Executive Buy-In and Support .....	336
Building an Effective Governance Group.....	336
Finding the Right Level .....	337
Yours, Mine, Ours: Deciding Who Owns What .....	337
(Re)Visiting Social Networking Policies .....	337
Design and Branding .....	338
Content Management .....	338
Reusing Web Parts.....	339
Keeping Things Current: Web Operations Management .....	339

<b>Chapter 26: Ten Ways to Become a SharePoint Guru .....</b>	<b>341</b>
Getting Information from the Horse's Mouth .....	341
Reading SharePoint Blogs.....	343
Finding Local User Groups .....	343
Building a Virtual Lab.....	344
Starting with a Good Foundation.....	345
Borrowing from Others.....	345
Getting Certified.....	345
Taking a Peek under the Covers .....	346
Digging Deeper under the Covers.....	346
Deconstructing a SharePoint Site.....	346
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>347</b>



# Introduction

---

A centralized web portal has become a necessity in organizations both small and large. An integrated portal provides efficiencies and advantages not seen since the adoption of computers and networks. The value of getting everyone in the organization on the same page and working in unison is instrumental to success. Modern organizations have had to adapt, and the people within them have had to adapt as well. As technology giants fought to get their web portal products to market, one platform has emerged a clear winner: Microsoft SharePoint.

I wish I could say that I foresaw the success of SharePoint back when I first started working with it as a consultant. The fact is that when I was a new consultant, I simply worked on whatever projects were selling. Nearly a decade ago, I stumbled into a small SharePoint project and still haven't emerged from the SharePoint world.

SharePoint 2013 is the latest version of the product and has more fanfare attached to it than any previous version. Microsoft products tend to get better over time. (Some of my friends won't buy a Microsoft product until it's the third version or later.) SharePoint 2013 won't disappoint; it's a very mature and polished product.



The release of SharePoint 2013 ushers in a new strategy for SharePoint Online. No longer do you need to wait a couple of years to use the latest version of SharePoint in the Microsoft cloud. SharePoint Online uses SharePoint 2013, and everything you read about in this book directly relates to SharePoint Online.

If you're already familiar with SharePoint, then this latest version of the product will be familiar, and many of the annoying and painful bugs and interfaces of previous versions have finally been worked out. You no longer need a highly paid consultant to walk you through each aspect of every feature. In a nutshell, things are finally starting to get intuitive. (Although, if you need a consultant, I can recommend a good one.)

Whether you need to create a new website for your team, a new app to store content, or a page to approve and publish critical information, SharePoint 2013 has a solution. SharePoint 2013 is intended to be a self-service environment, and this book helps you get the most out of the platform.

I'm not saying that SharePoint is always easy; in fact, like any enterprise software system, you can expect some frustration. However, if your organization uses SharePoint 2013 or SharePoint Online, you have a wealth of solutions to solve your particular needs.

## *Who Should Read This Book*

This book is intended for anyone who encounters SharePoint or is curious about using the product. SharePoint is a vast product with many nooks and crannies, and no single book can cover all the pieces. This book is designed to provide an introduction and overview of the platform. It shows you how to get the most out of the product, whether you have never used it before or are deeply familiar with specific aspects it.

Others who may benefit from this book include

- ✓ **Developers:** This isn't a development book, but the best SharePoint developers are those who understand the product. The exciting aspect of SharePoint development is that you don't need to write programming code to develop business solutions in SharePoint. If you can work with a web browser to develop a web presence in a site like Facebook or LinkedIn, then you can develop and administer your own SharePoint site.
- ✓ **IT professionals:** This isn't a book that explains how to set up a SharePoint server farm. However, this book helps you understand what features your end users may want to see in a SharePoint farm that you architect or support.
- ✓ **Managers:** If you manage a department or business unit, you need to understand how to get the most out of SharePoint. If your company has made significant investments in SharePoint deployment, it'd be a shame if you didn't know how to leverage that investment.

## *How to Use This Book*

This book is a *reference*: You don't have to read it cover to cover. Because many of the features in SharePoint are dependent on other features, I point you to related chapters in the book when appropriate.

## Foolish Assumptions

Because SharePoint is such a huge topic, I have to make some assumptions about your configuration and starting knowledge, such as

- ✓ **You have access to some version of SharePoint 2013.** If you don't have access to SharePoint, then sign up for SharePoint Online. After the free trial period, it costs as little as \$5 a month. If you want to see all the specific things that come with the On Premises version of the product, then there is a trial license available for 30 days. Just download it from the Microsoft download center and get started.
- ✓ **You're a contributor or administrator.** Of course, many of the scenarios in this book require only that you be a contributor. So long as you know who your administrator is, you can ask that person for elevated permissions. And if you want to be master of your own SharePoint universe as an administrator, you can sign up for SharePoint Online and control all aspects of your SharePoint environment in a fairly intuitive interface.
- ✓ **Ideally, you have a sandbox or test environment where you can try different scenarios.** It isn't the best strategy to lock down security on your Human Resources site only to find out nobody in your entire organization can get to their pay stub. You need a test environment or test site where you can play around with SharePoint, and then take that knowledge to your department site. Luckily, if you have access to SharePoint, you have your own personal My Site that you can explore. Another alternative is to use SharePoint Online (yes, you can buy a single license).
- ✓ **Many of the scenarios in this book assume your implementation includes My Site.** Unfortunately, many companies try to avoid using this feature. In SharePoint 2013, My Site is an integral component for many features. I strongly advise utilizing My Site.

## How This Book Is Organized

This book groups related SharePoint topics in parts. Each part covers a different aspect of getting the most out of SharePoint.

## *Part I: Getting Started with SharePoint 2013*

This part of the book covers all the fundamentals of SharePoint. This material covers the basics such as understanding the technology stack that makes up SharePoint, getting familiar with SharePoint Online and the cloud, and wrapping your head around the vast features in SharePoint.

## *Part II: Diving Headfirst into SharePoint 2103*

In Part II, I show you how to use SharePoint. You discover how to create a site, add web pages and web parts, and create and customize apps.

## *Part III: Becoming a SharePoint Administrator*

In this part, I discuss how SharePoint administration is accomplished right from the web browser and how most people are administrators in some fashion. Topics include gaining familiarity with the Site Settings page, configuring site navigation and SharePoint features, and making your site your own by changing the look and feel.

## *Part IV: Getting Social and Going Mobile*

In this part, I show you how to use SharePoint to connect with others and take SharePoint on the road. You find out how to build your visibility using your personal profile; how to reach out and connect with others using microblogging, feeds, alerts, mentions, ratings, and likes; and how to use SharePoint from your mobile device (smartphone or tablet).

## *Part V: Managing Enterprise Content*

Managing content is at the heart of a modern organization. In this part, I walk you through sharing and approving content, finding content with search, and archiving documents and records. Finally, I also show you how to use workflow to integrate and optimize your business processes.

## Part VI: Office 365 and SharePoint Online

In Part VI, I cover the cloud version of SharePoint that is part of a bundle of cloud products called Office 365. SharePoint Online is an exciting offering because Microsoft handles the infrastructure and you can simply sign up and begin using SharePoint over the Internet. In addition, SharePoint Online is as inexpensive as \$4 per month! In this part, you see how to create a public-facing website and a partner-only site, all using SharePoint Online.

The important thing to keep in mind is that SharePoint Online and SharePoint 2013 are the same thing. SharePoint Online is just Microsoft hosting SharePoint for you. When you use SharePoint Online, you're using SharePoint 2013, and so everything discussed throughout this book is relevant.

## Part VII: The Part of Tens

In this part, I share some parting words of wisdom in the form of top ten lists: Ten ways to govern SharePoint so that it doesn't turn into the Wild West of web portals, and ten ways to further your SharePoint journey and become a guru.

## Icons Used in This Book



You find a handful of icons in this book, and here's what they mean:

Tips point out a handy shortcut, or they help you understand something important to SharePoint.



This icon marks something to remember, such as how you handle a particularly tricky part of SharePoint configuration.



This icon is my chance to share with you details about the inner workings of SharePoint. Most of the information you find here pertains to some aspect of SharePoint that requires configuration at the server. That means you can point out the stuff beside this icon to IT and ask IT to make SharePoint do that.



Although the Warning icon appears rarely, when you need to be wary of a problem or common pitfall, this icon lets you know.

## *Where to Go from Here*

All right, you're all set and ready to jump into this book. You can jump in anywhere you like — the book was written to allow you to do just that. But if you want to get the full story from the beginning, jump to Chapter 1 — that's where all the action starts. (If you are already familiar with SharePoint you might want to flip ahead to Chapter 2, where you can get your hands dirty with creating a site and developing it to fit your needs.)

Occasionally, we have updates to our technology books. If this book does have technical updates, they will be posted at [www.dummies.com/go/sharepoint2013fdupdates](http://www.dummies.com/go/sharepoint2013fdupdates).

# Part I



Visit [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com) for great Dummies content online.

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Get familiar with SharePoint as a product and platform.  
SharePoint is a complicated beast and most people use only a smidgen of it.
- ✓ Dive into a quick intro into what makes up the SharePoint Online product and get a handle on the buzzwords around SharePoint.
- ✓ Get your head around the vastness of SharePoint by exploring some of its functionality at a high level.

## Chapter 1

# Getting to Know SharePoint 2013

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Gaining a general understanding of SharePoint
- ▶ Exploring how the product is put together
- ▶ Getting familiar with SharePoint concepts
- ▶ Seeing how SharePoint works at a fundamental level

**W**hen I first heard about SharePoint, I just didn't get it. What the heck was this new thing called SharePoint? I knew it was a Microsoft product that was supposed to do lots of things, but I just couldn't figure out exactly what it was or how to get started working with it.

Well, after years of working with SharePoint, I have finally figured a few things out. SharePoint is indeed a Microsoft product and it is definitely capable of doing lots of things. In fact, SharePoint can do more things than you could ever imagine. And therein lies the problem. If you ask ten people what SharePoint does, you're very likely to get ten different answers. SharePoint has such a depth to it that it's hard to get your head around it.

In this chapter, I help you see the SharePoint big picture. You discover how SharePoint works and gain understanding on exactly what the term *SharePoint* means. This chapter peels away the mystery and shows you SharePoint at a basic level. After all, you need to understand SharePoint at a basic level before you can dive into its advanced functionality.

## *Wrapping Your Head around SharePoint*

At a basic level, SharePoint is a *web-based software platform*, meaning that SharePoint is software designed for you to interact with using a web browser.



In past versions of SharePoint, you really needed to use Microsoft Internet Explorer to work with SharePoint. Times have changed though, and you can now use most any web browser to work with SharePoint.

## No, really, what is SharePoint?

Maybe you're a whiz at Word or a spreadsheet jockey with Excel. Going forward, you're going to have to be just as good at SharePoint to get the most out of your desktop Office client applications. Microsoft continues to integrate functionality that used to be locked up in client applications, or not available at all, with SharePoint. For example, using SharePoint 2013 with Office 2013, you can create an online gallery of PowerPoint slides, display interactive spreadsheets in web pages, or reuse information from your company's databases in Word documents. You can even use Visio 2013 to automate your business processes using SharePoint.

Officially, Microsoft represents SharePoint 2013 as a “business collaboration platform for the enterprise and web.” *SharePoint* is a platform from Microsoft that allows businesses to meet their diverse needs in the following domains:

- ✓ **Collaboration:** Use SharePoint’s collaboration sites for activities, such as managing projects or coordinating a request for proposal.
- ✓ **Social networking:** If you work in a large company, you can use SharePoint as a social network for the Enterprise experience to help you track coworkers and locate people in expertise networks.
- ✓ **Information portals and public websites:** With SharePoint’s web content management features, you can create useful self-service internal portals and intranets, or you can create visually appealing websites that are actually easy for your business users to maintain.
- ✓ **Enterprise content management:** SharePoint offers excellent document- and record-management capabilities, including extensive support for metadata and customized search experiences.
- ✓ **Business intelligence:** SharePoint is an ideal platform for providing entrée into your organization’s business analysis assets. You can use insightful dashboards that allow users to get the big picture at a glance and then drill down to get more detail.
- ✓ **Business applications:** Use SharePoint to host sophisticated business applications, integrate business processes’ backend databases and your SharePoint content, or simply use SharePoint as the means to present access to your applications.

The functionality I discuss in the preceding list is delivered by two editions of the product and one online cloud service:

- ✓ **SharePoint Foundation 2013** is the underlying software platform that delivers all the building-block functionality of SharePoint. That includes apps, web pages, websites, and alerts. SharePoint Foundation is licensed as a Windows Server component. In other words, as part of a properly

licensed Windows Server, you also get all the functionality of SharePoint Foundation 2013.

- ✓ **SharePoint Server 2013** is a set of applications that uses the building blocks of SharePoint Foundation 2013 to deliver all the functionality mentioned in the previous bulleted list. When using SharePoint internally, you have at least a standard license that grants you access to use search, portals, social networking, and some content management features. You also need an enterprise license if you intend to use SharePoint's advanced content management, business intelligence, and business application features.
- ✓ **SharePoint Online** is a cloud-based service offered by Microsoft that allows you to create much the same SharePoint experience as you can with SharePoint installed on a local server, but you don't have to install and maintain it. It can come bundled with an Office 365 monthly subscription, giving you access to hosted e-mail, calendaring, and conferencing with Microsoft Exchange and Microsoft Lync, or you can buy a SharePoint Online monthly subscription on its own.

Additional licensing is required to use SharePoint in Internet scenarios unless you have SharePoint Online, which comes with a built-in, Internet-facing website.

You can approach SharePoint with the following model in mind:

- ✓ **Product:** SharePoint is a product with a lot of features, even in SharePoint Foundation. Explore how SharePoint works without any customization when you're deciding how to approach a solution, and then decide if you want to customize it for your specific needs.
- ✓ **Platform:** SharePoint provides everything you need to deliver a robust business solution. It provides the infrastructure (the “plumbing”) required to deliver web-based solutions.
- ✓ **Toolkit:** Finally, SharePoint is a set of components and controls that you can mix and match to provide a solution. You can create sites, pages, and apps, all without leaving the comfort of your web browser.

## A Microsoft product

SharePoint is a software product that Microsoft develops and sells to customers. As you see in Chapter 2, SharePoint can be purchased in a couple of different ways. Regardless of how you purchase and use SharePoint, you can be rest assured that your organization is paying Microsoft a licensing fee. In other words, SharePoint isn't free.

In the past, SharePoint had a very large cost for an organization wishing to adopt it. In addition to buying all of the licenses for your organization, you also need an IT team to install and manage SharePoint. For this reason, SharePoint used to be considered enterprise-class software because only large organizations could afford it. This is all changing though, and Microsoft now offers SharePoint Online for as little as \$4 per user per month.



Microsoft also offers SharePoint Online as a bundle of other products. The branding for the bundle of products is called Office 365. To find out more about Office 365, check out *Office 365 For Dummies* by Jennifer Reed and yours truly (Wiley).

## *Many different SharePoint definitions*

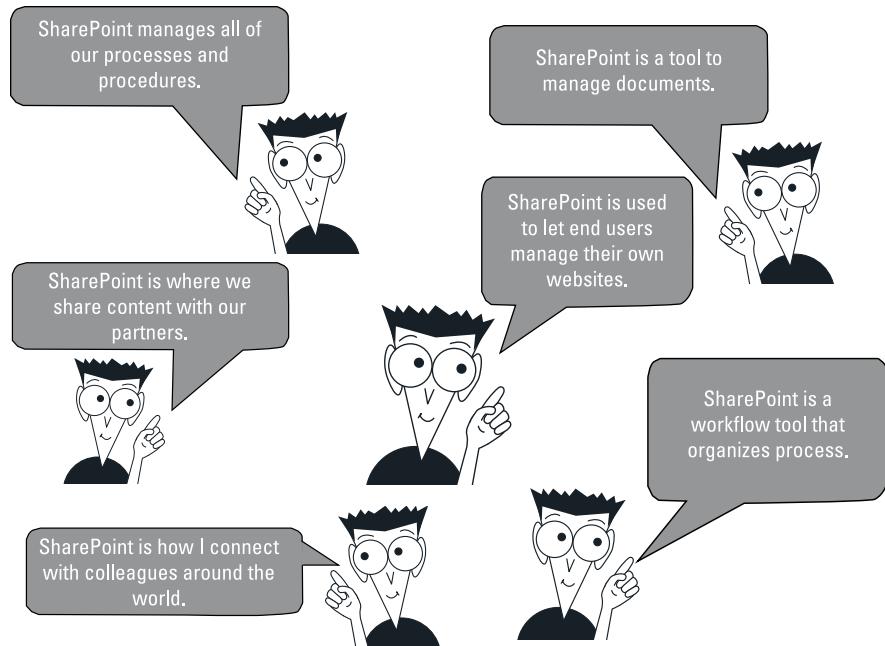
SharePoint has many different types of users, and depending on where your role fits in, you might have a very different experience from a fellow SharePoint user. For example, you might be assigned to create and administer a SharePoint website for your team. In this case, you might see first-hand the vast functionality of SharePoint websites. On the other hand, you might be a user of a SharePoint site. In this case, your SharePoint world might be only the site that someone has already created for you. To confuse matters even further, many organizations will roll out SharePoint and give it a spiffy internal name; for example “Connect.” So even though the cool new web tool called Connect is actually SharePoint, most users don’t even realize it!

On the more technical side, if you’re an infrastructure administrator, you see SharePoint as a platform capable of offloading the difficult job of website administration. If you’re a software developer, you see SharePoint as a web platform for developing programs for users.

The vastness of SharePoint creates areas of specialization. The result is that a person’s view of SharePoint is greatly affected by how that person uses the product. It’s important to keep this in mind when talking with people about SharePoint. If you ask ten people to define SharePoint, you’re likely to get ten different answers, as illustrated in Figure 1-1.



SharePoint has many different administration levels, and each requires a different level of technical ability. For example, if you’re comfortable working with software like Microsoft Word and Excel, then you won’t have any problem administering a SharePoint site. At a deeper level, there are also SharePoint infrastructure administrators. To administer SharePoint at the infrastructure level is a role that falls squarely into the realm of the IT geeks.



**Figure 1-1:**  
There are many different ways to define SharePoint.

SharePoint is a platform, so the user roles an organization defines depend on the organization itself. Here are some examples of the possible roles of users in SharePoint:

- ✓ **Anonymous visitor:** A person that browses to a website that just happens to be using the SharePoint platform. An anonymous visitor just sees SharePoint as a website and nothing else.
- ✓ **SharePoint visitor:** A person that browses to the site and authenticates so that SharePoint knows who they are. The visitor might still just see a SharePoint site as any other website, except he notices his name in the top-right corner of the screen and knows he must log in to reach the site. Visitors might not use any of the features of SharePoint, however, and just browse the information posted to the website.
- ✓ **SharePoint casual user:** A person that knows all the company documents are posted to SharePoint and knows she can upload her own documents to her personal SharePoint site. A casual user might realize that she is using SharePoint, or she might just think of the platform as the name the organization has given to SharePoint. For example, I have seen organizations give their web platform tool names such as Source or Smart or Knowledge Center. SharePoint is the name of the web platform product from Microsoft, which is often unknown by users of a tool built on the SharePoint platform.

- ✓ **SharePoint user:** A person that is familiar with SharePoint and its main features. A SharePoint user often performs various administrator functions even if he doesn't realize it. For example, he might be responsible for an app that stores all the company policies and procedures. He is thus an app administrator. A user might also be responsible for a site for a small team, in which case he is a site administrator. As you can see, a user can play many different roles.
- ✓ **SharePoint power user:** A power user is not only familiar with the main SharePoint features and functionality but also dives deeper. A power user might be familiar with the functionality differences of different features, routing documents using workflows, and building site hierarchies. A power user might also be a site collection administrator and thus is responsible for a collection of sites.
- ✓ **SharePoint technical administrator:** A technical administrator is someone from the IT department who is responsible for SharePoint. A technical administrator is less concerned with using SharePoint for business and more concerned about making sure the platform is available and responsive. An administrator might play many different roles. For example, farm administrators are responsible for all the servers that make up SharePoint, such as web front end servers, applications servers, and database servers. Specialized database administrators focus just on the database components. There are even administrative roles for specific services, such as the search service or user profile service. Depending on the size of the SharePoint implementation, these technical administrator roles might be filled by a single overworked individual or a team with highly specialized skills.

## More than a website

SharePoint is called a *web platform*, as opposed to just a website, because of the sheer amount of functionality and capabilities it includes. In fact, if you already administer a SharePoint website, you can easily create a new website right within the existing website. You can also develop websites with an extraordinary amount of functionality without writing a single line of code. The result is a platform for websites instead of just a single website. The multitude of features and the complexity of the product are what lead to confusion.



The terms *SharePoint website* and *SharePoint site* can be used interchangeably. Both terms mean a website that is powered by SharePoint. Because this book is all about SharePoint, I sometimes abbreviate these terms to just *site*.

One thing that makes SharePoint so special is that you don't need to be a computer genius or even a power user to be a website developer and administrator in SharePoint. You just need to be comfortable using a computer.

## The difference between social media and SharePoint

SharePoint and social media websites such as Facebook, LinkedIn, and Twitter are similar in that you interact with them using your web browser. The difference is in the intended use. Facebook, LinkedIn, and Twitter are designed for consumers as a whole, whereas SharePoint is designed for individual organizations.

SharePoint has many of the social and profile features of Facebook, LinkedIn, and Twitter, but these features are only available to people

within your organization. In other words, only the people in your organization can use the features of SharePoint. Although SharePoint includes social and profile features, it also includes much, much more. Think of SharePoint as a product for business and productivity that also happens to have the social and profile features of sites such as Facebook, LinkedIn, and Twitter.

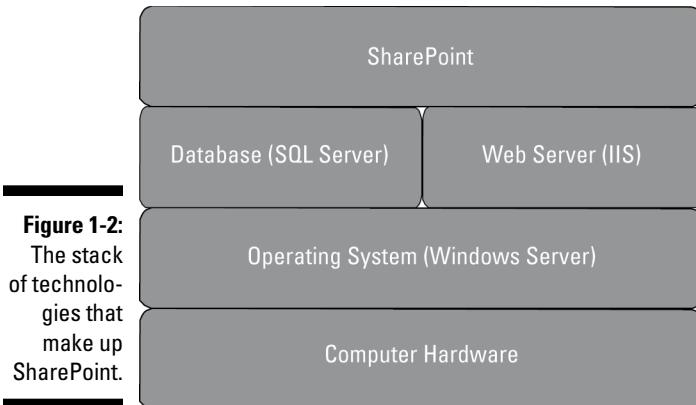


The term *website* and *web application* are often used interchangeably. In the deep, dark technical world of SharePoint administration, the term *web application* has a very specific meaning. A web application is a technical construct, and each web application has its own databases associated with it. If you create two SharePoint web applications, they store their content and configuration information in different databases. As with technology these days, a simple word can have different meanings, depending on the context of the conversation.

## Getting Familiar with SharePoint Building Blocks

In order to obtain a perspective on SharePoint, it is important to understand how SharePoint is put together. As mentioned previously, SharePoint is a web-based platform. A number of technologies are required in order to make the platform available. Each technology builds on the one below it. In this manner, it is common to call the whole ball of wax a *technology stack*.

The SharePoint technology stack begins with server computers running the Microsoft Windows Server operating system. On top of Windows Server are some additional technologies required by SharePoint. In particular, SharePoint needs a database and a web server — Microsoft SQL Server and Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS), respectively. Only when this entire stack of technology is available can you install SharePoint, as shown in Figure 1-2.



**Figure 1-2:**  
The stack  
of technolo-  
gies that  
make up  
SharePoint.

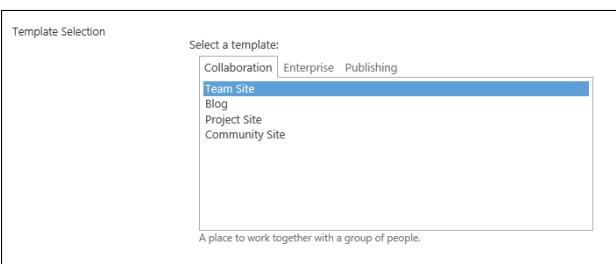


SharePoint will only work with the Microsoft stack of supporting technologies. For example, you cannot swap in an Oracle database or the open source Apache web server. SharePoint would simply refuse to install and might ask you what the heck you are trying to do using a non-Microsoft product to install SharePoint.

## Taking a Peek at a SharePoint Site

The primary purpose of SharePoint is to provide websites. When you create a website, you select which type of template you want to use to create the site. The dialog shown in Figure 1-3 shows the different templates available. Creating a site is explored in detail in Chapter 4.

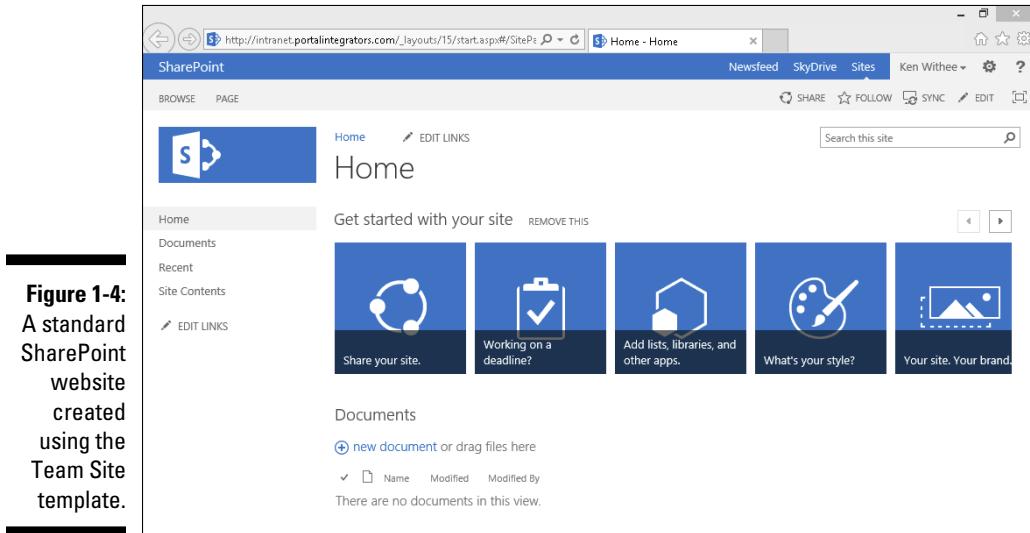
**Figure 1-3:**  
The dialog  
box used  
to select  
a website  
template  
when  
creating a  
SharePoint  
site.



The template tells SharePoint which features and functionality should be included on the site. Keep in mind that you can always add more features, and you can even choose to start with a blank site template and add only the specific features you want to use for the site.

One of the most common SharePoint site templates is called the Team Site template. The Team Site website template includes features such as a discussion board, library to store documents, and a calendar. In fact, many books simply talk about the Team Site template and call that SharePoint. As you will learn in this book, the Team Site is very important, but it is just another SharePoint website template. Part II explores building a site based on the Team Site template.

A SharePoint website created using the Team Site template is shown in Figure 1-4.



**Figure 1-4:**  
A standard  
SharePoint  
website  
created  
using the  
Team Site  
template.

## Getting Familiar with SharePoint Terminology

You should add a number of terms to your SharePoint vocabulary. Some terms are made up by Microsoft marketing, some are industry standards, and others are buzzwords that have grown to have various meanings depending on the context of the conversation. In the following sections, I describe the various components of SharePoint, how the terms that define functionality fit together, and what they mean.

## Branding

The term *branding* refers to the way a SharePoint site looks and behaves to users. Branding includes things like the colors, fonts, images, logos, and layout of the various components on a site. Branding your SharePoint 2013 site will be covered in Chapter 13.

The term branding is not specific to SharePoint and refers to the way something looks and behaves. The term is borrowed from the marketing industry in which an organization will brand its product. For example, Coca-Cola has a very strong brand. In the software world, branding refers to the look and feel of a piece of software or website.

## Business Connectivity Services

*Business Connectivity Services (BCS)* is a specific feature of SharePoint Server. BCS enables you to connect SharePoint with external systems. For example, say you have a customer relationship system and you need SharePoint to interact with the data in that system. You could use BCS to make it happen.



BCS can be a fairly in-depth piece of SharePoint and also often requires the skillset of a developer.

## Business intelligence

The term *business intelligence* is definitely not new. An article was published in the October 1958 edition of the *IBM Journal* by H. P. Luhn called “A Business Intelligence System.” The article describes how an organization can process documents in order to make business decisions. Business intelligence has continued to evolve over the years and has morphed into something of a catch-all phrase for using data to drive business.

In the Microsoft realm, business intelligence consists of a number of different technologies. In fact, I wrote an entire sister book on the subject — *Microsoft Business Intelligence For Dummies* (Wiley). As SharePoint has become a central and nearly ubiquitous application, it has also become a prime place to show the data that decision makers need to make decisions. In other words, SharePoint is a perfect display case for all those fancy charts, graphs, performance indicators, and other data.

Unfortunately, business intelligence has a fairly steep learning curve in SharePoint. Tools such as Report Builder, Dashboard Designer, and

PowerPivot unleash endless possibilities, but figuring out how to use them all takes time. One thing you will find with business intelligence in SharePoint is that there are often many ways to achieve the same result. And therein lies the learning curve.

At the basic level, if you can create a chart in Excel, you can plunk it into a SharePoint library and embed it on a page using a web part. Ta-da! You just achieved business intelligence in SharePoint. The consumers of the data might never even know how easy it was to put that data in Excel and embed it in a SharePoint webpage. And that is the point. These things shouldn't be difficult to get started.

At the other end of the spectrum, however, you might need to create a data cube (a specialized database in the big data world) with millions or billions of records, and then use a specialized tool such as Dashboard Designer to create an interactive graph with click-through capabilities. Whew! That sounds complicated, and trust me, it is.

You need serious expertise when diving into the depths of business intelligence, but that doesn't mean you can't understand it at a high level. Many different tools and features make up business intelligence in SharePoint 2013, and Part V walks you through them at a high level and provides you with insights into quick techniques you can use to get started right away.

## eDiscovery

The term *eDiscovery* relates to the legal world of business. In particular, the word derives from *electronic discovery* in litigation. If you have ever watched *Law & Order*, you understand that critical evidence can make or break a case. In the high-tech world of digital information, it's a rather tricky endeavor to discover and hold electronic documents.

SharePoint 2013 has a number of features specifically designed for eDiscovery. This is great news if you're a decision maker looking to comply with legal requirements, or you're a lawyer. If neither applies to you, then just knowing SharePoint 2013 handles eDiscovery is good enough.

## Identity management

Frankly, modern technology can often be a real pain. It seems that there are gazillions of systems in any organization, and each requires its own user-name and password. I have so many usernames and passwords on various websites across the Internet that my mind just tries to block it out. Of course,

then I forget my password and have to go through the tiring process of resetting it each time I want to log in to a particular system. On the other side, when a user logs in to a system, that system also needs to know what the user can access.



*Identity management* refers to the functionality of a software system that manages users and what they can access. Identity management isn't specific to SharePoint and is used by any system that requires you to enter a username and password.

SharePoint 2013 has made great strides in simplifying identity management. SharePoint 2013 uses claims-based authentication in conjunction with an open authentication standard called Open Authorization (OAuth for short) in order to play nicely with other systems. What this means for you is that you shouldn't have to remember yet another username and password when working with SharePoint 2013. If only the rest of the Internet could be so thoughtful!

## Mobile

It's amazing how quickly mobile computing has taken over our lives. Not that long ago, the flip phone was a technological marvel. Not any longer! The trend towards using your smartphone or tablet to get things done is accelerating rapidly.

SharePoint 2010 had the capability to access a site from a smartphone, but the experience was less than stellar. SharePoint 2013 support for smartphone devices has come a long way. When paired with the new Windows 8, you might even say accessing your Word, Excel, OneNote, and PowerPoint is enjoyable on your smartphone or tablet. Well, as enjoyable as information work can be.

Working with SharePoint from your smartphone or tablet is covered in Chapter 17.

## Records management and compliance

In the world of information work, you often hear about *records management* and *compliance*. Depending on how much of a rebel you are, you might think of these terms as keeping people and processes in line or as an invitation to break some rules.

Every organization has a different set of rules around managing records and keeping processes compliant with company policy. This line of thinking is not specific to SharePoint, and, depending on your organization and industry, could be buttoned-up strict, as in the banking industry, or open to the world and free loving, as in many technology startup companies.

In SharePoint 2013, a number of features are specifically designed to keep records organized and easily managed. In addition, SharePoint has compliance features that even the stodgiest of stodgy big banks will adore. And as someone who has done consulting work for the banking industry, let me tell you, there are some really strict compliance rules out there. (Considering that they're keeping track of our money, that's a good thing.) Chapter 20 covers records management and compliance features in SharePoint.

## Search

If you have ever used Google, Bing, or Ask.com, then you're familiar with search engines. These search engines for the Internet are amazingly powerful and eerily comprehensive. SharePoint does a bang-up job of managing content, and the next logical step in managing content is finding content when you need it. As an organization grows, the need for search grows too.

Microsoft acquired a top-notch search company based in Oslo, Norway. The company was called FAST, and Microsoft moved quickly to integrate FAST search with SharePoint. The problem was that FAST was a separate product and was difficult to configure with SharePoint 2010. In SharePoint 2013, the FAST technology is fully integrated and baked right into SharePoint 2013. So no separate search product must be configured to work with SharePoint. The result is a very powerful and seamless search experience right out of the box.



Search is one of those topics that spans from simple to mind-numbingly complex. At a base level, you have search capabilities for every SharePoint site right out of the box. The tech geeks can go deeper and optimize search for your organization. For example, your search query can be aware of your role in the organization and display results specifically for you. So, for example, if you're in sales and searching for a product, your search results will be sales materials. If you're an engineer and searching for a product, your results will include specifications. SharePoint search can make this happen, but configuring it is best left to the IT department.

## Social

In recent years, computers and the Internet have been connecting people like never before. This new way of interacting through computers is called social computing. The biggest public social network of all is Facebook. Not every organization wants to be in such a public space though.

SharePoint is designed for organizations, and the social aspects of SharePoint share a common goal with Facebook — connecting people. The difference is that SharePoint connections are limited to people in a particular organization. The social aspects of SharePoint are covered in Chapter 16.

## Web content management

*Content* is a fairly simple concept. When you create a Word document or an Excel spreadsheet, you generate content. If you develop a web page for your colleagues to admire, you generate content. Even if you just pull out a pencil and paper and start writing, that's content. If you scanned that paper, you could then let SharePoint work its content management wonders on the scanned image file.

SharePoint 2013 is especially powerful in handling content, as described in Chapter 18. One particularly tricky piece of content, however, is the content you develop for websites. You know, all of those web pages that contain policies and procedures and documentation and all of that? If the content is created for a web page, then it's web content and it holds a special place in the heart of SharePoint. The web content management features of SharePoint are legendary, and many organizations first started using SharePoint for just this reason.



Content management often goes by the name Enterprise Content Management (ECM). Don't be fooled by the terminology though. The *Enterprise* portion of ECM just means the system manages content at a large scale, as found in a large company or enterprise.

You might be wondering what makes the relationship between SharePoint and web content so special. Well, it all comes down to delegation and control. SharePoint provides the ability for many people to generate content and for a few to approve content. After it's approved, content can be published automatically for the world, or those in your organization, to consume.

## Chapter 2

# Introducing SharePoint Online

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Exploring SharePoint Online
- ▶ Determining why SharePoint Online has become so popular
- ▶ Figuring out the difference between SharePoint Online and SharePoint On Premise
- ▶ Understanding some of the benefits to a cloud-based offering

J

ust a handful of years ago, it wasn't easy to adopt SharePoint. SharePoint fell squarely into the realm of enterprise-class software. *Enterprise-class software* is powerful but expensive and resource-intensive, so in order to adopt SharePoint, you needed to be a large organization with big bucks and a large IT support team.

The rapid rise of super-fast and ubiquitous Internet connectivity caused a paradigm shift in the software world. Microsoft and other companies quickly came out with new applications that offered enterprise-class software, including SharePoint, over the Internet. Microsoft branded its SharePoint offering as SharePoint Online and packaged it with products such as Exchange (e-mail), Lync (instant communication), and Office (productivity). The combined package of services (SharePoint, Exchange, Lync, and Office) is called Office 365. To find out how the technologies in Office 365 fit together, check out *Office 365 For Dummies* by Jennifer Reed and yours truly (Wiley).

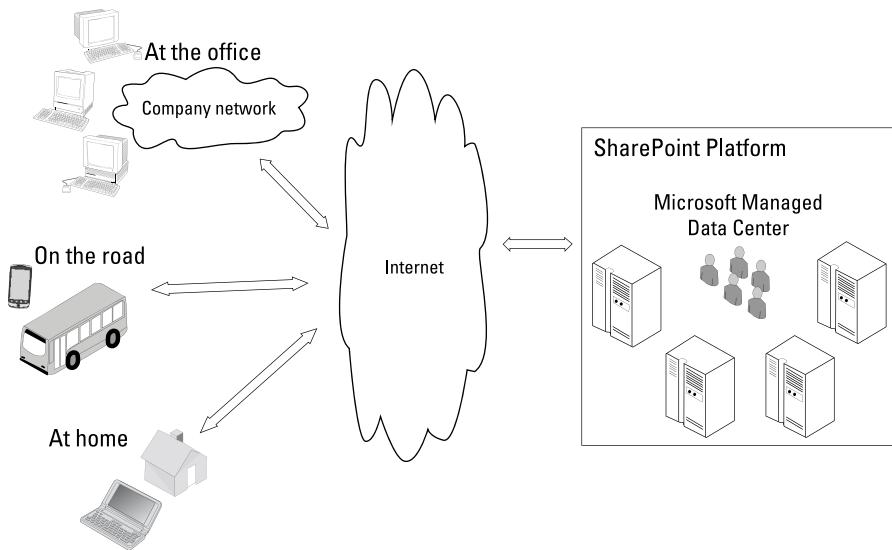
In this chapter, you see how SharePoint Online has changed the game and what it means to use a cloud-based solution. You read about the differences between SharePoint Online and SharePoint On Premise and find out which you should use and when. Finally, you explore some of the benefits of using SharePoint Online.

## Getting Familiar with SharePoint Online

Microsoft offers SharePoint over the Internet in a product called SharePoint Online. With SharePoint Online, Microsoft takes care of all the heavy lifting. To get SharePoint going, someone has to procure and set up the servers, and install the operating system, databases, web server, and SharePoint server. This all has to be done in a special climate-controlled room called a data center. The data center has to be secure and redundant. After all, what if a disaster happened and the data center computers in the data center — or worse, the data center itself — were destroyed? Finally, the whole setup must be scalable so that as more users begin using SharePoint for mission-critical business processes, the servers and sites can keep up with the added load. And that isn't the end — after everything is up and running, someone still needs to manage all the updates and keep the servers humming smoothly. Whew! What a lot of work.

With a hosted solution, you or your organization are paying someone else to do all this for you, and you simply use the final product, SharePoint. With SharePoint Online, Microsoft sells its SharePoint platform as a service, so the actual servers and software run in its data centers, managed and maintained by its employees. You, being a customer of Microsoft, connect to this managed version of SharePoint over a secure channel of the Internet and use it to develop business solutions on the SharePoint platform. (Maybe a better name would be “SharePoint Infrastructure Hosted and Managed by Microsoft,” though it's too cumbersome for marketing.) Figure 2-1 illustrates the point.

**Figure 2-1:**  
The SharePoint platform runs in the Microsoft data center and is accessed in a secure channel over the Internet.





Microsoft is not the only company that offers SharePoint over the Internet. Other companies, such as Fpweb.net ([www.fpweb.net](http://www.fpweb.net)), also offer SharePoint over the Internet. SharePoint Online is the brand name for Microsoft's offering.

SharePoint Online is when Microsoft manages SharePoint in their data centers and you access it over the Internet. SharePoint On Premise is when your local IT gurus manage SharePoint in your company data center.

## *Understanding Why SharePoint Online Has Become So Popular*

Putting a complex computer platform in place is difficult. Organizations discovered this when they implemented Enterprise Resource Planning software in the 1990s and 2000s, and it still holds true today. Putting the SharePoint platform in place is not an easy endeavor. Larger organizations usually require a more complex implementation. As the complexity of the implementation increases, so do the costs, time, and risk.

The current best practice is to use an experienced consulting firm with expertise in implementing a SharePoint platform. As in dealing with any services company, sometimes you pick a winner, and sometimes it's a complete disaster.

SharePoint Online takes the implementation of the infrastructure out of the equation with a known variable in cost and resources. This is music to a bean counter's ears! Predictability! The predictability of cost and time to implement are why SharePoint Online and other cloud solutions are becoming so popular. They reduce complexity and provide a fixed and certain cost on a SharePoint platform that is guaranteed to follow best practices.

Having a known variable in place for the infrastructure frees up resources to focus on the actual business problems. Which, by the way, are your main reasons for implementing SharePoint in the first place, right?



Microsoft has introduced the SharePoint Online offering to cater to everyone from small businesses to large multinationals. In fact, you can even purchase just one license if you're a solo entrepreneur. Because Microsoft has already built out the offering, it's just as easy to offer the same reliability and security to small companies as it is to large companies. It is, after all, the same product — the only difference is the scale.

## Differences between SharePoint Online and SharePoint On Premise

In the past, there have been some major differences between SharePoint Online and SharePoint On Premise. For one, SharePoint Online used to trail the version of SharePoint that was available On Premise. For example, when SharePoint 2010 came out, it took SharePoint Online a painfully long time before it became SharePoint 2010.



The current version is SharePoint 2013. The previous version was SharePoint 2010, and the version before that was SharePoint 2007. SharePoint Online doesn't have a version number.

Times have changed, and Microsoft has said it's moving toward feature and release parity, meaning that SharePoint Online will be the equivalent of SharePoint On Premise, and both will be SharePoint 2013. The only difference will be in how you access it. In addition, the functionality available in SharePoint will also be nearly identical between SharePoint On Premise and SharePoint Online.

With that said, there are still integration points and advanced functionality that are only available with SharePoint On Premise. This is an ever-changing landscape, so the best way to stay on top of the available features is on the frequently updated SharePoint Online feature matrix located on Microsoft's TechNet website at <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/jj819267.aspx>.



SharePoint Online is when Microsoft manages SharePoint in their data centers and you access it over the Internet. SharePoint On Premise is when your local IT gurus manage SharePoint in your company data center.

## Exploring the Benefits of SharePoint Online

If you use SharePoint in your day-to-day operations, then the good news is that it doesn't really matter whether you are using SharePoint On Premise or SharePoint Online. They are both SharePoint, and you can focus on your job. With that said, it's nice to at least have a high-level understanding of some of the infrastructure benefits to SharePoint Online. If nothing else, you can impress your IT friends.

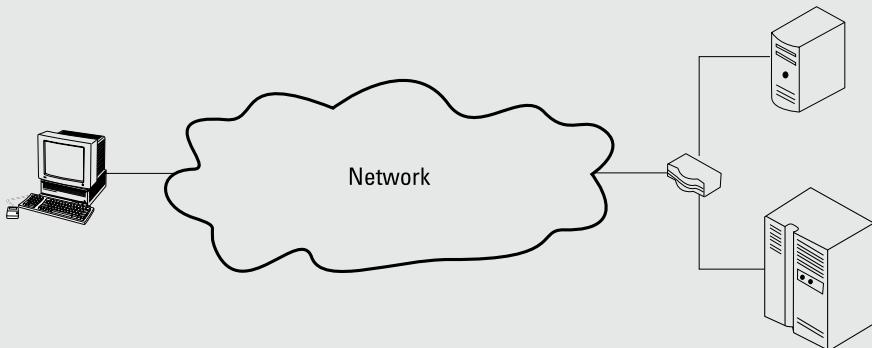
Using SharePoint Online instead of trying to build and manage the platform with your own organization's resources gives you a number of benefits. You simply sign up, pay a monthly licensing fee, and access SharePoint over the Internet. The following sections take a look at some of the things that Microsoft does behind the scenes with SharePoint Online.

## Getting to the bottom of the cloud

Network diagrams often show a network as a cloud, as shown in the following figure, because it would be too complex to diagram all the components that make up the network (such as routers, switches, hubs, and cables).

The biggest network, and cloud, of all is the Internet. When a diagram shows communication over the Internet, a big cloud is used because it would be impossible to try to show all the network hardware that might be encountered between two computers communicating via the Internet. The cloud simply becomes an abstraction for a network with the assumption that communication can occur over that cloud.

If a company sells access to software that lives in their data centers and that is connected to by customers over the Internet, that solution is said to live “in the cloud.” The term comes from the perspective of the customer, who may have no idea where the actual servers that serve up the software are located. From the customers’ perspective, they just access the software using an Internet domain name. This cloud concept and technology is nothing new. Whenever you surf the web, you use a service in the cloud. You just know that when you type in the web address, the site appears in your web browser. This concept is catching on with business applications; you hear more and more about cloud solutions.



## Data center and hardware

If you have ever toured a data center, then you have some idea of the amount of effort and resources it takes to keep everything running. Data centers have rows and rows of computers with flashing lights, humming fans, and coils of cables running ceiling to floor. Control rooms that resemble something NASA would use to run space missions monitor all these servers. The control rooms contain computers and monitors that report on everything in the data center, from temperature and humidity to individual fans in particular servers and everything in between. These control rooms are often called a Network Operation Center (NOC) and are the nerve center for a modern data center.

Most organizations that have the need for servers find a data center that can be used to host their gear. Hosting your computers in a data center can cost a fortune, but paying to host your own gear in an inferior environment can cost even more in the long run.

Microsoft invested a tremendous amount of money in building its own state-of-the-art data centers that house the servers that make up SharePoint Online. The nice thing about SharePoint Online is that you don't have to worry about the various costs of hosting and managing your own gear. The price you pay for SharePoint Online covers everything, including the data center.

The servers that run SharePoint Online are state of the art and come from the leading industry manufacturers. In fact, Microsoft has modularized the set up, and the computers come in massive containers that look very similar to the containers you see on cargo ships. These container pods are sealed by the manufacturer and never opened at the data center. This is a security mechanism to keep humans away from the computers. When a single piece of hardware fails, the workload of that server is simply shifted automatically to other servers (possibly in other pods). When enough servers fail, the pod is taken offline and the workload of that pod is shifted to another pod without service interruption. A new pod with the latest hardware is then shipped to replace it, and the old pod is decommissioned, with the data being wiped to security standards, and sent back to the manufacturer.

Microsoft has developed this system of data centers and pods throughout the country with built-in redundancy. If a data center goes down, the workload is shifted to another data center. If a pod goes down, the workload of that pod is shifted to another pod. If a server within a pod goes down, the workload of that server is shifted to another server. This system of redundancy is included into the price of SharePoint Online. You might care about how it works or you might just care that Microsoft has guaranteed uptime of 99.9 percent. In the end, you're free to focus on your business and solving business problems using the SharePoint platform without having to worry about what it takes to make that platform consistently available.

## *Software platform*

The physical computers required to run the SharePoint platform are one thing, but you also have to take into account the operating systems and associated software such as the web servers, databases, and SharePoint itself that run on the server computers. The Microsoft platform uses the Windows Server operating system, the Internet Information Service (IIS) web server,

and the SQL Server database, as described in Chapter 1. All these software systems are just the supporting actors for the SharePoint software itself. The amount of time and resources it takes to get all these software components installed, updated, and configured can be daunting. Administrators are valuable resources, and their time is often better spent dealing with the desktop computers of the users.

When you sign up for SharePoint Online, you don't have to worry about installing and managing the software components that make up the SharePoint platform. Microsoft takes care of all of that for you, and it's all included in the price. In addition, when new versions of the software stack are released, Microsoft upgrades everything automatically without additional cost for the service. Microsoft also monitors the servers and logs 24 hours a day in order to make sure nothing goes awry. The monitoring takes place in Network Operation Centers described in the previous section.

## ***Backup, redundancy, and security***

You might think that with the hardware and software in place, the rest would be easy. However, the SharePoint platform itself needs to have a backup and disaster recovery plan, in addition to being available, redundant, and secure. With SharePoint Online, the Microsoft teams take care of all this for you, and it's guaranteed in the contract.

With the hardware, software, and plans in place, you as a customer are free to focus on developing business solutions on the platform instead of working through the process of setting everything up yourself.



## **Chapter 3**

---

# **Wrangling SharePoint Functionality**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Understanding the functionality that makes up SharePoint
  - ▶ Finding out how SharePoint components fit together
  - ▶ Discovering which functionality is most important to you
- 

**T**he reason SharePoint is so difficult to define is that it's a product that has a tremendous amount of functionality. SharePoint has functionality for administrators, business users, report developers, analysts, programmers, and just about anyone else in any organization. You name it, and SharePoint provides functionality designed for that particular user. Coming to terms with the vastness of SharePoint is a key concept in learning about the product.

In this chapter, you discover some of the main functionality that makes up SharePoint. You find out about SharePoint templates and how they're used to create websites. You discover the importance of the Team Site, but find out it isn't the only game in town. You explore apps and see that almost everything in SharePoint 2013 is an app. Finally, you take a high-level fly-over of some of the most common functionality in SharePoint. The whole smorgasbord of functionality is really the definition of SharePoint, and you get a bird's-eye view in this chapter.

## ***Coming to Terms with Website Templates***

If you haven't experienced SharePoint before, you might think that creating a new website is difficult. Before SharePoint, you would need to gather up the right files and write HTML code to create a website. Tweaking the code and building the website was a burdensome task. To make matters worse, you had to fiddle with the web server and the security and get everything just right. In short, you needed an advanced level of technical expertise. Some would have argued you needed an advanced degree in computer science!

Making changes to the website after it was completed required the same advanced skillset. One of the main reasons SharePoint took off was that it allowed people to create and manage websites without needing an advanced technical skillset.

Creating a SharePoint website is as easy as a few clicks of the mouse (assuming you have the right permissions). The primary decision you need to make when you create a SharePoint site is which template to use. Choosing a template is accomplished on the New Site Creation screen, shown in Figure 3-1. Instructions for creating a new site are outlined in Chapter 4.



A SharePoint site template outlines what functionality the site will include after it's created. You can always add or remove functionality as you see fit. In fact, you can even start with a blank site and add only the functionality you want to include in the site.



The most popular SharePoint site template is called Team Site. The Team Site template is so popular that many books forget to mention that there are other templates available as well. Working with a SharePoint site built using the Team Site template is covered in Chapters 4 through 9.

The screenshot shows the 'New SharePoint Site' creation interface. On the left, a navigation bar includes 'Home', 'Documents', 'Recent', 'Site Contents', and 'EDIT LINKS'. The main area has sections for 'Title and Description' (with 'Title:' and 'Description:' input fields), 'Web Site Address' (with 'URL name:' set to 'http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/'), and 'Template Selection'. Under 'Template Selection', a list titled 'Select a template:' shows 'Collaboration', 'Enterprise', 'Publishing', 'Team Site' (which is highlighted in blue), 'Blog', 'Project Site', and 'Community Site'. A note at the bottom states 'A place to work together with a group of people.'

**Figure 3-1:**  
Choosing  
a template  
on the  
New Site  
Creation  
screen.

## Show Me the Apps

SharePoint 2013 changes the way you think about adding functionality to a site. In previous versions of SharePoint, all containers were considered a type of list. What a list meant was fairly generic. You might have a list that provides calendar functionality, or you might have a list that provides discussion board functionality. The concept of a special list with some functionality was one of the hardest things to get my mind around when I started working with SharePoint. SharePoint 2013 attempts to remove confusion by calling everything an app. Instead of a specialized calendar list, you now have a Calendar app. Need a discussion board? You now add the Discussion Board app.

Microsoft has also expanded the ability to develop custom apps. The result is that third parties or in-house developers can create apps for any purpose you can conceive. Imagine that you're in Accounts Payable and you use SharePoint 2013 to manage your invoice documents. You might request an app from your IT department to route documents through the various approvals before finally being submitted to the payment system.

If you use SharePoint Online, you can browse, purchase, and install apps from the SharePoint App Store without leaving SharePoint. It's similar to using the App Store on an iPhone or Google Market on an Android phone to buy and download an app.



Many SharePoint power users are comfortable with the concept of a data container called a list. You can still start with a blank list and add functionality as required. Nothing has changed in this ability. You are now just creating your own custom app by starting with the Custom List app. After you give your new app a name, it appears alongside all the other apps.

SharePoint apps are covered in Chapter 5.

## Working with Web Pages

A SharePoint site wouldn't be very interesting without content. A SharePoint site is a container for pages. Pages in turn are a container for actual content; developing pages allows you to add content to your SharePoint sites.

The three primary types of pages that can be created and developed from the browser in SharePoint 2013 are

- ✓ Wiki page
- ✓ Web Part page
- ✓ Publishing page

## Wiki page

A *wiki page*, also known as a content page, is the Swiss Army knife of pages and allows for easy development and customization using a rich text editor built right into the browser. A wiki page is easy to develop and is an extremely powerful and intuitive collaboration, data capture, and documentation tool.

## Web Part page

A *Web Part page* provides Web Part zones where you can drag and drop various Web Parts from the gallery. A *Web Part* is a reusable piece of functionality that can be dragged and dropped right onto your pages. A number of Web Parts are available right out of the box, and Web Parts can also be custom developed to meet your specific needs. Imagine a Web Part developed specifically for your organization. After the Web Part is deployed, you could add that custom Web Part to any page you work with on any site in your organization.

## Publishing page

The *publishing page* is designed to separate the functionality between managing content and managing the look and feel of the page. A publishing page is only available when certain features are turned on by site administrators. All publishing pages live in a special library called Pages. The Pages library is created automatically when the publishing features are turned on for the site. These pages use a special library because the Pages library already has preconfigured functionality such as versioning and workflow that is designed for the management and distribution of content, or in other words, publishing content.

Chapter 5 covers creating and developing pages.

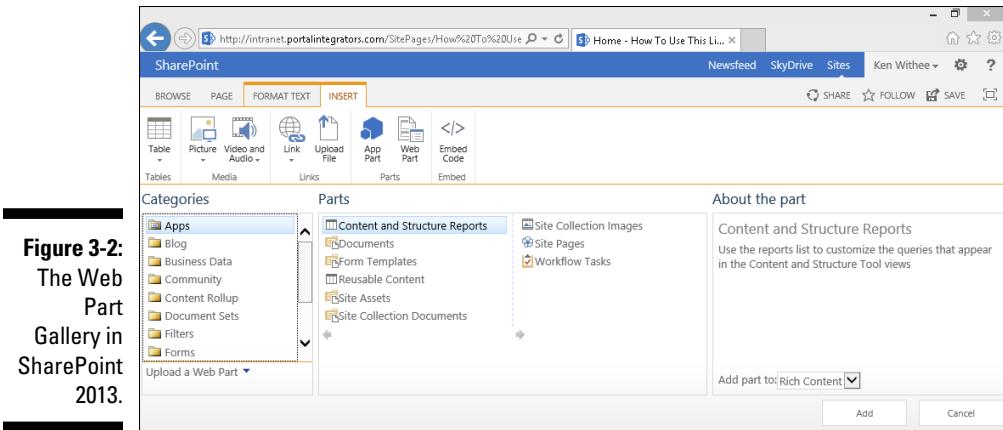
## Understanding Web Parts

A Web Part is one of those fairly rare things in technology that has a descriptive name: A Web Part is a part of a web page. You can think of a Web Part as a bundled piece of web functionality that can be added to a SharePoint page.

SharePoint 2013 has a number of Web Parts available that you can add to your pages. You add a Web Part using the Web Part Gallery, shown in Figure 3-2.



The Web Parts that are available out of the box depend on the edition of SharePoint you're using. For example, if you're using the free SharePoint Foundation, then you have many fewer Web Parts than if you're using SharePoint Enterprise.



**Figure 3-2:**  
The Web  
Part  
Gallery in  
SharePoint  
2013.

In addition to the Web Parts that ship with SharePoint, you can also add custom Web Parts to the Web Part Gallery. A number of third-party developers create Web Parts that can be purchased; Web Parts can also be developed by in-house SharePoint developers.

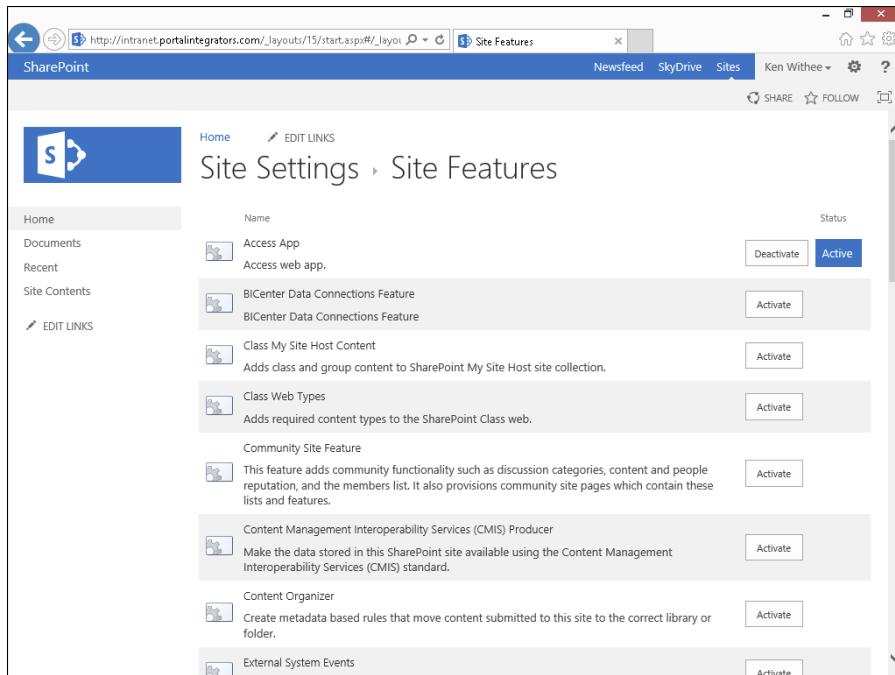
Web Parts are covered in Chapter 6.

## Digging into SharePoint Features

Terminology is often a central point of confusion in most technology. SharePoint is no different. For example, the term *feature* means some sort of functionality or grouping of functionality. In SharePoint, the word *feature* has a very technical meaning: a collection of SharePoint functionality that can be activated and deactivated. When SharePoint programmers hear the term feature, they immediately think of a particular technical part of SharePoint. SharePoint programmers can bundle together a grouping of functionality they have developed for SharePoint into a single feature. Programmers might develop a bundle of functionality and package the entire thing into a single feature that users can activate or deactivate. For example, if you work in financial services, you might need a number of workflows, pages, images, and custom Web Parts on your SharePoint site. A programmer could build all of this functionality for you and package it all into a feature. When you're ready to use the functionality, you activate the financial services feature.

Microsoft developed a number of features that ship with the SharePoint product. You can view these features on any SharePoint site as long as you're an administrator. (See Figure 3-3.) For example, the Mobile Browser View feature ships with SharePoint 2013; it provides a view of SharePoint data specifically designed for smartphone browsers.

Features are covered in detail in Chapter 12.



**Figure 3-3:**  
The Mobile  
Browser  
View  
Feature in  
SharePoint  
2013.

## SharePoint Tools

You use a number of tools in SharePoint. For example, the SharePoint Designer tool is used to build a workflow for integrated business processes. Another tool called Report Builder can be used to develop reports in SharePoint. The Dashboard Designer tool helps users build Business Intelligence dashboards. Working with these tools warrants a book unto itself, but at the very least, you should know these tools and what they are used for.

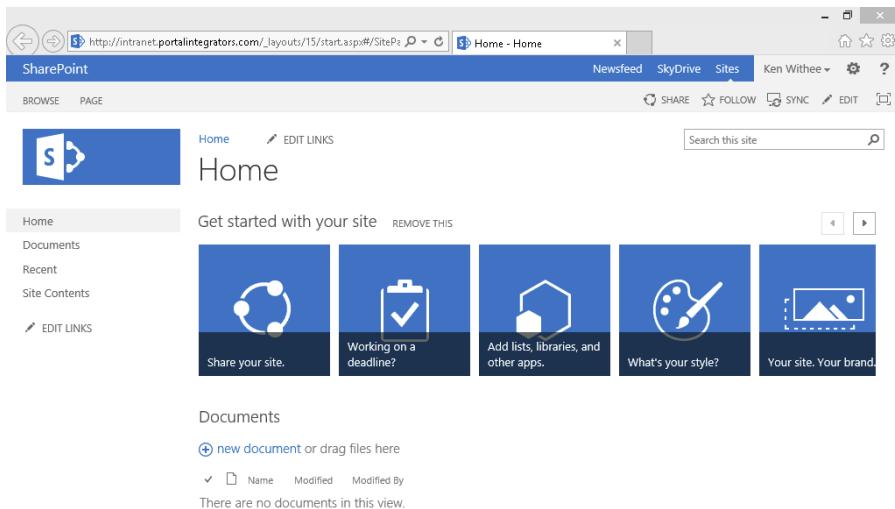
## Integrating with Office 2013

One aspect of SharePoint that fails to get as much attention as it deserves is the integration with Microsoft Office. If you use Office products such as Word, Excel, PowerPoint, OneNote, and Outlook, then you're already primed to leverage SharePoint. In fact, you might be working with SharePoint from within Office and not even realize it!

Working with SharePoint from Microsoft Office products is covered in Chapter 18.

# Part II

# Diving Headfirst into SharePoint 2013



Visit [www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013](http://www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013) for great Dummies content online.

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Jump right into using a SharePoint team site.
- ✓ Work with web pages in SharePoint.
- ✓ Work with Web Parts to display content on web pages.
- ✓ Add apps to your site and configure them.
- ✓ Create your own app with custom columns and views.
- ✓ Create new views and modify existing views in your apps.

## **Chapter 4**

---

# **Getting to Know the Team Site**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Building a new SharePoint site
  - ▶ Understanding how to get a Team Site in Office 365
  - ▶ Exploring the features available on a Team Site
  - ▶ Discovering how to modify a Team Site to meet your needs
- 

**A**s you can read in Chapter 3, you create a SharePoint site using a template. You choose the template when you create the site. The most popular site template is the Team Site. A site created using the Team Site template contains a broad set of features designed for team interaction and collaboration.

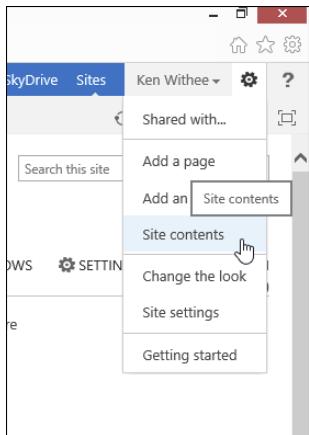
In this chapter, you walk through creating or requesting a SharePoint site based on the Team Site template. You then find out how to access your Team Site and discover the available functionality.

## ***Creating a SharePoint Site***

If you have used SharePoint before, you know that there are often multiple ways to do the same thing. This sounds good in theory, but it led to a lot of confusion by users. Microsoft made some significant changes in SharePoint 2013 to reduce confusion and streamline the product. Creating a new site is a perfect example. Where you could create a site multiple ways in SharePoint 2010, there is now one way in SharePoint 2013. This might be frustrating at first if you're familiar with previous versions, but it's a good thing. At long last, all content that describes how to create a SharePoint site has come together and is the same.

You create a new site in SharePoint by doing the following:

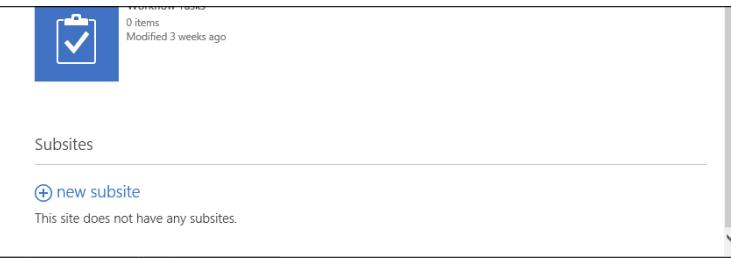
- 1. Click the Settings gear icon and select Site Contents, as shown in Figure 4-1.**



**Figure 4-1:**  
Selecting  
Site  
Contents  
from the  
Settings  
menu.

2. Click the New Subsite link, shown in Figure 4-2, to open the New SharePoint Site form.

**Figure 4-2:**  
Creating  
a new  
SharePoint  
2013 site  
based on  
the Team  
Site  
template.



3. In the Title and Description text boxes, type a name and description for the new site.
  4. Enter a unique site name that will be used in the URL in the URL Name text box.
  5. Select the Team Site template for the site by clicking the Team Site template on the Collaboration tab to select it.
- Notice that Team Site is not the only template option. You can choose other templates. Regardless of the template you start with, you can then develop the site to add SharePoint functionality as you see fit.
6. Choose whether to use the same permissions as the parent site or use unique permissions by selecting the appropriate radio button.

**7. Choose whether you want to display this site on the top link navigation of the parent site or not by selecting the Yes or No radio button.**

The top link navigation is the menu across the top of the site.

**8. Choose whether to display the same top link navigation as the parent site or not by selecting the Yes or No radio button.**

**9. Click Create to create the site.**

The new site is displayed in the browser.



A SharePoint site created using the Team Site template is often referred to as simply a team site, as in, “Check out my team site.” If you really want to impress and astound your audience, you could say, “Check out my SharePoint site based on the Team Site template,” but that’s a mouthful.

Every SharePoint site is contained within another SharePoint site in a hierarchy. At the top of the hierarchy is a special type of site called a Site Collection. Creating and administering a Site Collection takes special permissions. Every site within the Site Collection is called a Subsite. Both types of websites are often just referred to as a website or site. The site you just created is a Subsite of whatever site you were in when you created it. There are really no differences between using a site that is a Site Collection and a site that is a Subsite. To users, both types of sites look and act the same. The differences lie in the navigation, security settings, and features. (The differences between administering a Subsite and a Site Collection are discussed in Chapter 10.)

## *Requesting a SharePoint Site*

If you aren’t a site administrator, then you won’t have permissions to create a new SharePoint site. In this case, you need to request it. Most organizations have a process for requesting a team site. For example, you might send an e-mail request to the SharePoint administrator or fill out a form.

Whatever you have to do to get your SharePoint 2013 team site, get one. At a minimum, you need to provide your SharePoint administrator with this information to get a team site:

- ✓ **The site name:** The friendly caption that appears in the header of your site and in any site directory where your site may be listed.
- ✓ **The site template:** The template determines what kind of site SharePoint makes for you. SharePoint includes dozens of predefined site templates. Your company may even create its custom site templates. Tell your administrator you want a team site, which is the most popular of all the SharePoint 2013 site templates.

- ✓ **The web address or URL:** The unique location where your team site is hosted. In most organizations, all team sites are located off the same root web address. Some examples I've seen include

`http://intranet.company.com/sites`

`http://portal/projectsites`

`http://sharepoint/sites`

Your organization may also ask who has permission to access the site. By default, all SharePoint team sites have three basic kinds of users, which are called SharePoint groups:

- ✓ **Visitors** have Read Only permission. They can view your site without making any contributions.
- ✓ **Members** can participate in your team site by uploading and editing documents or adding tasks or other items.
- ✓ **Owners** have Full Control permission to customize the site. As the person requesting the team site, the SharePoint administrator likely assumes that you're the proud owner unless you specifically tell him or her who owns the site.

You need to decide which users fit into these three SharePoint groups. SharePoint offers more than just these three groups, and you can create your own groups to meet your needs. (SharePoint groups are discussed further in Chapter 14.)

Your site's users must be connected physically to your network or have permission from your network administrator to access your network remotely. Some companies set up a special kind of deployment for SharePoint, called an *extranet*, that provides a secure way for non-employees to log in to their SharePoint team sites without actually being on the internal company network.

Setting up SharePoint in an extranet environment can be done in lots of ways. Configuring a SharePoint extranet in your company's network can be complex and is outside the scope of this book. However, the good news is that SharePoint Online, which is part of the Office 365 suite, eliminates many of the technical barriers to creating an extranet. In Chapter 23, I walk you through the steps to use SharePoint Online to create an extranet for collaborating with clients.

## Viewing Your Team Site in the Browser

To access your team site, you use a web browser, such as Internet Explorer, Google Chrome, or Mozilla Firefox. You need the web address or URL of your team site, which you can get from your primary SharePoint administrator or IT department. You also need a network user account with permissions to access the team site.

In my case, the web address for my team site is

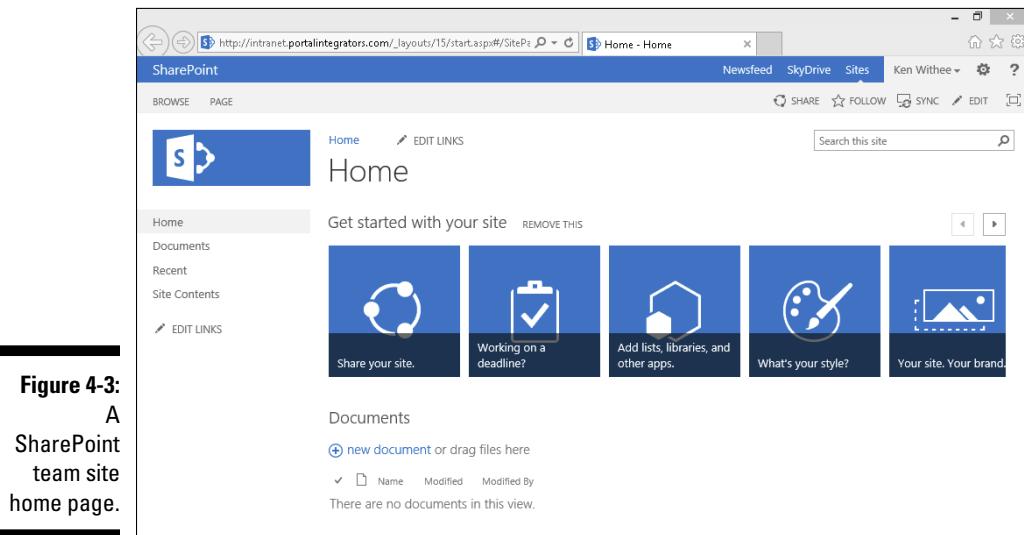
```
http://intranet.contoso.com
```

To access your team site:

1. Open your web browser.
2. Type the web address for your team site in the address bar and press Enter.

Figure 4-3 shows the home page for a SharePoint team site.

All SharePoint team sites have the same features. If you’re using a new team site, your site should match the one in Figure 4-3. If your site has been customized, it may look slightly different. Never fear: All the same features are still there. You may just have to hunt a little bit to find them.



**Figure 4-3:**  
A  
SharePoint  
team site  
home page.

## Choosing among IE, Chrome, and Firefox

Which browser should you use with SharePoint? Firefox, Chrome, and Internet Explorer browsers have some differences; for instance, some pages look better in Firefox or Chrome than in Internet Explorer. Because Chrome and Firefox were designed to be OS-agnostic, they support Mac and Linux users as well as Windows users. Microsoft has worked hard to make the

SharePoint experience the same in all mainstream browsers; however, you might find a scenario where something doesn't work as expected in all browsers. The bottom line is that if you think something should work and it isn't currently working, try the same thing in a different browser, then choose the one that works the best and is speedy.

The SharePoint page has the following major sections:

- ✓ **Header:** The header spans the entire top of the page. The header in a SharePoint page acts much like the menu in a traditional Windows application, such as Microsoft Word. SharePoint 2013 even features the Ribbon in the page header, similar to how the Ribbon appears in the top of many Office applications.
- ✓ **Left navigation pane:** The navigation pane provides quick access to the site's document libraries, lists, and discussion boards. You can even add links to content you create, such as documents and web pages.
- ✓ **Page content:** The content displays in the body of the page.

Generally speaking, the header and left navigation pane stay fairly consistent, whereas the body of the page changes to display the content for the web page. This is very similar to how most websites work.



Microsoft has spent a lot of money on usability research to determine how best to lay out the pages in SharePoint. I highly encourage you to use the layouts provided by Microsoft instead of creating your own custom layouts for team sites.

## Accessing Team Sites in Office 365

Accessing a site that is hosted in SharePoint Online, part of Office 365, may be a little different than sites that are hosted on your network. You may access your site through the main Office 365 portal URL, which is <http://portal.microsoftonline.com>.

Depending on how your company has configured its connection with Office 365, you may not be prompted to log in to Office 365. However, in my experience, most small to medium companies don't bother integrating their logins, so you will probably have to use your Office 365 username and password, which will be different from your account for your internal network.



Single sign-on is the name of the technology that enables your internal network login to be integrated with Office 365. As the name implies, you only have to sign in to the network once to access all network services, regardless of where those services live.

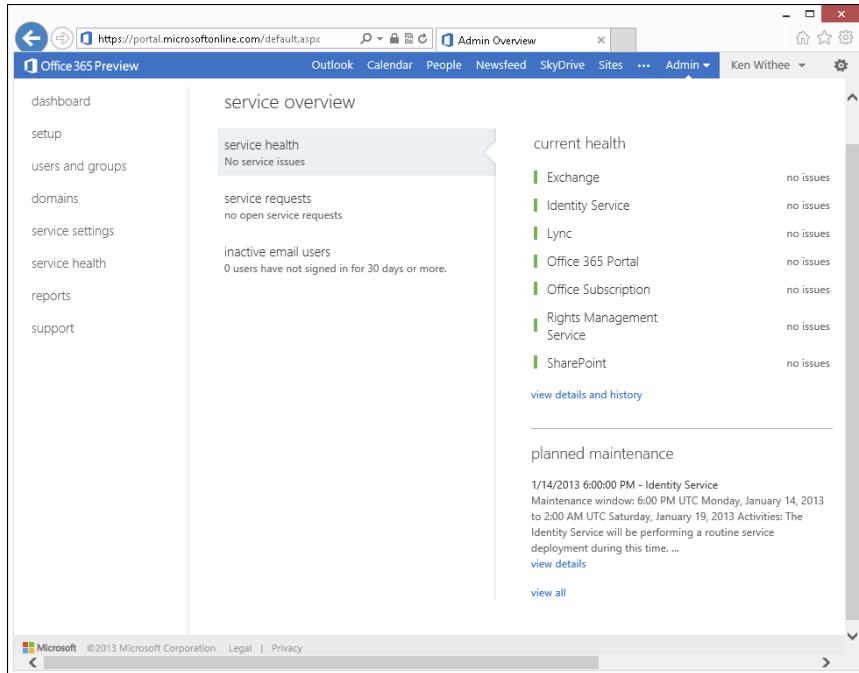
Figure 4-4 shows an example of the login screen for Office 365. You may want to select the Remember Me and Keep Me Signed In check boxes so you aren't prompted continuously to log in to Office 365. You still get prompted occasionally to change your password or verify your password.

Figure 4-5 shows the Office 365 main portal page for a user who has access to all the features of Office 365. In addition to SharePoint Online, it includes Exchange Online, Lync Online, and Microsoft Office 2013 Professional Plus. If your subscription only covers SharePoint Online, you don't see these other options.

A screenshot of a web browser displaying the Microsoft Office 365 login page. The URL in the address bar is https://login.microsoftonline.com/login.srf. The page features a large "Microsoft Office 365" logo at the top left. On the left side, there's a "new customer?" link and a bulleted list: "Access email and calendars from mobile devices", "Create Websites to share documents, contacts, and tasks", and "Work with Office documents from virtually anywhere with a browser". On the right side, there's a "sign in" section with fields for "User ID" and "Password", a "Forgot your password?" link, and two checked checkboxes: "Remember me" and "Keep me signed in". Below these is a "Sign in" button. At the bottom of the page, there are links for "Community" and "Feedback", along with copyright information: "©2013 Microsoft Corporation | Legal | Privacy".

**Figure 4-4:**  
Logging in  
to Office  
365.

**Figure 4-5:**  
The main  
Office 365  
portal home  
page.



You can click the Team Site link at the very top of the page or the Visit SharePoint Home link under the Team Site heading to reach your company's default team site.

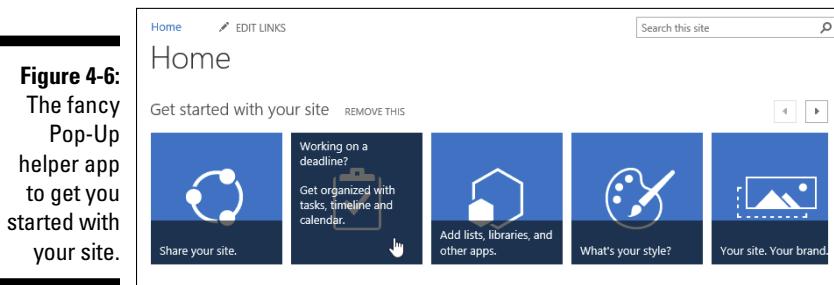
Alternatively, your administrator may give you the direct link to your team site. In that case, you would bypass the screen shown in Figure 4-5. However, you still have to log in to Office 365 if your company doesn't have the logins integrated.

## *Introducing the SharePoint Team Site*

Although you can choose from many different site templates when you create a SharePoint website, the most popular is the Team Site template. A website created using the Team Site template is designed with a number of useful features for teams. (Hence the template name, Team Site.)

When you first open your new team site, you can do a number of things right out of the gate. You can store your digital documents in the prebuilt Documents app, and you can get up and running with other apps using the fancy Pop-Up app.

As you hover the mouse over each tile in the Pop-Up app, a description pops up, as shown in Figure 4-6. When you click the tile, you can perform the operation described.



**Figure 4-6:**  
The fancy  
Pop-Up  
helper app  
to get you  
started with  
your site.

The pop-up guidance allows you to

- ✓ Get organized with tasks, a calendar, a timeline, and a place to store your digital documents
- ✓ Get social with a number of social networking features
- ✓ Share your site with others
- ✓ Synchronize your local documents with the cloud in order to access them from any device

Simply clicking a tile walks you through a particular task. This is a common theme in SharePoint. SharePoint often tries to be helpful and do things for you automatically. That often makes things very simple but can also lead to confusion by making you wonder, "What just happened?" In order to get familiar with SharePoint, it's a good practice to understand what SharePoint is doing for you. When you know what it is doing, it's very easy to take the next step and extend default behavior to meet your specific needs.

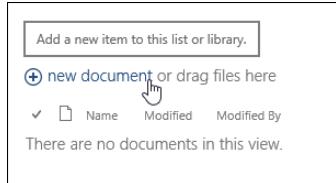
## *Uploading documents*

On a default team site, you see a section in the lower part of the page called Documents. This seemingly innocuous little thing is actually SharePoint at its finest.

In a nutshell, Documents is a digital repository to store your documents. Under the covers, however, Documents is a combination of pages, apps, and Web Parts. (You discover how it all comes together in the next few chapters.) Adding a document, such as an Office Word file, to Documents is as simple as clicking the New Document link, as shown in Figure 4-7. After a document

is located in SharePoint, you have all the content management functionality right at your fingertips, such as check-in/check-out, versioning, security, and workflow.

**Figure 4-7:**  
Adding  
a docu-  
ment to a  
SharePoint  
team site.



## Sharing your site

A site without any users is a bit pointless. You can share your site in a number of different ways. For a Team Site, the easiest way is to click the Share Your Site tile on the Pop-Up app on the main page. You can also share your site by clicking the Share button at the top of the screen.



If you don't have permission to share access to the site, then you won't see the Share button. SharePoint automatically removes it. In general with SharePoint, if you read about something and it doesn't match what you see on your site, then it is probably one of two issues: First, you might not have the right permissions for that particular feature; or second, the feature might not be activated or configured for your site. For example, if e-mail is not configured for your SharePoint instance, then you won't see the Share button.

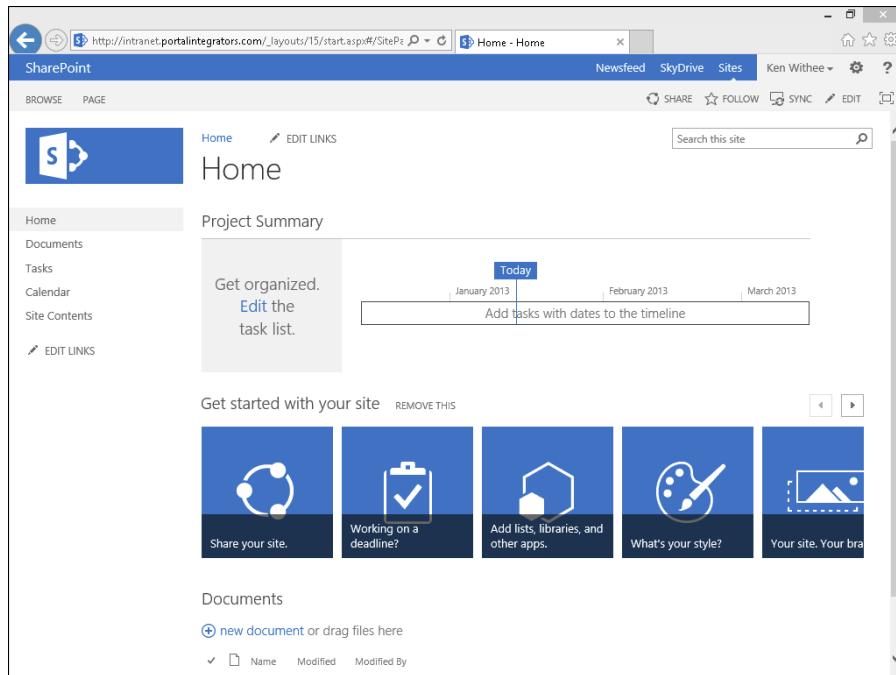
To find out more about activating and deactivating features, check out Chapter 12. And of course, you must also have the right permissions to activate the feature you're looking for.



If you use SharePoint Online, you have the ability to share a site with people outside your organization. This ability can be turned on and off by your administrator. If your site has the ability, you can just click the Share button, and then enter the e-mail address of the person with which you want to share to send that person an invitation link.

## Getting organized

The Working on a Deadline tile walks you through adding organizational apps to your Team Site. The pop-up tile creates the Task and Calendar apps and adds a Timeline to the top of your Team Site homepage, as shown in Figure 4-8.



**Figure 4-8:**  
The Timeline added to by the Working on a Deadline pop-up tile.

Just after the Working on a Deadline tile is the Add Lists, Libraries, and Other Apps tile. This pop-up tile takes you to the Your Apps page. This is the same result as clicking the Settings gear icon in the top right of the page and selecting Add an App. (Chapter 7 explores apps in detail.)

## Changing the look and logo of your site

The What's Your Style pop-up tile enables you to change the look and feel of your site. The tile takes you to the Change the Look page of your site, where you can choose a look. This is the same as navigating to the page by clicking the Settings gear icon, selecting Site Settings, and then clicking the Change the Look link in the Look and Feel section. (Changing the look and feel of your site is covered in Chapter 13.)

The final tile on the screen is called Your Site, Your Brand. This tile takes you to the Title, Description, and Logo page, where you can add a description and logo to your site. You can also access this page on the Site Settings page by clicking the Title, Description, and Logo link in the Look and Feel section.



The pop-up tiles are designed to get you up and going quickly. You can achieve the same result using the Settings gear icon and the Site Contents page.

## *Staying in sync and collaborating*

Many kinds of teams can use a SharePoint team site to collaborate. For example:

- ✓ Department members can use document libraries to upload document files and enter meetings in a team calendar.
- ✓ Project members can use a team site home page to post announcements and track issues and risks.
- ✓ Corporate communications can use a team site to store the documents and track the tasks required for preparing the company's annual report.

## Chapter 5

# Working with Web Pages

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Choosing between wiki pages and Web Part pages
- ▶ Creating new wiki pages
- ▶ Adding media to your wiki pages
- ▶ Creating new Web Part pages

**H**ow many times have you heard, “We need the team to get on the same page?” Well, no problem if you’re using SharePoint. If you’re a facilitator, communicator, and/or have a creative streak, you need this chapter. Although SharePoint gives you a lot of helpful tools to work with content, the ability to communicate effectively with your team, starting with a customizable home page, pulls everything together.

Web pages and Web Parts let you arrange and present information in a collaboration site. Pages can display freeform text, tables, hyperlinks, and images, as well as Web Parts showing app content from your site (or other sites!) arranged as you want. Web Parts can be closed temporarily or moved. You can modify the Web Parts to show only the data you want from an app. You can inform, organize, and focus your team with your pages; something that otherwise would take a lot of effort with e-mails and network shares.

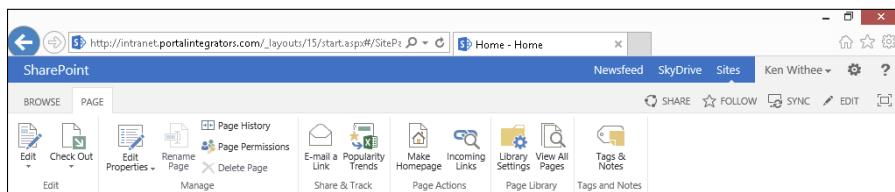
In this chapter, I show you how to work with web pages. In Chapter 6, I go into more detail about working with Web Parts.

## *Introducing the Ribbon*

In order to edit the contents of a SharePoint 2013 page, you need to access the Ribbon. The Ribbon is tucked away in the header of the SharePoint 2013 team site and is accessed by clicking the Page tab. When you click the Page tab, the header automatically switches to the Ribbon, and you can begin editing your SharePoint page. To flip back to the standard header, click the Browse tab. The Ribbon was introduced in Office 2007 and is a convenient way to display many menu items in a small amount of screen space.

The Ribbon in SharePoint 2013 features menu items that are relevant to the kind of page you’re viewing, arranged in tabs. For example, the home page of a team site displays two tabs: Browse and Page. You find most of the menu commands you need to use on the Ribbon, and some Ribbon buttons contain drop-down lists. Figure 5-1 shows the Ribbon with the Page tab active.

**Figure 5-1:**  
Use the  
Ribbon to  
access  
menu com-  
mands.



An app displays commands on the Ribbon that provide additional configuration options. These commands are *contextual* because the commands that appear depend on the context of where you are in the site. For example, the Document Library app adds a Files and Library tab to the Ribbon, in addition to the standard Browse tab.

In SharePoint 2010, all data containers were a list or library. The list and library are still there, but in SharePoint 2013 they are called apps.

## Understanding SharePoint Web Pages



Your team site is really just a collection of web pages. You have two different types of web pages for displaying your content — *Wiki Content pages* and *Web Part pages*.

There is also an advanced type of page known as a publishing page. Publishing pages are explored in Chapter 18.

If you’re already familiar with SharePoint team sites, you’ve probably worked with Web Part pages. In SharePoint 2013, Wiki Content pages are now the default web page type. They are stored in a wiki page library called *Site Pages*.

## Choosing a wiki page

A wiki page is designed to be intuitive and easy to get up and running with SharePoint pages. A *wiki page* is similar to an Office Word document. You place the page in Edit mode and start adding content. Just like a Word document, you have the Ribbon at the top to format text and insert items. And

when you want to get advanced and modify the HTML, all you need to do is click a button to edit the source code.

Only members of your team site's default Members group have permission to modify wiki pages. If you want some people to be able to read your wiki pages but not edit them, add those users to your site's default Visitors group. See Chapter 14 for more details on managing site access.

A Wiki Content page consists of a very editable region where you place your content. In this editable region, you can place almost any kind of content imaginable — freeform text, tables, hyperlinks, images, even Web Parts. A Wiki Content page combines the best aspects of a typical wiki page with a Web Part page.

You can create new Wiki Content pages for your site by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Add a Page. (The Settings gear icon is found in the upper-right corner of the page.) These new Wiki Content pages are also stored in the Site Pages library.



You can create additional wiki page libraries if you want to manage a specific wiki topic in your site.

## *Choosing a Web Part page*

A Web Part page contains various Web Part zones in which you can place Web Parts; it doesn't have the same editing experience as the Wiki Content page. The Web Part page, however, provides for a consistent layout of Web Parts in order to create ordered pages with Web Part functionality. For example, you can drag and drop Web Parts between zones without reconfiguring the Web Parts. A Wiki Content page, on the other hand, is more freeform. You could insert a table on a Wiki Content page and then insert Web Parts into different cells of the table, but that's a lot of work. With a Web Part page, you choose the Web Part zone layout when you create the page and add Web Parts to the available zones.

Web Part pages live in a library just like a Wiki Content page. You can create a new Web Part page in your Site Pages library by clicking the Files tab in the Ribbon and then selecting Web Part Page from the New Document drop-down list, as shown in Figure 5-2.

## *Choosing a Wiki Content page over a Web Part page or vice versa*

For some who have lived through different versions of SharePoint over the years, it may simply be familiarity that keeps you using a Web Part

page. Converting previous sites to the new version may be a factor as well. However, the need for creating rich content pages in a collaboration site is now better served by the Wiki Content page.

The following list helps you decide which type of page to create, based on your needs:

- ✓ **Web Part page:** Use when you need mostly Web Parts with little text content. Examples include pages with multiple List View Web Parts, Office application Web Parts, custom search and site directories, and pages that use connected Web Parts. Web Part pages are simple to create without the editor needing skills in rich content editing. Although versioning may be turned on in the library you store your Web Part pages in, the Web Parts themselves don't retain history.
- ✓ **Wiki Content page:** Use when you have mostly a need for rich text content; for example, text, tables, links, and images. You can still insert Web Parts or use no Web Parts at all. The HTML content in wiki pages is also subject to versioning if versioning is turned on in the library.



There is also a special type of site called a Publishing site. Publishing sites contain a special type of page called a publishing page. You can lock down a publishing page and allow people to enter or edit content but not change the look and feel or the location of the content. This is important for broadly consumed websites in order to maintain a consistent look and feel of content throughout the site. Publishing sites are a very advanced topic and require significant resources to implement and manage and are beyond the scope of this book. However, if you are a large organization and want to control at a very granular level how content is published to your SharePoint website pages, then dig further with Publishing sites.

The screenshot shows the SharePoint Site Pages library interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'SharePoint', 'BROWSE', 'FILES', and 'LIBRARY' tabs. Below the navigation bar, there's a toolbar with various document management icons like 'New Document', 'Upload Document', 'New Folder', 'Edit Document', 'Check Out', 'Check In', 'View Properties', 'Edit Properties', 'Delete Document', 'Share', 'Popularity Trends', 'Download a Copy', 'Workflows', 'Publish', 'Tags & Notes', and 'Workflows'. On the left, there's a navigation pane with 'Tasks', 'Calendar', 'Site Contents', and 'EDIT LINKS'. The main area shows a list of existing pages: 'Home' and 'How To Use This Library'. Below the list, there's a search bar with 'Find a file' and a 'new Wiki page' button. The URL in the browser bar is 'http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/\_layouts/15/start.aspx#/SitePages/AllPages'.

**Figure 5-2:**  
Creating a  
new Web  
Part page  
in the Site  
Pages  
library.

## *Creating a New Wiki Content Page*

If you want additional pages in your site that look and function like the home page, create a new Wiki Content page. Creating a new page of this type is slightly different than creating other content. You can create a new page in multiple ways, including clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Add a Page, creating a Forward link in a wiki page, and selecting the New Document command in the wiki library.

To create a new Wiki Content page using the New Page option, follow these steps:

**1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Add a Page.**

This creates a Wiki Content page only, not a Web Part page.

A dialog box appears, asking for the name of your new page and informing you where you can find it. If you look at the location, you see that the page will be created in the Site Pages library.

**2. Type the name for your page in the New Page Name text box and click the Create button.**

I suggest typing a single word that's a meaningful name, and use the text editors to type any title or other text in the page to communicate its purpose. As you type the name of the page, you see how the URL will look as the location preview is automatically updated.

Your new page is created and placed in Edit mode. You see other recently modified pages in this wiki library via links on the lower-left corner of the Quick Launch pane.

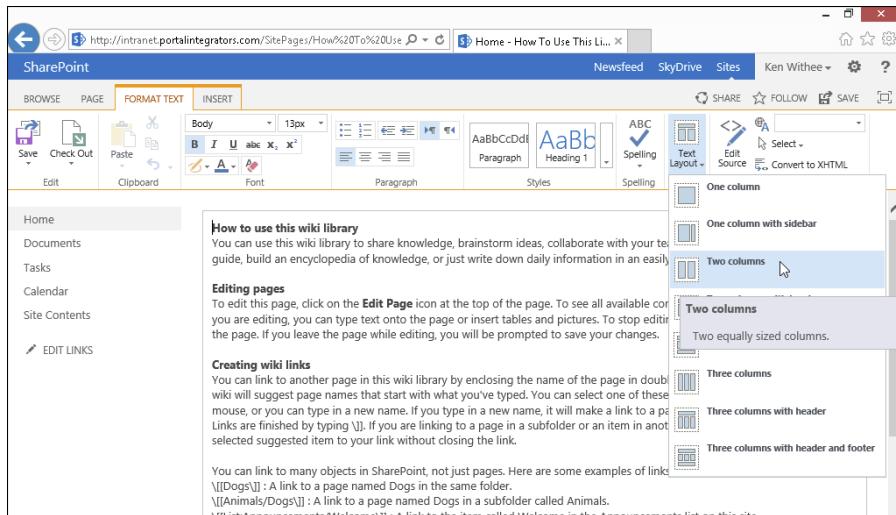
By default, the page is a single column, but you can change the page's layout to include more columns by clicking the Text Layout button on the Format Text tab of the Ribbon, as shown in Figure 5-3.



Every wiki library is created with a How to Use This Wiki Library page. After you have experience working with wiki libraries, you can choose to delete this page; however, it contains many helpful instructions and tips on working with the wiki functionality. You can access the How to Use This Wiki Library page by clicking the View All Pages button in the Ribbon of your new Wiki Content page. The View All Pages button takes you to the library that holds the page you're currently editing.

Your wiki pages are stored in the Site Pages library. You can browse to the Site Pages library using the left navigation pane or by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Contents→Site Pages. You can also click the View All Pages button in the Ribbon when editing any page that resides in the Site Pages library.

**Figure 5-3:**  
Change the  
layout of  
your wiki  
page.



## Adding media

Of course, you can add much more to a wiki page than just text. The Insert tab of the Ribbon provides menus for adding tables, media, links, reusable content, App Parts, and Web Parts. One advantage to using wiki pages over Web Part pages is that you can upload your media file and display it in your page without leaving the page. You don't have to upload your media files first and then link to them.

### Embedding a YouTube video

To display media in your wiki page, such as a YouTube video, follow these steps:

1. Create a new wiki page or browse to an existing page.
  2. On the Page tab of the Ribbon, click the Edit button to place the page in edit mode.
  3. Click inside the layout area where you want to display the media (in this example, a YouTube video).
  4. On the Ribbon, click the Insert tab.
  5. Click the Video and Audio drop-down list and select From Computer.
- The Upload Media dialog appears.
6. Click Browse and choose the media you want to upload.

You can also embed a YouTube or other video site video. On YouTube, find the video you want to place on your page and click the Share link. Click the Embed link, and copy the code. To insert this code in your wiki

page, click the Embed Code button on the Ribbon and paste the code into the page. Your YouTube video displays right in your SharePoint wiki page.

**7. Accept the default setting to upload the file to the Site Assets library and click OK.**

SharePoint uploads the file to the Images document library.

**8. A property window appears so you can enter metadata about the video file. Enter any metadata you want and click Save.**

If you wish to include a preview image, you can upload one to the Images folder and then provide the link in the metadata field called Preview Image URL.

You don't need a preview image, but it makes your page look more polished.

**9. Hover over the Media Web Part and click the Play button. The video starts to play.**

Pretty cool, huh? You can upload a video and display it in a page during one editing session.

### *Inserting a Note Board*

Want to allow your team to add comments about the wiki page? Follow these steps to insert a Note Board Web Part to capture social comments:

- 1. Create a new wiki page or browse to an existing page.**
- 2. On the Page tab of the Ribbon, click the Edit button to place the page in edit mode.**
- 3. Click inside the layout area where you want to display the media (in this example, a Note Board Web Part).**

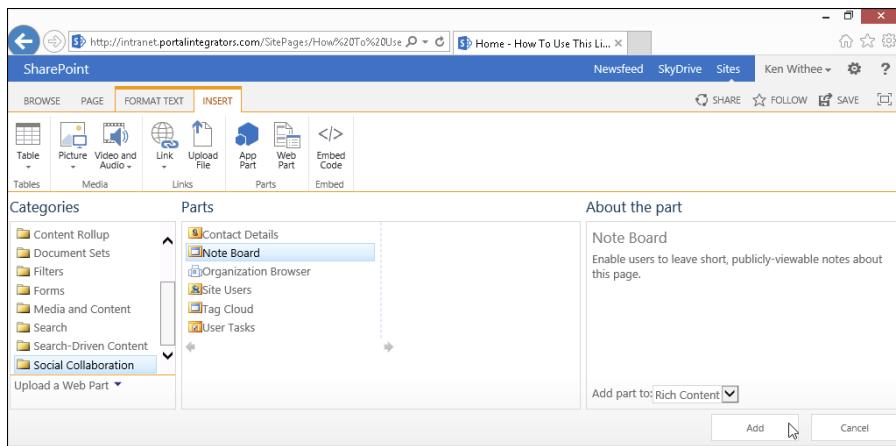


The Note Board Web Part isn't available in SharePoint Foundation 2013. You must be using SharePoint Server 2013. The features and functionality that are available in the different editions of SharePoint and SharePoint Online are complicated. Microsoft provides a nice matrix on their TechNet website to help make sense of it all at <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/jj819267.aspx>. The top of the matrix includes the feature matrix for SharePoint Online. If you scroll to the bottom, you see the feature matrix for SharePoint On Premise.

- 4. On the Ribbon, click the Insert tab.**
- 5. Click Web Part to display the Web Part gallery.**
- 6. In the Categories list, click Social Collaboration.**
- 7. In the Parts list, select Note Board, as shown in Figure 5-4.**
- 8. Click Add to add the Note Board Web Part to the page.**

The Web Part is added to the page.

**Figure 5-4:**  
Upload  
and display  
media with-  
out leaving  
the page.



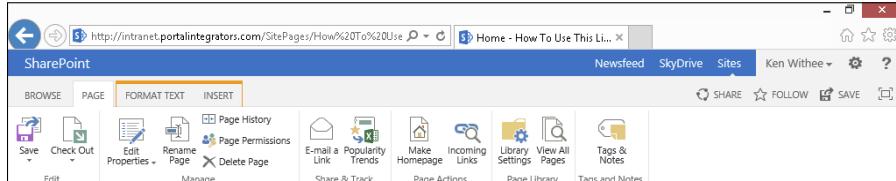
## Managing wiki pages

Wiki Content pages have commands on the Page tab of the Ribbon that are useful for managing pages. Some of the commands you will probably use (as shown in Figure 5-5) include

- ✓ Page History allows you to easily see all the edits made to the current page.
- ✓ Page Permissions lets you set unique permissions on the page.
- ✓ Make Homepage sets the current page as the home page for the team site.
- ✓ Incoming Links shows all the pages that link to the current page.
- ✓ View All Pages takes you to the wiki library where the page is saved.

After you are in the wiki library, you can use all the standard document library functions to manage the library's settings.

**Figure 5-5:**  
Manage  
wiki pages  
with the  
Page tab of  
the Ribbon.



## Categorizing your wiki pages

Wikis often include a way to categorize pages, and SharePoint wikis are no different. By default, the wiki library includes an Enterprise Keywords field that allows you to enter freeform keywords or tags on your wiki page. These tags can be displayed in a *tag cloud*, a visual representation of tags that indicates how often they occur in relation to each other and can help users find content they are interested in.

To add a tag to your wiki page:

1. **Activate the Enterprise Keywords column for the Site Pages library by clicking Library Settings on the Library tab and then clicking Enterprise Metadata and Keywords Settings.**

The Enterprise Keywords functionality is not available in SharePoint Foundation 2013. You must be using SharePoint Server 2013.

2. **Select the Add an Enterprise Keywords Column to This List and Enable Keyword Synchronization check box.**
3. **Click OK to save the change.**
4. **Browse to your wiki page, click the Page tab on the Ribbon, and click the Edit Properties button.**

The Edit form appears.

5. **Type tags in the Enterprise Keywords field.**
6. **Click the Save button.**

The web page has your keywords associated with it.

If you aren't sure of the difference between Enterprise Keywords and social tags, be sure to check out Chapter 16 for insights on how to use these important tagging mechanisms.



If you can't save the properties of a page, then it's likely that some services are not running for your SharePoint farm. Ask your farm administrator to check to make sure the Search Host Controller Service and the Search Query and Site Settings services are running. This is done in Central Administration on the Services on Server page.



If you need your wiki page to have a consistent layout that displays the Enterprise Keywords field on every page, you should probably use an Enterprise Wiki site template.

## *Creating a New Web Part Page*

I outline reasons earlier in this chapter on why you may need a Web Part or multiple Web Part pages in your collaboration site. A Web Part page can also be set as the home page. You can use links to connect your Wiki Content pages and Web Part pages.

To create a new Web Part page:

- 1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Contents.**
- 2. Click the Site Pages library or whichever library you want to hold your new Web Part page.**
- 3. Click the Files tab of the Ribbon.**

The Files tab appears.

- 4. Click the New Document drop-down list on the left of the Ribbon and select Web Part Page (refer to Figure 5-2).**
- 5. Enter a name for the new page in the Name text box, and then select a Layout by clicking a layout in the Choose a Layout Template box.**

Click different options in the list box to see a thumbnail of the layout options.

Layouts for Web Part pages can't be changed after the fact. You don't need to use every zone that appears on your layout, but you do want to select a layout that supports the desired design of your page.

- 6. Select the document library that will contain this page by selecting an option from the Document Library drop-down list.**

Web Part pages are stored in libraries, so by default the Site Pages library is selected for you. You can also create a new library to store your Web Part pages if you want to be different.

- 7. Click the Create button.**

Your new Web Part page opens in Edit mode, ready for you to start adding Web Parts.



You can change the home page of your site to any Wiki Content page or Web Part page. Simply click the Make Homepage button in the Page Actions area of the Edit tab on the Ribbon while editing the preferred page.

## Chapter 6

# Working with Web Parts

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Adding Web Parts to your web pages
- ▶ Picking the right Web Part
- ▶ Changing the way your Web Part acts
- ▶ Using one Web Part to filter another

**W**ebs *Parts* are reusable components that display content on web pages in SharePoint. Just as the name implies, a Web Part is a part of a web page that is all packaged together nicely and easy to work with. Web Parts are a fundamental part of the team site experience, so make it a point to get comfortable with them and know what your options are.



The Team Site template is just one option when creating a new SharePoint website. There are other templates you can choose to create a new website, and Web Parts are critical to all of them in SharePoint.

In this chapter, I introduce you to Web Parts and show you how to use them on your web pages.

## *Adding a Web Part to Your Page*

A *Web Part* is an individual component of content that can be placed on a SharePoint page, in either a zone in a Web Part page or in Rich Content areas of the Wiki Content page. Web Parts can be moved, added, and deleted, framed by borders and titles, and closed and reopened, depending on your need. In other words, they are a little piece of web functionality all wrapped up in a nice package for you.

In a team site, you may place Web Parts on your home page for your users to read and access items from your apps, such as announcements, documents, links, calendars, and contacts. You can add text for additional instructions and images to enhance the collaboration experience.

The Web Parts used to show your List and Library apps are called *List View Web Parts*. Over the versions of SharePoint, the number and complexity of Web Parts have grown considerably. Some of these Web Parts can be used only if certain functionality is enabled in your site, such as Business Data Sources to use the Business Data Web Parts. Other categories of Web Parts, such as Content Rollup Web Parts, provide the ability to feed data from lower-level sites to a site higher in the hierarchy, such as the home page of an intranet.

SharePoint 2013 has a familiar interface for selecting and inserting Web Parts. The interface is called the Web Part Gallery, and you see it whenever you click to insert a Web Part. The Web Part Gallery first shows a list of Web Part categories, and when you click a category, you see all the parts contained in that category. When the Web Part name is highlighted, you can see a description as well as an example of each in the About the Web Part section before inserting it.

Follow these steps to insert a Web Part:

**1. Make sure you're in Edit mode of either the Wiki Content page or the Web Part page (click the Page tab and click Edit Page).**

In a Wiki Content page, insert Web Parts into one of the Rich Content containers in the layout. In a Web Part page, insert Web Parts into one of the zones on the page.

**2. In a Web Part page, click in a zone. In a Wiki Content page, click in a Rich Content zone, and then click Web Part on the Insert tab.**

The Web Part Gallery appears.

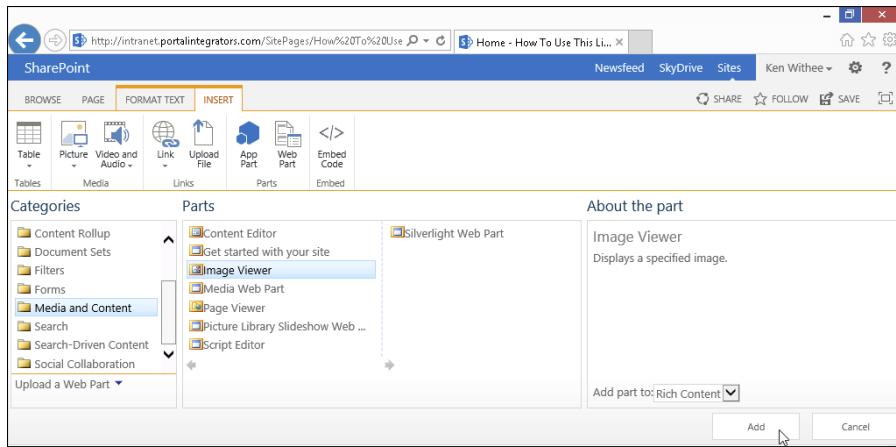
Because a Web Part page can contain only Web Parts, the Insert tab buttons for text and images actually insert a Content Editor Web Part or an Image View Web Part, respectively, for those selections.

**3. After you decide on a Web Part, you can add it to the page.**

Either select the area from the drop-down list and then click the Add button (as shown in Figure 6-1) or drag the Web Part name into the zone or Rich Content area you want to place it in.

You can also use the Add button under About the Web Part section to insert the Web Part into the zone or Rich Content section your cursor is in.

In a Web Part page, the About the Web Part section contains a drop-down list containing the names of all the zones on the page. You can select the zone and then click the Add button. In any case, the Web Part is placed on the page.



**Figure 6-1:**  
Inserting a  
Web Part on  
a Web Part  
page.

#### 4. Modify the Web Part properties by clicking the Edit drop-down list (in the far right of the Web Part title) and choosing Edit Web Part.

By clicking on the Web Part, additional configuration options may appear in the Ribbon. (Skip ahead to the “Changing Web Part Properties” section, later in this chapter, for more about configuring Web Parts.)



Web Parts can be moved in a Web Part page or a Wiki Content page simply by dragging them from one zone or area to another.

## Choosing the Right Web Part

The SharePoint 2013 gallery contains more than 80 Web Parts, as well as List View Web Parts created for any Library or List-based apps that you’ve made. In addition, your company may create custom Web Parts or purchase them from third-party vendors.



Your company may purchase or create additional Web Parts. Conversely, your company may choose not to supply every Web Part that I describe in the upcoming list. Companies may also modify some Web Parts, such as the Content Editor Web Part, to disallow certain styles or JavaScript content.

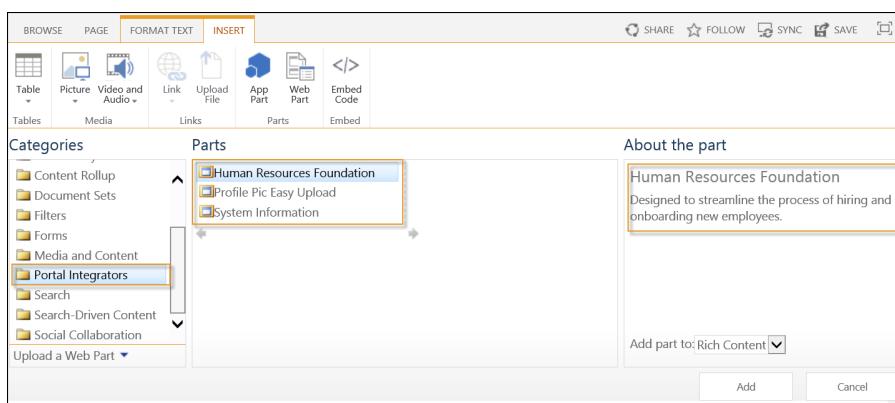
With so many choices, how do you decide which Web Part to use? If you’re like me, I’m sure you’ll find your favorites. I think about Web Parts as being either specialized or generalized in what they do. I tend to use the more general Web Parts, but in a lot of websites, I want to control how it appears. When I’m using an internal team site, I tend to use the specialized Web Parts that contain fewer configuration items.



A constant source of confusion in SharePoint is that things aren't always as you would expect. For example, you might read about a cool Web Part, but when you go to try it out, it's nowhere to be found. There are a couple of reasons for this. The first is that not all Web Parts are available for every edition of SharePoint (Foundation, Standard, and Enterprise). The second reason is that functionality is turned on and off with specific SharePoint features. For example, you might be looking for a Web Part that only becomes available when the related feature is activated for your site. If you read about something and can't seem to find it, your next step should be in figuring out which feature to activate to get what you're looking for.

When you insert a Web Part onto your page, you're presented with the Web Part Gallery. The Web Part Gallery organizes Web Parts into categories, as shown in Figure 6-2. The top category is always Apps. These are all of the apps you have added to your site. It also includes custom apps you have developed, such as a custom List or Library app.

**Figure 6-2:**  
Web Part  
categories  
can contain  
third-party  
Web Parts.



The Web Part categories include the following:

- ✓ **Apps:** These Web Parts displays items from the List and Library apps on your site. You can use Views to filter, sort, and group the information presented in the Web Part.
- ✓ **Blog:** This category includes Web Parts for working with blogs. For example, you can add Web Parts that provide links to older blogs, show blog notifications, or even provide tools for blog owners and administrators.
- ✓ **Business Data:** The Business Data Web Parts allow you to display data from external data sources. This category includes Web Parts for displaying Excel and Visio documents in your web page.

- ✓ **Community:** These Web Parts are designed for Community sites and include functionality for providing information about the community, joining the community, community membership details, and what's happening information. In addition, there is a Tools Web Part for community owners and administrators.
- ✓ **Content Rollup:** This category includes Web Parts for rolling up content from multiple sources. For example, there are Web Parts to aggregate sites, query content, and search for content. In addition, this category contains Web Parts to view RSS and XML feeds. Because more and more content is available in RSS and XML formats, these Web Parts are especially useful. You use an XSL template to tell the Web Part how to display the RSS or XML content on your web page.
- ✓ **Document Sets:** These Web Parts display the content and properties of a Document Set. A *Document Set* is a grouping of documents in a Library app.
- ✓ **Filters:** The filter Web Parts provide numerous ways to filter the information displayed on the page. For example, you can add the Choice filter to a page and then connect it to a List View Web Part so that the list is filtered by the value selected by the user. Your filter options include filtering by the current user who's visiting the page, date, good old-fashioned text values, or a query string. A *query string* is a value that you pass into the page by using a question mark, such as `mypage.aspx?filter=somevalue`. Another example would be adding a SharePoint List Filter Web Part to your page to only show certain items from a list. The actual list might include every product in your company, but you could add the Web Part to a department page and only show the products for that particular department.
- ✓ **Forms:** There are two Web Parts for displaying forms: the HTML Form Web Part and the InfoPath Form Web Part. An HTML form uses basic HTML code to show a form. InfoPath is an Office product designed for building forms with lots of integrated functionality. The InfoPath forms can be embedded in a web page using this Web Part.
- ✓ **Media and Content:** These Web Parts work well when your content needs are simple. Use the Media Web Part to display Windows Media Player on your web page. The Image Viewer Web Part lets you link to an image and display it on your page. If your company has Silverlight applications, they can be played using the Silverlight Web Part. The Content Editor Web Part is a perennial favorite because it allows you to enter almost any HTML, CSS, or JavaScript you want on your page.



Some of these Web Parts, especially the Content Editor Web Part, can really make it difficult to manage a site's content long-term. Imagine you have a team site with ten web pages. On each web page, you've placed three Content Editor Web Parts. That's 30 individual components you

have to touch every time you need to change content. Rather than add all this custom HTML and CSS code into a Content Editor Web Part, it would be better to have a developer create a custom Web Part to solve your specific need and to add the custom Web Part to the SharePoint gallery.

- ✓ **PerformancePoint:** PerformancePoint is a Business Intelligence platform designed for such specialties as Dashboards, Key Performance Indicators, and Scorecards. These Web Parts let you display PerformancePoint information in your web pages.
- ✓ **Search:** Although these Web Parts may seem specialized, they are actually quite powerful. You can use the Search Web Parts to create a custom search results page that is scoped to the content you want to filter.
- ✓ **Search-Driven Content:** These Web Parts take search to a whole new level. Using these Web Parts, you can build a web page based on search results. This creates a very dynamic page that is constantly updated as content is added and removed from the site. You can use Web Parts for searching and displaying pages, pictures, popular items, tagged items, recently changed items, recommended items, videos, web pages, and wiki pages.
- ✓ **Social Collaboration:** These Web Parts are designed for displaying social functionality on your web pages. You can add a number of social features to your pages such as contact details, note boards, site users, tag clouds, and user tasks. The Note Board Web Part is a particularly cool collaboration function. Dropping this Web Part on your page adds a Social Commenting box so that folks can add comments right inside your web page. Social commenting is part of SharePoint's new social networking features, which I discuss in Chapters 15 through 17.



In addition to the standard categories, you might also see custom or third-party categories. For example, Portal Integrators is a company that develops Web Parts for SharePoint. If your IT team has installed Portal Integrators Web Parts, then they will show up in a category called Portal Integrators (refer to Figure 6-2).



Any configuration or content that you put inside a Web Part isn't version-controlled. In other words, each time you change the Web Part, you write over any previous configuration or content. That's another reason I caution against using the Content Editor Web Parts. Store your content in lists and libraries where the content is subject to version control and retention policies, rather than placing it directly in the web page. You can export your Web Part's configuration using the Export on the Web Part's menu.



Content that you place inside a Rich Content control on a wiki page is version-controlled if versioning is enabled in your library.

## Changing Web Part Properties

After you select and insert a Web Part into your page, you may want to modify its properties to fit your needs. The number and type of properties you can modify are based on the type of Web Part you use.

### Reviewing Web Part properties

When you select the Edit Web Part command by clicking the Web Part menu (in the far right of the Web Part title), SharePoint opens the Web Part tool pane. In some Web Parts, SharePoint creates a link to this tool pane as part of the placeholder text. Following is a list of properties in the tool pane common to List View Web Parts:

- ✓ **Selected View:** The options in the Selected View drop-down list are dependent on the type of library or list and/or other views you may have created.

The Current View is simply what's showing currently. You change view properties on-the-fly using the Edit the Current View link in the tool pane. Your changes are now part of the current view. If you use the Edit in Current View link, you can't revert to a past view.

The Edit the Current View options are, for the most part, identical to what you see when you create a view in the Library or List app. Make sure you look at Styles and Item limits when creating a view for a Web Part because these options are frequently overlooked.

If the changes you need to make to the view are simple and few, the Edit the Current View link is handy. If you need to consistently apply the same view selections for this Web Part, create a view in the Library or List app so that you can apply the view and don't lose the options you chose.

- ✓ **Toolbar Type:** Depending on the Library or List app, this drop-down list allows you the options of Full Toolbar, Summary Toolbar, No Toolbar, or Show Toolbar. For example, in a Document Library app, choosing Full Toolbar enables users to upload the document, check it out, and so forth.

- ✓ **Appearance:** The Appearance section allows you to title the Web Part, fix the height and width as necessary, and determine the chrome type. *Chrome* is another word for the Web Part surround; for example, title and border options.



- ✓ **Layout:** In the Layout section, you can change the zone location of the Web Part, as well as hide it without closing it.
- ✓ **Advanced:** This section contains many of the options you use to allow users with permissions to modify Web Parts, such as Allow Minimize or Allow Close.
- ✓ **AJAX Options:** This section gives the owner/admin the choice of enabling *asynchronous behaviors*. This means that the data in the Web Part is sent to the page without causing the web page to refresh.
- ✓ **Miscellaneous:** Miscellaneous options including sample data, XSL link, and some caching properties.



In addition to these common categories, a third-party Web Part might have additional categories that are specific to the Web Part. For example, the Portal Integrators Web Parts include configuration categories specific to the purpose of the Web Part.

## *Editing Web Part properties*

Editing Web Part properties is pretty straightforward. Again, experimenting is the key. The most commonly used sections are located at the top of the tool pane: Selected View, Toolbar, and Appearance. Many users don't realize how much they can enhance the user experience with the Web Part by using the options available.

To open the Web Part tool pane and modify Web Part properties, follow these steps:

**1. Click the Web Part menu on the Web Part and choose Edit Web Part.**

The tool pane opens. You see several of the categories of properties that I describe in the preceding list. You may need to click the plus sign to open certain sections.

You need to be in page Edit mode before the drop-down list to select Edit Web Part appears.

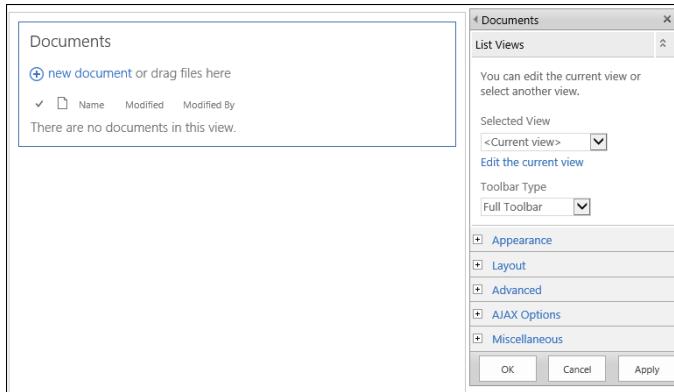
**2. Adjust properties as desired (see Figure 6-3).**

Make your selections based on the categories and options that I describe in the preceding list or other options available per the specific Web Part.

**3. Click the Apply button to apply your current changes before modifying others, or click OK to finish modifying.**

Your changes are visible in the Web Part.





**Figure 6-3:**  
Change your  
Web Part's  
configura-  
tion.

## *Deleting or minimizing Web Parts*

You have two options for removing a Web Part from your page — closing or deleting. Closing a Web Part leaves the Web Part on the page so you can enable it again for future use. Deleting the Web Part removes the Web Part from your page (but doesn't delete it from SharePoint).

To close or delete a Web Part from your page, click the Web Part menu, as I describe in the preceding list, and choose Close or Delete.

When you want to add a closed Web Part back to the page, you find a category in the Web Part Gallery called Closed Parts. Clicking the Closed Parts category reveals all the Web Parts on the page that have been closed. On the other hand, if you delete a Web Part, it will be gone forever.

If you spend time configuring a Web Part and want to remove it, it's better to close it so that you don't lose all your configuration changes. Keep in mind that having a closed Web Part on a page causes the same performance impact as if they were open. So you don't want a ton of closed Web Parts if you don't need them.

## *Connecting Web Parts*

One cool thing you can do with Web Parts is connect them to each other. This allows you to use one Web Part to filter the values of another Web Part. This is a very powerful feature that allows you to create useful, data-driven web pages in your team site.

Follow this process to connect two Web Parts:

**1. Add both the Web Parts you want to connect to your web page.**

For example, you can create a custom app called Customers based on the Custom List app. Assume the Customers app contains a column for customer name and a column for customer city. You can then add the associated Customers Web Part to the page along with a SharePoint List Filter Web Part.



Creating a custom list app is covered in Chapter 7.

**2. Click the drop-down arrow on the SharePoint List Filter Web Part, choose Connections>Send Filter Values To, and then choose the name of the Customers Web Part you want to filter, as shown in Figure 6-4.**

The Choose Connection dialog box appears. The Choose Connection tab displays the connection type that you selected in this step.

**3. Click the Connection Type drop-down list, choose Get Filter Values From, and click the Configure button.**

This is the field that has the set of values you want to match from your filtering Web Part. To filter a Customers list Web Part with a City column, I chose the City field as the Consumer Field Name, as shown in Figure 6-5.

**4. Click the Finish button.**

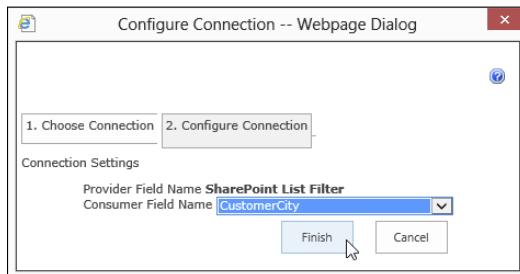
The connection is established.

**5. On the Page tab of the Ribbon, click Stop Editing.**

The page exits edit mode. As you select values in the filter Web Part, the connected Web Part is filtered accordingly, as shown in Figure 6-6.

Title	CustomerName
CustomerID1	Customer One
CustomerID2	Customer Two
CustomerID3	Customer Three
CustomerID4	Customer Four

**Figure 6-4:**  
Choosing  
which Web  
Part to filter.



**Figure 6-5:**  
Select the  
field that  
contains  
your filter  
values.

A screenshot of a SharePoint page titled "Connect Web Parts". On the left, there's a navigation bar with links like Home, Documents, Tasks, Calendar, Recent, Orders, Customers, Site Contents, and EDIT LINKS. In the center, there's a section titled "SharePoint List Filter" with a dropdown menu containing the value "Seattle". Below this, there's a table titled "Customers" with columns "Title", "CustomerName", and "CustomerCity". Two rows are visible: "CustomerID1" with "Customer One" and "Seattle", and "CustomerID3" with "Customer Three" and "Seattle".

Title	CustomerName	CustomerCity
CustomerID1	Customer One	Seattle
CustomerID3	Customer Three	Seattle

**Figure 6-6:**  
A filtered  
Web Part.



## **Chapter 7**

---

# **Getting Familiar with Apps**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Understanding the concept of a SharePoint app
  - ▶ Adding apps to your site
  - ▶ Configuring a List app
  - ▶ Figuring out how apps fit in with the rest of SharePoint
- 

**T**he concept of an app is new in SharePoint 2013. An *app* is Microsoft's attempt to help stem confusion because getting your head around lists and libraries is difficult, especially when you start customizing them. For example, say you start with a custom list and then add columns to make it specific to customers. Is it still just a custom list or is it a Customers list or what? Microsoft posed this question to a number of focus groups and found that people were more comfortable with the concept of an app than a list or library. The result is that every list and library is now called an app.

Apps don't end at lists and libraries, though. Web developers can create apps that do all sorts of cool things. Because SharePoint 2013 is built using HTML standards, a web developer can take any web functionality and roll it into a SharePoint app. Third parties can put up their apps for sale on the online SharePoint App Store, and you access it from within SharePoint.

In this chapter, you delve into apps. You find out how to add apps to your site and how to configure apps. You find out that most apps are based on lists. And finally, you see how to configure these list-based apps.

## ***Introducing SharePoint Apps***

The concept of an app in general is nothing new. If you use a smartphone, you're surely familiar with apps. Each type of smartphone has thousands and thousands of apps available. SharePoint 2013 has jumped on the app bandwagon and embraced the concept of an app. An app can be simple or complex. For example, you might create an app by customizing the Custom List app. On the other hand, you might hire a web developer to build a complete accounting system as a SharePoint app.



An app displays commands on the Ribbon that provide additional configuration options. These commands are *contextual* because the commands that appear depend on the context of where you are in the site. For example, the Document Library app contains a Files and Library tab in addition to the Browse tab.

## Adding Apps to Your Site

When you create a new SharePoint site you choose a template. Depending on the template you choose, your site already has a number of apps by default. You can add more apps to your site, however. For example, you might want to add a Survey app to your site.

You can add an app (for example, the Survey app) to your site by following these steps:

- 1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Add an App.**

The Your Apps page appears, showing all the apps you can add to your site. (See Figure 7-1.) There is a Noteworthy section at the top for the most common apps.

- 2. Scroll down and click the Survey app.**

The Adding Survey dialog box appears.

- 3. Provide a name for your Survey app.**

You can also click Advanced Options to set app specific options. In this case, you can choose to show usernames in the survey and also choose whether you want the Survey app to allow multiple responses.

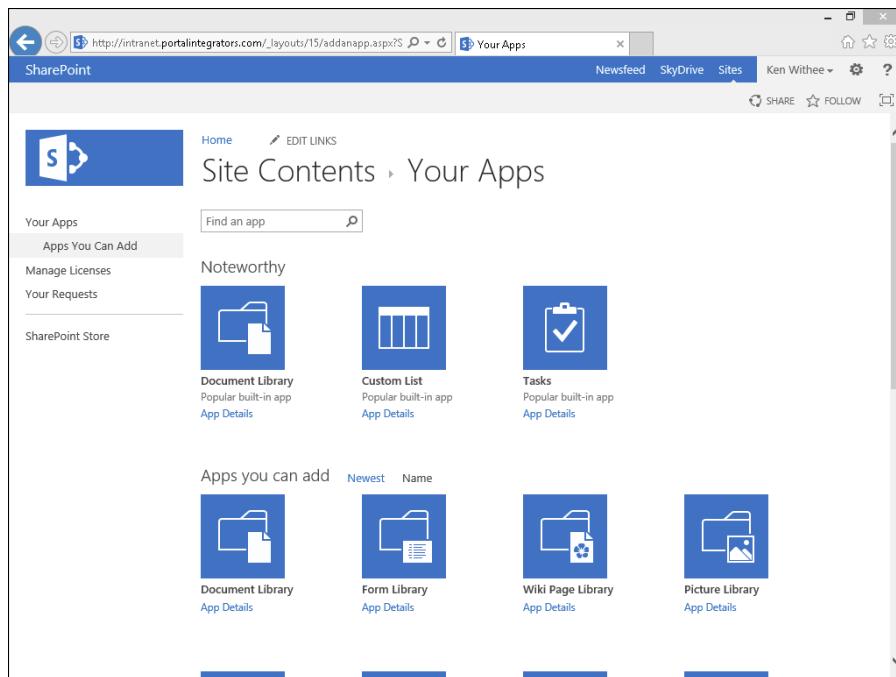
- 4. Click Create to create the app and add it to your site.**

The Site Contents page is displayed, which shows all of the apps on your site. A green New! label is displayed next to any new apps. Notice you now have a new Survey app with the title you provided in Step 3. Figure 7-2 shows the app on the Site Contents page.

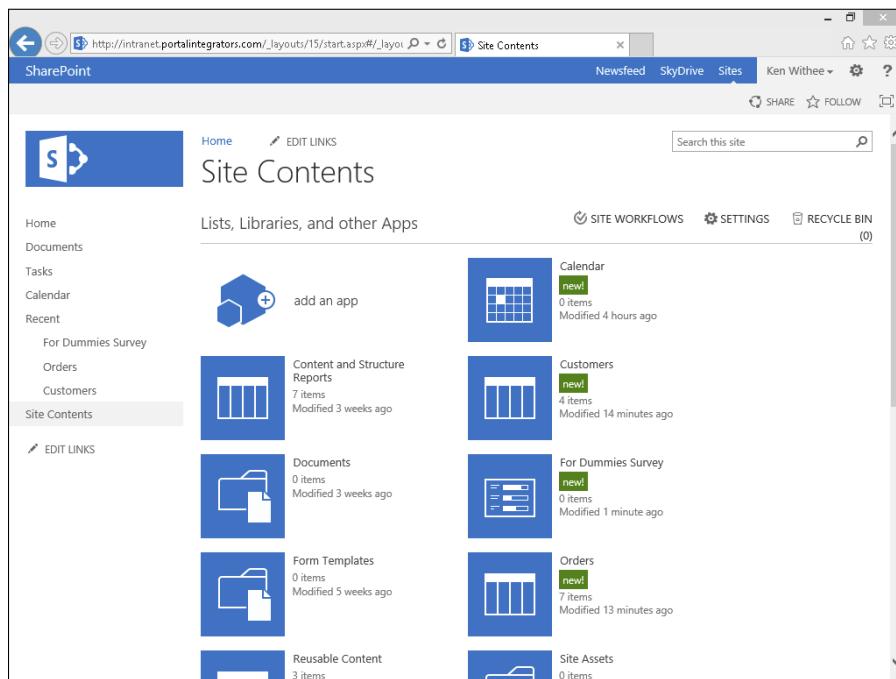
You can access an app by clicking on it in the Site Contents page. If you click an app you just created, it will display on the screen.



The apps that are available on the Your Apps page depend on which SharePoint features are activated. To find out more about SharePoint features, check out Chapter 10.



**Figure 7-1:**  
Add a new  
app to your  
SharePoint  
2013 site.



**Figure 7-2:**  
A Survey  
app on  
the Site  
Contents  
page.

## Accessing App Settings

Most apps are based on a list or library. A list or library has a settings page where you can configure your app. To view or change the configuration settings of your Library or List app, use the Library Settings or List Settings page. This page is the hub where you can find all the options for configuring and customizing your List or Library app to meet your business requirements. You can find shortcuts to many of these options on the Ribbon.

Follow these steps to access the Library Settings or List Settings page:

- 1. Navigate to your library or list by clicking the name of the library or list on the Site Contents page.**

You can access the Site Contents page from the Settings gear icon.

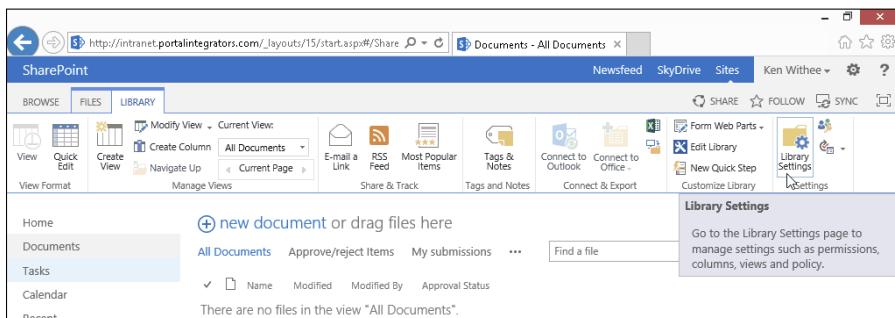
- 2. On the Ribbon, click the Library or List tab.**

Locate the Settings section, which is on the far right.

- 3. Click the Library (or List) Settings button, as shown in Figure 7-3.**

The Library Settings or List Settings page appears. (You may have already accessed this page when completing the steps in other chapters in this book.)

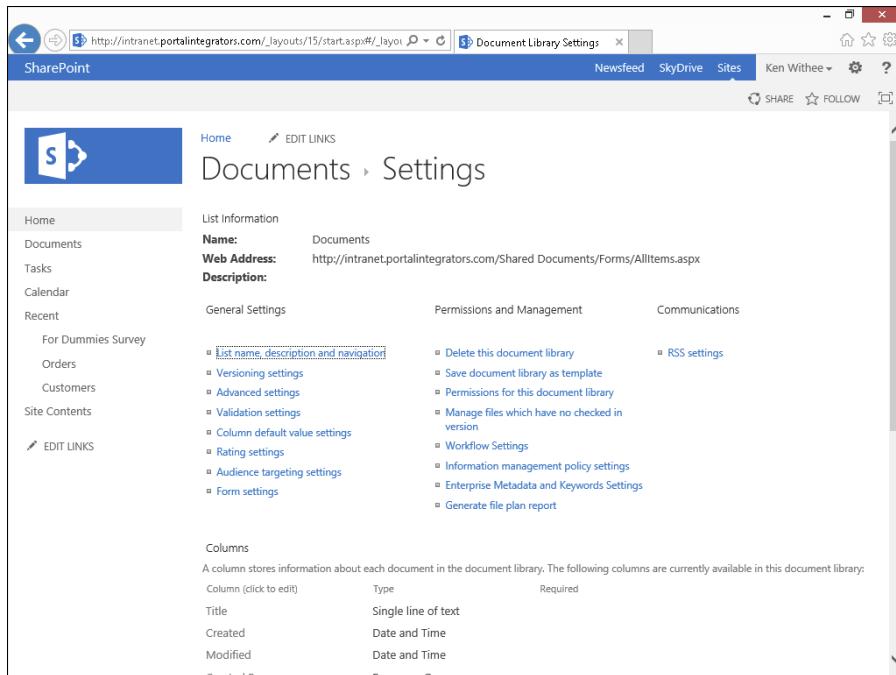
**Figure 7-3:**  
Click the  
Library  
Settings  
button to  
change your  
library's  
configura-  
tion.



The Library (or List) Settings page is divided into several sections. Each section contains many configuration choices, as shown in Figure 7-4. I suggest you spend some time browsing this page. Some of the sections you see include

- List Information:** Displays the library (or list) name, web address, and description.

You can change the list's name and description by clicking the List Name, Description, and Navigation link in the General Settings column.



**Figure 7-4:**  
The Library  
Settings or  
List Settings  
page.

The web address is set to the list’s default view. Change the default view by scrolling down to the Views section of the Library (or List) Settings page.

When you link to a list or library, use the root of the web address. That way, you can change the default view any time you want without needing to change any links that target the list. For example, to create a link to the Shared Documents library, you would use the following:

```
http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/Shared Documents
```

- **General Settings:** Includes list name and description as well as settings for Versioning, Advanced, Validation, Column Default Value, Rating, Audience Targeting, and Form. See Table 7-1 for a complete list of General settings.
- **Permissions and Management:** Includes saving the library or list as a template as well as settings for Permissions, File Management, Workflow, Information Management Policy, and Enterprise Metadata and Keywords. You can also generate a file plan report from this section. (See Chapter 14 for more about security settings.)
- **Communications:** Configure RSS and incoming e-mail settings for the library or list.

- *Content Types*: If you have configured your library or list to allow for content types, a Content Types section appears. Use this section to associate content types with your list or library. With content types, you can reuse columns across sites, as well as across lists and libraries. (See Chapter 8 for a more thorough discussion of content types.)
- *Columns*: Create, view, add, and modify columns for the library or list. See Chapter 8 to review column types. You can create your own column for this list only, add a site column from the preconfigured SharePoint site columns, or create a new site column of your choosing that can be added to multiple lists.
- *Views*: Display and modify the library or list views. You can also create new views.

Many site owners never change the default settings options; some simply change the List name or delete the list. For others, this level of optional setting detail is what they want to know first! Microsoft supplies descriptions on the how and/or why to use the settings on each of the individual settings pages; however, this chapter may become one of the most dog-eared chapters in the book because there are so many options to remember!

## Configuring the General Settings

The General Settings area of the Library or List app has been expanded in SharePoint 2013 to include multiple new settings, including Validation, Column Default Value (for libraries), Rating, Audience Targeting, and Form. See Table 7-1 for an overview to see what you can do with each of these options.

---

**Table 7-1      General Settings Configuration Options**

<b>Setting Name</b>	<b>What You Can Accomplish</b>
List Name, Description, and Navigation	Just like it sounds! (See the section, “Changing the title, description, and navigation,” later in this chapter.)
Versioning	Configure item approval, versioning (major and minor), and require check-out.
Advanced	A plethora of options, including allowing for the management of content types, search visibility, allowing for folders, or datasheet view.
Validation	Allows you to create formulas that compare two or more columns in your library or list.

---

<b>Setting Name</b>	<b>What You Can Accomplish</b>
Column Default Value	Add or edit default values for columns indicated in the library or list Validation settings.
Rating	A Yes or No option that allows items in the library or list to be rated.
Audience Targeting	A Yes or No option that allows the library or list to use audience targeting. Enabling audience targeting creates a Targeting column for this list. Some Web Parts can use this data to filter list contents based on whether the user is in the audience.
Form	Available for lists only. You need InfoPath 2013 to utilize these settings.

## *Changing the title, description, and navigation*

The General Settings page is a simple, self-descriptive settings page. Most of these options are what you configure when you first create the Library or List app, including whether the app appears on the Quick Launch navigation.



Changing the title does *not* change the web address (URL) of the app. If having the title match the URL is important, or less confusing to your team, consider re-creating a new app with the desired title and deleting the old one. Of course, this works better early in the process, before you upload documents or create apps!



If you already have many items in your app, you can copy documents from one Library app to another, or export an existing List app to Excel and re-import into a new one. However, this shouldn't be taken lightly. Some column configuration settings, such as a Choice column, need to be re-created along with all the app settings I discuss in this chapter. If you're unsure what you want to name an app when you create it, take some time to consider your terminology before creating the app.

## *Versioning settings*

The Versioning Settings area contains some of the most sought-after settings in any app. Versioning settings cover most of the document management or content management choices. So your new document/content management mantra is *approval, versioning, and check out*. I can say it in my sleep. By default, Approval, Versioning, or Check Out Requirement settings are *not* turned on in a team site.

The reason versioning is turned off by default is that it takes up a large amount of space in the database. Each time a new version is created, the database grows. However, versioning is important for any real work, so I recommend you turn it on.



If you want to have these options enabled when your sites are configured, consider using a publishing site instead.

Before selecting these options, make sure you know the business processes of your team. If documents are thoroughly vetted and approved outside the SharePoint process, you may not want or need Approval settings or Check Out enforced. If your documents are images, you may or may not want to apply versioning if the versions don't matter to you and you would not need to revert to an older version.



Consider using multiple Document Library apps and apply different settings based on need. For example, if you have 100 documents in a Library app and really only need versioning and approval on 5 of those documents, perhaps they can be placed in a Library app with extra configuration.

Versioning can be one of the most misunderstood features of SharePoint document management. Versioning is a helpful protection mechanism because you can revert to a previous version of the document if necessary. *Versions* in SharePoint are copies of the same document at different intervals during editing.



I suggest adding the Versions column to your views so that users can quickly see the version of the document. Otherwise, you end up with users appending versioning information to the document's name or title, such as Employee Handbook v1.0, Employee Handbook v2.0, or my favorite, Client\_Proposal\_Final\_v3.0\_FINAL\_KW-edited\_RW-reviewed\_FINAL-DO-NOT-REVISE\_02-06-2013.

Follow these steps to apply or modify Versioning settings:

- 1. Click the Versioning Settings link in the Library Settings or List Settings page.**

The sections of the Versioning Settings page include Content Approval, Document Version History, Draft Item Security, and Require Check Out (Library apps only).

- 2. Choose whether to require item approval in the Content Approval section by selecting the Yes or No radio button.**

If you selected Yes in answer to Require Content Approval for Submitted Items?, individuals with the Approve Items permissions can always see draft items.

Items that aren't approved yet (meaning they are draft versions) aren't visible to site members or visitors. You can designate who you want to

view drafts in the Draft Item Security section. See Chapter 18 for details on content approval.

3. In the Document Version History section, select a radio button to indicate whether to use No Versioning, Create Major Versions, Create Major and Minor (Draft) Versions, or (optional) specify the Number of Versions to keep by entering a number.

The default for a List or Library app is No Versioning. You can select Major Versions (1.0, 2.0., 3.0, and so on) or Major and Minor Versions (1.0, 1.2., 1.3, 2.0, and so on). Selecting either of the last two options enables you to designate a limit for the number of versions of each type by entering a number up to 10,000.

4. Choose who can see draft items by selecting a Draft Item Security radio button in the Draft Item Security section.

This section is disabled unless you allow for minor (draft) versions or require content approval of your documents or list items. Here are the three options for who can see draft items — Any User Who Can Read Items, Only Users Who Can Edit Items, or Only Users Who Can Approve (and the Author).

5. Determine whether to require check out for users editing documents by selecting the Yes or No radio button.

Although it can sometimes be a hassle (I often forget I have checked out a document, sometimes months ago!), requiring check out is another good safety mechanism that makes sure the other users don't see a document in mid-modification or have multiple users editing at the same time (last save wins).

Consider adding the Checked Out To column to your views so that users can quickly see who has an item checked out.

6. Click OK or Cancel.

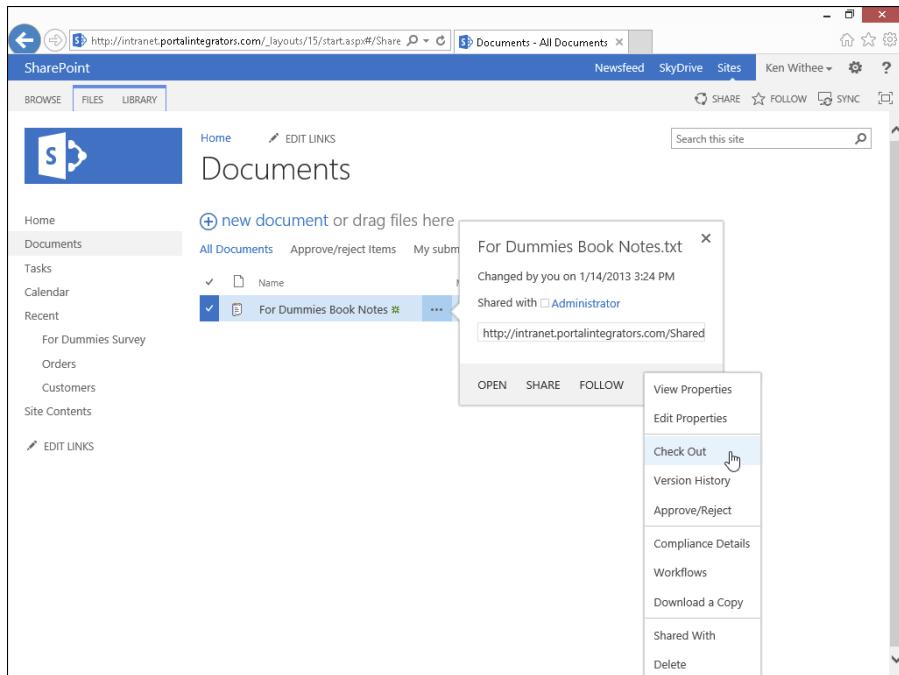
If you click OK, your Versioning settings are applied. Go try them out!

When viewing documents in a Library app, you can click the ellipsis to see a contextual menu, as shown in Figure 7-5. This menu allows a document's editor to check out/check in the document, approve, set off a workflow, and so forth. Because the menu is contextual, if approval isn't set on the library or list, for example, Approve doesn't appear on the menu. If a document is checked out, the option to Discard Check Out appears.



In most cases, team members navigate to the site using a browser to work with list apps. However, think about how your team interacts with documents. They may be navigating to an app using the browser, but they may also be linking from a bookmark or opening the document directly from the editing application (such as Word, Excel, or PowerPoint). Although current versions of Office support and interact with SharePoint Library app settings, users may not know where to find these commands.





**Figure 7-5:**  
A document's context menu.



Avoid frustration by taking a little time to review the settings and options with your team. Training on these document management options is one of my number one recommendations for SharePoint collaboration success, especially for teams with many members or contributors.

## Advanced settings

Advanced settings include many powerful configuration options for Library and List apps:

- ✓ **Content Types:** Allows you to add and remove content types associated with the app. See Chapter 18 for details on creating your own content types.
- ✓ **Document Template (Library app only):** Allows you to specify the default template, such as a Word or PowerPoint template, that is used when someone clicks the New button to create a new document.

You can also associate document templates with content types, so you can use multiple content types with a library to associate multiple document templates. Sounds confusing, but in a nutshell, having multiple document types and templates enables you to have multiple options for creating a document when you click the New button. For example, you



might have a Word template for expenses and a Word template for vacation requests. These can both show up in the New drop-down list using content types.

- ✓ **Opening Documents in the Browser (Library app only):** Enables you to determine the behavior of the browser when someone clicks on a document to open it. If you don't want to use the Office Web apps, disable the opening of documents in the browser. This also allows users to send direct links to the documents if necessary.
- ✓ **Custom Send to Destination (Library app only):** This is a great option that lets you add your own web address to the Send To menu on a document's Edit menu. Your SharePoint administrator can also add global addresses that appear in the Send To menu in every document library. The Send To command sends a copy of your file to another location, such as another team site where you want to share the document.
- ✓ **Folders:** Indicates whether users can create new folders in the Library app. I like to turn off this option so people don't go folder crazy. You can always turn on the option so you can create folders when necessary and then turn it back off.
- ✓ **Search:** Specifies whether items in the app should appear in search results.
- ✓ **Offline Client Availability:** Allows you to specify whether users of desktop client software, such as Outlook, can download content for offline viewing.
- ✓ **Site Assets Library (Library app only):** Allows you to designate the Library app as a Site Assets Library, which makes it easier for users to browse to the Library app to find multimedia files.
- ✓ **Datasheet:** Allows you to specify whether users can edit the items in the app using the datasheet view.
- ✓ **Dialogs:** By default, list and library forms launch in a dialog box. This option lets you specify that forms should open in the browser window as a page instead of a dialog box.

In addition, List app advanced settings include item-level permissions and attachments.

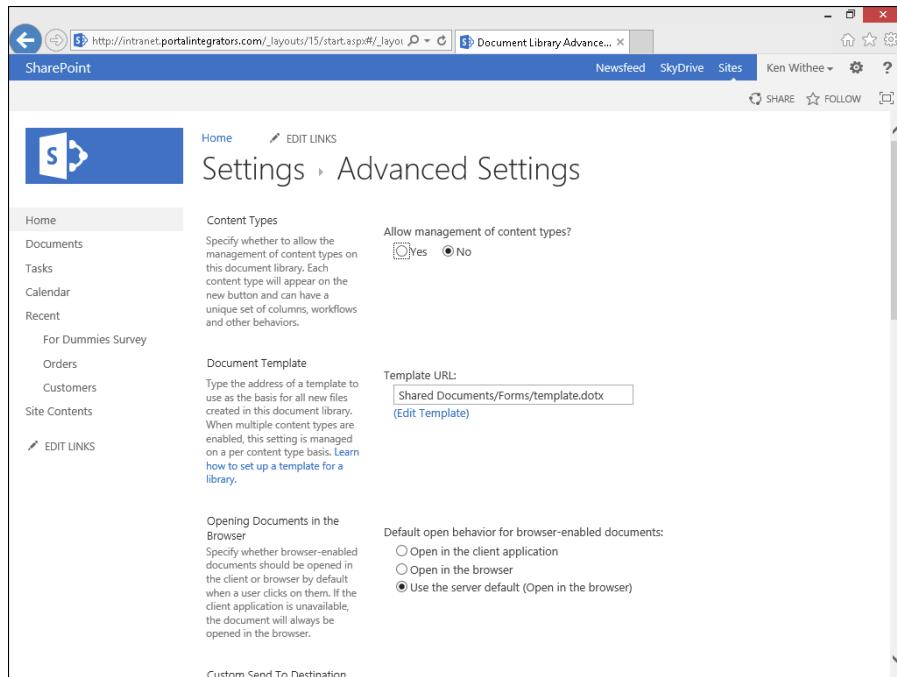
Follow these steps to apply or modify Advanced settings:

1. Click the Advanced Settings link in the Library Settings or List Settings page.

The Advanced Settings page appears, as shown in Figure 7-6.

2. Choose whether to enable management of content types by selecting the Yes or No radio button.

If you select Yes, after applying, your Library Settings or List App Settings page will contain a new section for Content Types. The default is No.



**Figure 7-6:**  
Configuring  
Advanced  
settings.

### 3. Change the document template (Library app only) by specifying a template URL in the Template URL text box.

Library apps have a default template for new documents. Remember, you can create a new document in a Library app, as well as upload documents that have been created previously. For example, the document template for a Document Library app is the default Word template. You could change this to an Excel or PowerPoint template. You could also change it to a custom template you created in one of these applications.

If you're working with content types, you can enable a different template for each document type. For example, your library may house contracts and have three content types for different contracts, all with a different template available on the New button.

If you opt for a different document template, upload the template to the Forms folder in Document Library app and change the Template URL in the Document Template section of the Advanced Settings page.

### 4. Choose when to open documents in the browser (Library app only), the client application, or as the server default by selecting a radio button option in the Opening Documents in the Browser section.

If the client application is unavailable, the document opens in the browser.



**5. Add a Custom Send to Destination (Library app only) by entering the name that should display on the Send To menu and the URL destination.**

Similar to Windows commands (for example, Send to Desktop), you can create an option to appear on the Edit menu for documents in this Library app to be sent to another SharePoint destination. Supply a short name to appear on the contextual menu and a URL for the destination in the Destination Name and URL text boxes.

**6. Select whether folders can be created in this app by selecting the Yes or No radio button in the Folders section.**

Selecting Yes or No determines whether the New Folder command is available on the New menu. The default is Yes.



I usually disable folders unless I have a good reason to use them. In my opinion, the only good reason to use folders is when you have a set of documents that require unique permissions but must remain in the same app. If you leave folders enabled, people will use them.

**7. Determine the search visibility for this app by selecting the Yes or No radio button in the Search section.**

Selecting No for the Search option can keep the items in the app from being presented in search results, even if the site or app is included in Search settings. The default is Yes.

**8. Enable offline client availability by selecting the Yes or No radio button in the Offline Client Availability section.**

The Offline Client Availability option determines whether items in the app can be downloaded to offline client applications, such as Outlook. The default is Yes.

**9. Add app location to the Site Assets Library (Library app only) by selecting the Yes or No radio button in the Site Assets Library section.**

This new Site Assets Library option specifies whether this Library app appears as a default location when uploading images or other files to a wiki page. This can be especially beneficial for Document Library apps that contain images or a Picture Library app. This keeps wiki editors from searching all over for the images they should be using. The default is No.

**10. Determine whether the app can be viewed in datasheet view by selecting the Yes or No radio button in the Datasheet section.**

This option determines whether the datasheet can be used to bulk-edit data on this app. The default is Yes.

**11. Indicate whether forms should launch in a modal dialog box by selecting the Yes or No radio button in the Dialogs section.**

Modal dialog boxes get old pretty quickly, so I suggest you select the No option on this section quite often.

**12. Click OK or Cancel.**

If you click OK, your selections are applied.

Other advanced configuration settings available in a List app (not Library app) include a Yes/No option for allowing attachments for a list item (default is Yes) and item-level permissions. The default for item-level permissions in a List app is for all members (contributors) to be able to read and modify all items. You can adjust these settings for users to either read only their own items and/or edit only their own items.

## *Validation settings*

*Validation* is a formula or statement that must evaluate to TRUE before the data can be saved. SharePoint has two different types of validation: column-level and app-level validation. The difference between column and app validation is that column validation compares only the data in that single column to some test, such as whether a discount is less than or equal to 50%.

```
= [Discount] < = .50
```

On the other hand, validation settings in the app level compare two or more columns to evaluate to TRUE. You can set a rule that [Discount] < [Cost] so customers don't get an item for free (or get money back!) because they buy an item with a discount.

To use Validation settings, follow these steps:

- 1. Click the Validation Settings link in the Library Settings or List Settings page.**

The Validation Settings page has two sections, Formula and User Message. The Formula section is the test your comparison of the columns must pass for the item to be valid. The User Message section is what the user receives if the test fails. Users can then adjust the values until the test passes.

- 2. Create a formula for the validation by entering it in the Formula field.**

The formula needs to compare (or validate) one or more columns in your app. The App Settings page provides an example and a link to learning more about the proper syntax.

A selection list of columns in your app is available for use in your formula.

- 3. In the User Message text box, enter a message to be shown to users who enter an invalid item.**

- 4. Click OK or Cancel.**

If you click OK, your validation is applied to your list.



Validations aren't retroactive. They apply only to new and modified entries on the specified columns.

## Rating settings

Rating settings is a simple Yes/No option to allow the items in the app to be rated by users. The Rating feature is a much requested feature. When enabled on your app, a Rating field appears, as shown in Figure 7-7. The ratings field allows users to select a star rating.

The screenshot shows a SharePoint 'Documents' library. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'SharePoint', 'BROWSE', 'FILES', 'LIBRARY', 'Newsfeed', 'SkyDrive', 'Sites', and a user profile. Below the navigation is a search bar. The main area shows a 'Documents' section with a blue header. On the left, there's a sidebar with links: 'Home', 'Documents', 'Tasks', 'Calendar', 'Recent', and 'For Dummies Survey'. The main content area has a heading '+ new document or drag files here'. Below it, there's a table-like view of documents. One document, 'For Dummies Book Notes', is selected and highlighted with a blue border. To its right, there are columns for 'Name', 'Modified', 'Modified By', 'Approval', and a 'Rating' field. The rating field contains a 4-star icon with a cursor pointing at it. There's also a 'Find a file' search bar and a 'Click to apply your rating as 4 stars.' button.

**Figure 7-7:**  
Rating a  
document.

## Audience Targeting settings

The Audience Targeting setting includes one section with a Yes/No option to enable Audience Targeting for the app. Selecting Yes creates a Targeting column for this app. Certain Web Parts, such as the Content Query Web Part, can use this column to filter list contents based on the user's inclusion in a specific audience.



Audience Targeting isn't the same thing as permissions. A user can still access content even if he or she isn't included in an audience. Audience targeting is simply a way to filter the presentation of content to certain groups of people.

## Form settings

The Form Settings option is available only for List apps. If InfoPath 2013 is installed on your machine, you can opt to allow customization of the list form using InfoPath by selecting the Customize the Current Form Using Microsoft InfoPath radio button.



## **Chapter 8**

---

# **Creating a Custom App**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Planning and creating a custom app
  - ▶ Adding new columns to a list app
  - ▶ Importing your spreadsheet as a list app
  - ▶ Discovering apps in the SharePoint Store
- 

**S**harePoint ships with a number of very useful apps, such as apps for calendars, tasks, pictures, links, announcements, contacts, discussions, issues, surveys, assets, and even reports, just to name a few. These apps are very useful, but there comes a time when you need to create your own app for very specific data. To create a custom app based on a list, you use the Custom List app.

Creating your very own SharePoint app may sound a little daunting. The good news is that creating and customizing an app couldn't be easier. The easiest way to create your own app is to start with a Custom List app and then customize it for your particular need.

In this chapter, you find out how to create your own app. You see how to add columns to store data, create views into the data, validate data, and import data into your app. Finally, you explore the SharePoint Store, where you can search for and purchase third-party apps, and discover that your own organization can even have its own private SharePoint Store.

## ***Planning Your Custom App***

Capturing information is nothing new. Ancient civilizations (millennia ago) used stone or clay tablets, pre-computer organizations (decades ago) used typewriters, and many organizations still use Excel. Often, the problem with data is not in collecting it but in sharing and aggregating it.

Excel does a great job with data aggregation but not such a great job with sharing. SharePoint is all about sharing (hence the name). A SharePoint app is a centralized container of data that is easy to manage and maintain. In addition, by the very nature of a centralized web portal, the data is easily shared and viewed by anyone in the organization with access.

Creating an app specifically for your data needs is important. You need to determine the columns of data you will capture and how the data will relate to each other. In addition, you need to determine which data will be valid and which should be rejected.

Planning a custom list is similar to starting a new spreadsheet in Excel or a table in Access. In all cases, a little up-front planning saves time in the long run. Plan ahead so you know what order you want the columns to be in and what options you want in drop-down lists.



Already have a spreadsheet that you think would make a good list in SharePoint? Make sure you check out the section “Importing a Spreadsheet as an App,” later in this chapter. That section can help you create a custom app in no time.



Columns can also be called *fields* (for those used to database terminology). When these columns are used to describe files (usually documents in a document library app), they’re also referred to as *metadata* or *properties* (*of the file*).



One of the neat features about SharePoint is the ability to add columns to the predefined apps. The process for adding columns is the same in library and list apps. However, in a library app, your columns capture information about a *file*, such as its category or author. List apps generally are all data columns and are used for tracking and communication.

## *Creating a Custom App*

You create a custom app using the Custom List app. The Custom List app creates a very basic list app that you can then customize for your particular scenario.

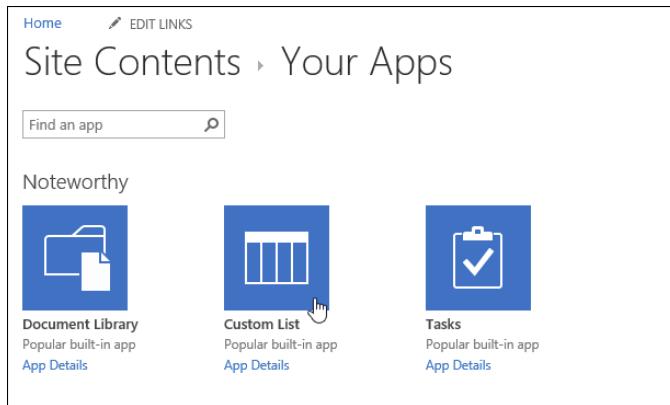
Follow these steps to create a custom app:

1. Click the Settings gear icon and select Add an App.

The Your Apps page is displayed.

2. Click the Custom List app on the Your Apps page, as shown in Figure 8-1.

The Adding Custom List dialog box appears.



**Figure 8-1:**  
Selecting  
the Custom  
List app on  
the Your  
Apps page.

### 3. Provide a name for the app in the Name text box.

To make things simple, you only need to give your new app a name. However, if you want to provide a description, you can click the Advanced Options link.

The name you type here is used in the app's web address. Avoid using spaces in the name when you create the app. You can change the app's name to a friendlier name after you create it, as described in Chapter 7.

### 4. Click the Create button.

SharePoint creates your new app and takes you automatically to the Site Contents page. Your new app has a green New! tag next to it to let you know it is a new app.

## Adding Columns to Your App

A new custom app displays a single text Title column. The list also contains several behind-the-scenes columns that you can't see, such as ID and Version. To make the custom app your own, you have to add columns to the app.

*Columns* are like fields in a database table. When you add a column to your app, a data entry field appears in the app's New Form to give you a place to enter data into that column.



A little planning goes a long way. You created a plan for your custom app, right? Because now is when you start adding the columns to your app that you listed in your plan.

You can also add columns to the predefined SharePoint apps.

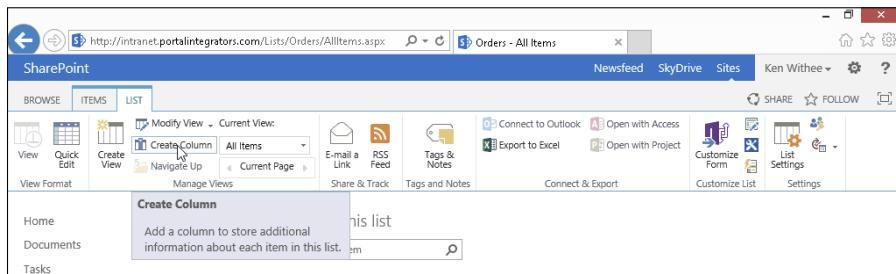
Follow these steps to add columns to your custom app:

- With your app open in the browser, click the List tab on the Ribbon, and then click the Create Column button (see Figure 8-2) in the Manage Views group.

The Create Column window appears.

You can also add new columns with the List Settings page.

**Figure 8-2:**  
Add a new  
column to  
your list.



- Type a name for your new column in the Column Name field.

The name you type is what users will see, so pick a name that's concise but meaningful. I don't recommend using spaces in your column names when you first create them. You can always add spaces later.

Spaces entered in a column name become a permanent part of that column's *internal name* in SharePoint. Some of these internal names can get quite lengthy and downright nonsensical, which makes referencing them a real pain.

- Select the type of information you want to store in the column.

The options given here are fairly intuitive — Single Line of Text, Number, Date and Time, and so on. See the later section, "Getting to know column types," for details on selecting the column type.

Make sure you determine what kind of data you have when you first create the column. Changing the data type later may result in loss of data, or you may not have as many options when you change the type.

- In the Additional Column Settings section, select the options that further define your column's type.

The column type you select in Step 3 determines what options you have available for configuring the column.



**5. (Optional) If you want SharePoint to test the values entered into your column, use the Column Validation section to enter your formula.**

**6. Click OK.**

SharePoint adds the column to your custom app.

You can change the column properties later and rearrange the order of the columns by using the List Settings page.



After you first create a custom app, use the List or Library Settings page to modify your app, where you have all the commands at your fingertips to power through the column creation — you can pick site columns, create your own columns, and rearrange them, as shown in Figure 8-3. After your app has been created and you need to add more columns, the Create Column button on the List tab of the Ribbon is a handy way to add one or two columns without leaving the main page.

**Figure 8-3:**  
Columns  
section  
of the List  
Settings  
page.

Column (click to edit)	Type	Required
Title	Single line of text	✓
Customer	Lookup	
Modified	Date and Time	
Created	Date and Time	
Created By	Person or Group	
Modified By	Person or Group	

Create column  
 Add from existing site columns  
 Column ordering  
 Indexed columns

## Reusing columns in other apps

SharePoint actually has two kinds of columns — list columns and site columns. I show you how to create a *list column* (a column that's associated with one and only one app) in the “Adding Columns to Your App” section in this chapter. What if you like a column so much you want to reuse it on more than one app? That's

when you create a *site column*. You define a site column once, and you can then associate it with as many apps as you want. SharePoint comes with a set of predefined site columns — those are the columns that are used in SharePoint's predefined apps. You can reuse any of those columns in your apps as well.

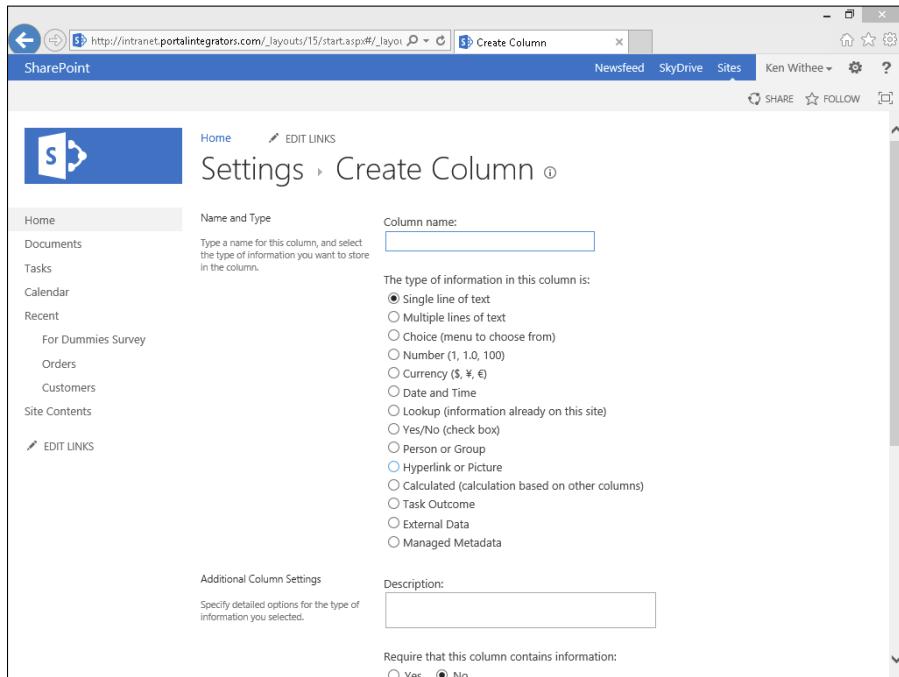
## Getting to know column types

Columns are used to store data, and unlike a spreadsheet, you need to define the *type* of column as you create it, as shown in Figure 8-4. For those who work with databases, this is a familiar concept. By defining the type of column, you gain extra functionality based on that type, and you help to control the type of information that can be entered into the column and how that information is presented onscreen. For example, users can enter only a number in a Number column; they can't add miscellaneous text.

SharePoint provides a number of built-in column types that you can select for your apps, such as columns that know how to handle dates and URLs. Third-party companies and developers in your organization can also create custom column types that can be added to SharePoint. For example, if your company needs a column that handles a full zip code (the zip code plus four numbers), a developer could create it for you.

Table 8-1 lists common SharePoint column types and what they're used for.

**Figure 8-4:**  
The Create  
Column  
page show-  
ing choices.



**Table 8-1****SharePoint Column Data Types**

<b>Column Data Type*</b>	<b>What It's Used For</b>	<b>Display on Form</b>
Single Line of Text	Display text and numbers (such as phone or course numbers, or zip code) up to 255 characters.	Single-line text box (the text box may not show all 255 characters).
Multiple Lines of Text	Display multiple lines of text.	Select from Plain Text, Rich Text, or Enhanced Rich Text. Depending on the number of lines you select, this option shows as a text area of that size with additional toolbars to format text.**
Choice***	A defined list of choices; for example, categories or departments.	Drop-down list is the default and most common.
Number	Numerical values that can be used for calculations.	You can identify a min/max value number with a choice of decimal options.
Currency	Numerical values that represent money.	You can identify a min/max value currency. Includes options for decimal places and currency format.
Date and Time	Dates and times.	Date and/or Time-Calendar Picker.
Lookup	Values from another list — for example, categories could be stored in a lookup list for document metadata.	Drop-down list populated based on values from other list.
Yes/No	Boolean value of Yes or No.	Check box.
Person or Group	Directory listing information from SharePoint.	The person or group is shown as a hyperlink and can include presence information.
Hyperlink or Picture	Hyperlink (internal or external) or an image.	Hyperlink or picture.
Calculated	Data that can be calculated by formula.	Result of calculation; can be text or numerical.
Task Outcome	The outcome of a task such as Approved, Rejected, or Pending.	The Task Outcome presents a list of choices that you can define when creating the item.

(continued)

**Table 8-1 (continued)**

<b>Column Data Type*</b>	<b>What It's Used For</b>	<b>Display on Form</b>
External Data	Data stored in a data source; for example, a table or view in an enterprise database.	Usually filled in by the external source and not users.
Managed Metadata	Provides a common set of keywords and terms that can be used across the organization.	Users can simply start typing, and the options will fill in based on their input. The options are pulled from the metadata managed by SharePoint.

\* Most columns also include property options for Required, Allow Duplicates, Default Values, and Add to the Default View.

\*\* Although you may set a number of lines for editing, this isn't a defined limit. Users can type or cut/paste a large amount of text into this control. You may want to use column validation to restrict the length.

\*\*\* Choice can also be shown on the form as radio buttons for a single choice or check boxes for multiple choices.

In addition to the column data types in Table 8-1, other data types, such as Publishing HTML (an even richer form of text), can be selected when creating site columns in publishing sites. Publishing sites are beyond the scope of this book, but I would encourage you to dig further if you are in a large organization and need to have granular control on who can publish to which portions of a page.



When you're creating columns for your custom app, you can change the order of the columns as they're shown in the Columns section of the List Settings page. Changing the column ordering in this section helps with organizing the app flow for owners and how they display on the app's form. However, changing the order on the List Settings page doesn't change the order of columns in the default view — you must modify the view separately.



Don't underestimate descriptions! Creators of lists often carry a lot of information in their heads about the content in the app. Users aren't mind readers. Make sure to type descriptions to help them understand the intent of the column and the data expected.

## Validating data entry

Column validation options allow you to define additional limits and constraints for your data. For example, you may want to ensure that a value in one Date column occurs after another Date column. (So for example, column validation can ensure that the date in the Date Finished column can't be

earlier than the date in the Date Started column — you can't finish a project before it's begun!)

To use column validation on your app:

- 1. In your app where you want to validate data entry, click the List Settings button on the List tab of the Ribbon.**
- 2. Under General Settings, click the Validation Settings link.**
- 3. Type a formula in the Formula text box, as shown in Figure 8-5.**
- 4. Enter a user message that you want to appear if the validation formula fails.**
- 5. Click the Save button.**

The result of the formula must evaluate to TRUE to pass validation. The formula syntax is the same as calculated columns, which is similar to Excel syntax.

The message should give the user an idea of how the formula works and how to fix the problem. (See the example message in Figure 8-5.)



**Figure 8-5:**  
Entering a  
formula  
for list  
validation.

When users enter data into your form, the validation formula is evaluated. If the formula evaluates to FALSE, your user message appears on the form, as shown in Figure 8-6.

**Figure 8-6:**  
A user  
message  
appears  
when  
validation  
formula  
equals  
FALSE.

The screenshot shows a SharePoint 2013 new item form for an 'Orders' list. The URL in the address bar is <http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/Lists/Orders/NewForm.aspx?S=1>. The ribbon tabs are 'BROWSE' and 'EDIT'. In the 'Actions' group, there are buttons for 'Save', 'Cancel', 'Clipboard', and 'Spelling'. The 'Customer' column has a dropdown menu open with 'CustomerID1' selected. The 'Order Date' column contains the value '1/1/2013'. A red error message at the bottom right of the form states: 'You cannot place an order in the past. The order must be placed today or at a date in the future.' The left navigation pane shows 'Home', 'Documents', 'Tasks', 'Calendar', 'Recent', 'For Dummies Survey', 'Orders', 'Customers', and 'Site Contents'.

You can add column validation to columns created at the app or site level. Validation created for site-level columns applies everywhere that column is used, although the formula can be overridden at the app where the site-level column is used.

## Working with the Title Column

Unlike SharePoint's predefined apps, your custom app has only one column when you first create it — the Title column. Unfortunately, you can't delete the Title column or change its data type, but you can rename it, hide it, or make it not required.

To rename the Title column:

1. Click the List Settings button on the List tab of the Ribbon.
2. Under the Columns heading, click the Title hyperlink.
3. Replace **Title** with your own title and make modifications to the other properties as desired.

The Title column is used by the list as a means to access the data entry forms to view and edit the list item. You can opt to hide the Title column so that it doesn't appear on any of the app forms.

To hide the Title column:

- 1. In your list, click the List Settings button on the List tab.**
- 2. If the Content Types section isn't visible, enable management of content types by following these steps:**
  - a. Click the Advanced Settings link on the List Settings page.*
  - b. Select the Yes radio button under Allow Management of Content Types, and then click OK. The Content Types section becomes visible on the List Settings page.*
- 3. In the Content Types section of the List Settings page, click the Item content type.**

The List Content Type information appears.

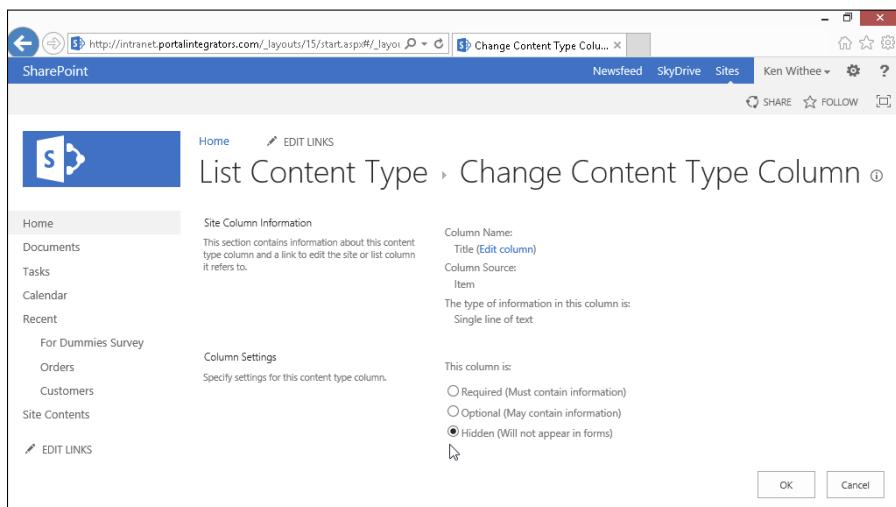
If you want to change the Title column in a document library, you click the Document content type. The Item content type applies to custom apps only. In a predefined app, such as a Tasks app, you click the Task content type.

- 4. Click the Title column.**

The Title column's properties appear.

- 5. Under Column Settings, select the Hidden (Will Not Appear in Forms) radio button, as shown in Figure 8-7, and click OK.**

The Title column doesn't appear on forms.



**Figure 8-7:**  
Hide the  
Title  
column.

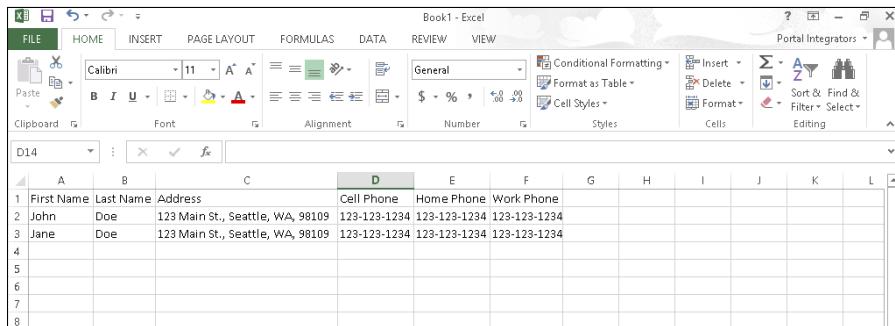
## Importing a Spreadsheet as an App

Already have data in a spreadsheet that you want to be a SharePoint app? You're halfway there! Before you start, make sure you do the following:

- ✓ **Clean the spreadsheet.** Make sure your spreadsheet looks like a table, with no blank columns or rows.
- ✓ **Make sure your spreadsheet has headers.** All columns in the SharePoint app need to have a column title.
- ✓ **Make sure your data is consistent.** For example, if a cell has a comment in it, but it should contain a date, remove the comment text.
- ✓ **Make sure your column heading in the first row is representative of the data.** SharePoint reads the headings in the first row and makes assumptions about the information in those columns.

Figure 8-8 shows an example of a clean spreadsheet ready for importing.

**Figure 8-8:**  
Cleaned  
spreadsheet  
ready for  
import into  
SharePoint.



The screenshot shows a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet titled "Book1 - Excel". The ribbon menu is visible at the top. The spreadsheet contains three rows of data. Row 1 is the header row with columns labeled "First Name", "Last Name", "Address", "Cell Phone", "Home Phone", and "Work Phone". Rows 2 and 3 contain data for "John Doe" and "Jane Doe" respectively, with their addresses and phone numbers listed under the corresponding columns. The "Cell Phone" column is highlighted in green.

First Name	Last Name	Address	Cell Phone	Home Phone	Work Phone
John	Doe	123 Main St., Seattle, WA, 98109	123-123-1234	123-123-1234	123-123-1234
Jane	Doe	123 Main St., Seattle, WA, 98109	123-123-1234	123-123-1234	123-123-1234



SharePoint looks for what it believes is the first text column and uses it as the pseudo-title field (the primary field in the list that has the Edit menu attached to it). Therefore, try to place a text field with unique data in the first column position. Unfortunately, if your unique field is a number, such as a serial number, this can cause issues. To work around the problem, create the app and copy and paste the data from the spreadsheet. (A good example of a first column is a unique name of a person or an item, such as Event Name. A bad example of a first column is the category of an item or a department of an employee.)

To import your spreadsheet into a custom app:

**1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Add an App.**

You can also click the Site Contents link on the Quick Launch toolbar and then click the Add an App icon.

**2. Select the Import Spreadsheet App from the list of apps you can add.****3. In the Name text box, enter a name for your app.**

Follow the naming conventions I outline for app names: Keep them short and eliminate spaces.

**4. (Optional) In the Description text box, enter a description of the app.****5. Click the Browse button, browse to your spreadsheet, select it, and click the Import button.**

A dialog box appears that asks how your range is designated. The default is Table Range, but other options are Named Range or Range of Cells. If you haven't named the data as a range in Excel or set it as a table, select the Range of Cells option.

**6. If you chose the Range of Cells option, click the Select Range field in the dialog box, and then click your spreadsheet and highlight the desired cells.****7. Click the Import button in the dialog box.**

After you import your spreadsheet, verify the column types SharePoint chose for you. Generally, SharePoint assumes text, number, and dates. You may want to change some text fields to Choice, Yes/No, and so forth.



Don't have the patience to create all your custom columns one by one — but you don't have a current app in another format either? Create a spreadsheet with your column headers and at least one row of data, and then import this spreadsheet and modify the column properties as necessary.

## *Taking Your App to the Next Level: Calculated and Lookup Columns*

Calculated columns are especially powerful for automatically generating data. Don't be intimidated — the web is full of great formula examples for SharePoint calculated columns. Some common uses include

- ✓ Adding days to a Date column to calculate an Expired or Due Date column
- ✓ Adding Number or Currency columns to get a total
- ✓ Using the Me function to automatically add the username to a field

## *Creating a calculated column*

To create a calculated column, follow these steps:

- 1. Select the Calculated column type in the Name and Type options in the Create Column dialog box.**

The Additional Column Settings area changes to support entering a calculation (see Figure 8-9) and specifying column options.

- 2. Type your formula using the proper syntax in the Formula text box.**

If you're basing your calculation on another column in the app, you can reference that column using the square brackets reference syntax.

For example, to calculate a Shipping Deadline value, add five days to the Order Date value in another column by entering **[Order Date]+5** in the Formula text box.

- 3. Select the proper data type for the returned value and other data type property options, if available, from the Additional Column Settings section of the page.**

Not all return values are of the same data type as the input columns. For example, if you subtract one date from another, your returned value is a number (the number of days difference between the two dates).



The screenshot shows the 'Create Column' dialog box. In the 'Name and Type' section, the 'Calculated (calculation based on other columns)' option is selected. Below it, the 'Additional Column Settings' section is expanded, showing a 'Formula:' text box and an 'Insert Column:' dropdown menu. The 'Insert Column:' menu lists 'Created', 'Modified', 'Order Date', and 'Title', with 'Created' currently selected. A blue 'Add to formula' button is located at the bottom of the dropdown. At the bottom of the dialog, there's a summary of the data type and some checkboxes for content types and default views.

○ Hyperlink or Picture  
● Calculated (calculation based on other columns)  
○ Task Outcome  
○ External Data  
○ Managed Metadata

Additional Column Settings

Specify detailed options for the type of information you selected.

Description:

Formula:

Insert Column:  
Created  
Modified  
Order Date  
Title

Add to formula

The data type returned from this formula is:

● Single line of text  
○ Number (1, 1.0, 100)  
○ Currency (\$, €, ₪)  
○ Date and Time  
○ Yes/No

Add to all content types  
 Add to default view

**Figure 8-9:**  
Column settings for a calculated column.

Other examples include

- Adding the current username to a field. Simply type the constant [Me] in the Formula text box.
- Using today as a date in a calculation to create a new date by entering [Today]+7 in the Formula text box.

## Using a lookup column

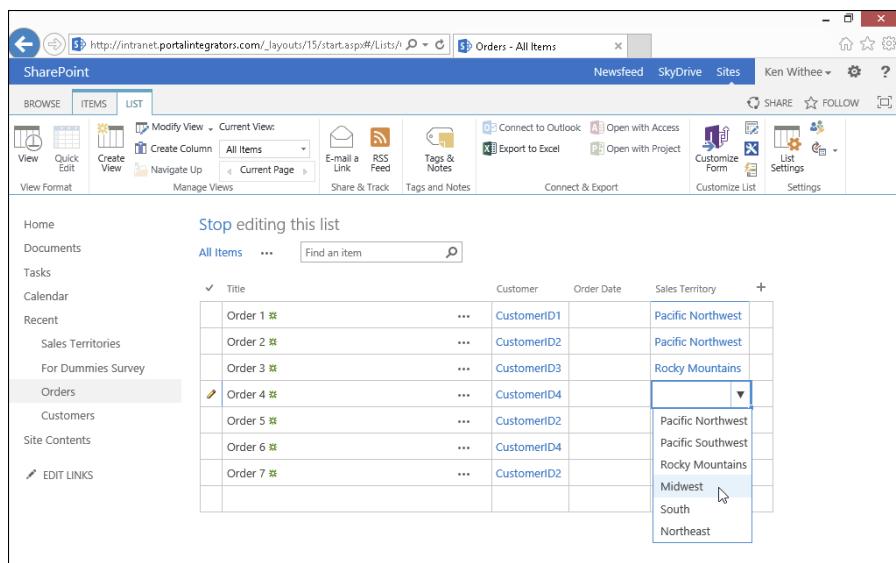
Maintaining all your options in a Choice field can be cumbersome and prone to error. SharePoint uses a similar model to relational databases by separating the *lookup* information from the *transaction* app. Think of all the lookup data that could be maintained in separate apps. For example, computer hardware inventory lookup apps could include hardware type, maintenance contract, and department location. These apps can be maintained independently of the transaction app — the inventory itself.

For example, you could create a Customer custom app with a single field — Title — and populate it with the names of customers. Then build an Order app (to track orders that customers place). Customer is a column in the Order app. Rather than build a Choice field, you could use the Lookup data type to connect to the Customer app and use the Title field as data for the Customer column in the Order app. The end result is that all your customers are separated from the orders. If a customer needs to change his or her name (maybe she got married, or his name was misspelled) you can just change the name in the Customer app instead of in every entry in the Order app.

You can also add other columns from the lookup app to the drop-down list to help users select the proper choice. When a user selects the value from the drop-down list, values for the additional columns also display. Figure 8-10 shows a scenario that uses a lookup column to display a customer's sales territory. The customer's name and sales territory are stored in one app and displayed in another app using a lookup column. Figure 8-10 also shows the use of inline editing in a Web Part.



For users familiar with databases and referential integrity, SharePoint 2013 includes additional options to support this implementation. Lookup columns can also be used to create a chain of joined apps that can be used to query and display values from additional columns.

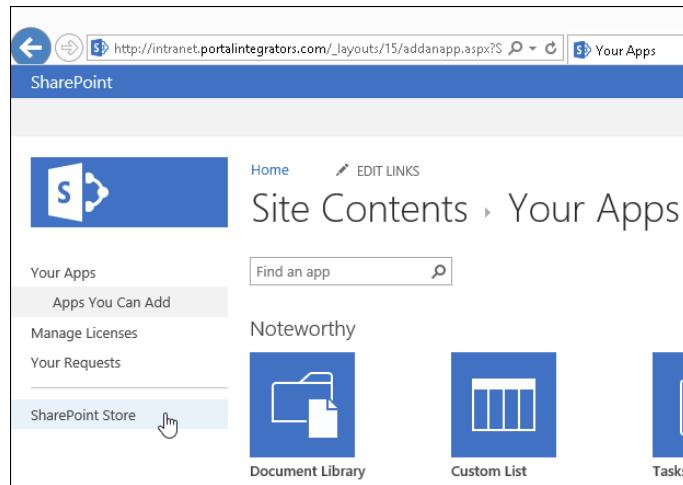


**Figure 8-10:**  
Selecting a  
value from  
a lookup  
column.

## Downloading Apps from the SharePoint Store

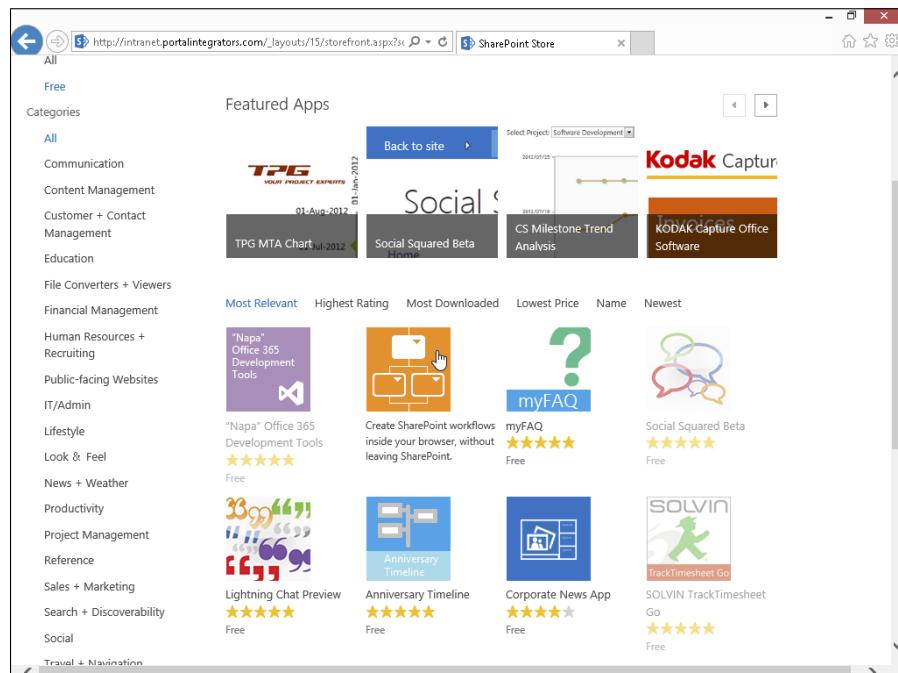
In addition to the apps that come with SharePoint, you can also add apps from third parties. These third-party apps appear in the SharePoint Store. If you're using SharePoint Online, then you have access to the full store. If you're using SharePoint On-Premise, then your local IT administrators may have locked down the apps that you can add for security reasons.

The SharePoint Store can be found on the Your Apps page, as shown in Figure 8-11. You access the Your Apps page by clicking the Settings gear icon and then selecting Add an App. Take a look and see what SharePoint apps you have available in the store.



**Figure 8-11:**  
Accessing  
the  
SharePoint  
Store from  
the Your  
Apps page.

The SharePoint Store is shown in Figure 8-12.



**Figure 8-12:**  
The  
SharePoint  
Store.

You can choose to view all apps or only those that are free by selecting the Price refiner on the left side of the page. You can also sort apps by clicking a category link. If you want to purchase an app, click it and then click the Buy It button. After you click the Buy It button, you have to log in with your Microsoft account. If you already have a credit card on file with the Microsoft Marketplace, then you can purchase and download the app. Otherwise, you are prompted to enter your credit card information.

## **Chapter 9**

---

# **Viewing Data in Your Apps**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Knowing when to create a view
  - ▶ Understanding view formats
  - ▶ Working with various views
  - ▶ Managing views that already exist
  - ▶ Displaying views by using Web Parts
- 

**A** number of apps ship with SharePoint, and you can also create custom apps (as discussed in Chapter 8). SharePoint also lets you create additional pages, or *views*, that you can use to customize the display of the information in apps. In Excel, you might hide rows and/or columns to create a new view of the data. In a database, you may query only certain fields and use criteria to create a specific snapshot of data. The concept is similar with views.

Common reasons for creating new views include showing only active items, only tasks associated with a certain person, only documents in a certain category, and so on. These views help users find or focus on certain data in the app without having to see everything, all the time.

In this chapter, you discover how to manually create new views and how to modify existing views.

## ***Viewing the View***

Each SharePoint app comes with at least one view, the All Items view, which is a public view available to app users. Document Library apps start with the All Documents view. Certain apps come with several more predefined views, such as the Discussion Board app, which has special views for showing threaded discussions.

You use the SharePoint Ribbon to access the options for changing an app's views. Figure 9-1 shows the List tab under List tools (use the Library tab under Library tools in Library apps), where you can see the commands available for changing the current views or creating new views.

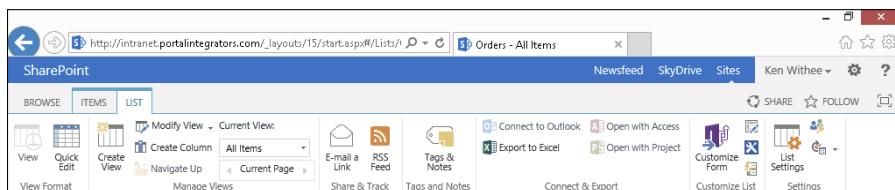
You can easily switch among views in an app. The current view is displayed at the top of the page, and additional views are displayed next to it with links to those views, as shown in Figure 9-2. Just to the right is an ellipsis for modifying or managing the views.

Anyone with Design and Full Control permissions (Designers and Owners) can make Public and Personal views for the app. However, Site Members (Contributors) can create only Personal views for their own use.

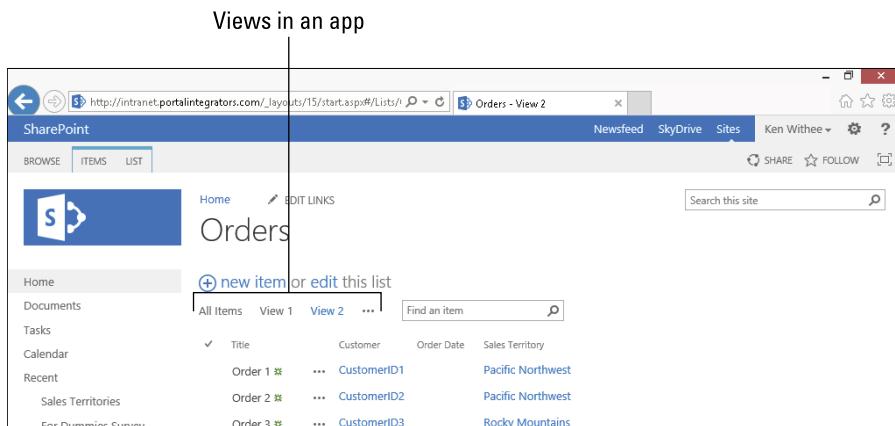


Use a view instead of folders. When you organize files on your network, folders are the predominant method of subdividing your content. In SharePoint, you gain great power in using columns in combination with views to hide or show what users need to see. Folders take extra effort for the user to drill down and then navigate back up to look for other content. Views coupled with built-in sorting and filtering header options enable the user to easily and quickly find different content by toggling back and forth between views.

**Figure 9-1:**  
Use the  
Ribbon to  
manage  
views.



**Figure 9-2:**  
Switching  
among  
views in  
an app.



## Getting to Know Your View Formats

SharePoint provides six predefined formats for creating new views. These formats jump-start your view creation experience by determining how information appears on the web page:

- ✓ **Standard:** This is the default view when you first access an app. The document or title item is in hyperlink format with an Edit menu for accessing properties and other options, and the rest of the list resembles a table without borders.
- ✓ **Datasheet:** An editable spreadsheet format. Although any app has the option to edit information in a datasheet format using the Quick Edit button on the List or Library tab, certain views may make sense to be created in this format if users will edit multiple items at a time.
- ✓ **Calendar:** As you would expect, this view displays as a calendar. You need at least one date field in your app to create a Calendar view.
- ✓ **Gantt:** If you are familiar with project management charts, you recognize the Gantt view as showing tasks along a timeline. This view makes it possible to do simple project-management tracking using a SharePoint app.
- ✓ **Access view:** This view creates an Access database with a linked table to your SharePoint app so that you can create a form or report in Access based on your SharePoint app. Lookup tables and a user app are also linked as tables with this option.
- ✓ **Custom View in SharePoint Designer:** If you have SharePoint Designer 2013 installed on your computer, you have the option to use it to create custom views.



You may not see all the view formats listed previously. Your options are dependent on which client software, such as Excel, Access, and SharePoint Designer, is installed on your computer.

In the rest of the chapter, I walk you through creating a view using each of these view formats.

## Creating a Standard View

The most common kind of view you create in a SharePoint app is a public, Standard view. A public view can be used by anyone to view the contents of an app.

Standards views have the following traits:

- ✓ They're accessible by all browsers, including Firefox, Chrome, and Safari.
- ✓ They have the most configuration options, such as filtering, grouping, and editing options.
- ✓ They're available for all apps.
- ✓ They don't require any special columns for configuring the view. Other view formats, such as a Calendar view, require date columns.

To create a new Standard view:

- 1. Browse to the app where you want to create the new view.**
  - 2. Click the List or Library tab of the Ribbon to access options for managing views.**
- In a Calendar app, click the Calendar tab to manage the app's views.
- 3. Click the Create View button.**

A list of view format options appears.

- 4. Click the Standard View link to create a view that looks like a web page.**

After selecting your view format, the Create View page displays your options for creating the new view.

- 5. In the View Name field, type the name you want to call this view.**

The View Name field has two purposes:

- It provides the friendly name that can be selected to display the view.
- It provides the filename for the web page, which is part of the web address.

I suggest giving the page a name that's easy to remember. For example, if your view will group products by department, entering the name **GroupByDepartment** creates a web page named `GroupByDepartment.aspx`. You can change the friendly name after the filename has been created.

- 6. To set this view as the default view for the app, select the Make This the Default View check box.**

If this isn't the default view, users can select the view from a drop-down list on the Ribbon.

- 7. In the View Audience field, select the Create a Public View radio button.**

Optionally, you can create a private view that only you can see. You must have at least Designer or Owner permissions to create a public view.

**8. In the Columns section of the page, select the Display check box next to any columns you want to display, as shown in Figure 9-3.**

You can also indicate the relative order that columns appear on the screen by selecting the appropriate number in the Position from Left drop-down lists. See more on choosing columns in the “Choosing columns for your view” section, later in this chapter.

**9. (Optional) In the Sort section, use the drop-down lists to select the first column you want to sort by and then select the second column to sort by.**

The default sort option is ID, which means that items will be sorted by the order they were entered in the list.

**10. Select the remaining options to configure your view, such as the columns you want to filter or group on.**

Some of the options you can choose from are

- Select Tabular View to include check boxes next to items for bulk operations.
- Select the style that the view will take. For example, Boxed, Shaded, Newsletter, Preview Pane, or Basic style.
- In the Totals section, select which columns to aggregate using Count or Sum functions.
- In the Folders section, specify whether items should appear inside folders or flat as if the folders don’t exist.

Display	Column Name	Position from Left
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Title (linked to item with edit menu)	1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Customer	2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Order Date	3
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Sales Territory	4
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	App Created By	5
<input type="checkbox"/>	App Modified By	6
<input type="checkbox"/>	Attachments	7
<input type="checkbox"/>	Content Type	8
<input type="checkbox"/>	Created	9
<input type="checkbox"/>	Created By	10
<input type="checkbox"/>	Edit (link to edit item)	11
<input type="checkbox"/>	Folder Child Count	12
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	13
<input type="checkbox"/>	Item Child Count	14
<input type="checkbox"/>	Modified	15
<input type="checkbox"/>	Modified By	16
<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	17
<input type="checkbox"/>	Title (linked to item)	18
<input type="checkbox"/>	Type (icon linked to document)	19
<input type="checkbox"/>	Version	20

**Figure 9-3:**  
Create a new view and select the columns you want to show.

- Item Limit allows you to limit the items displayed on a single page. This can improve the performance of the view.

I discuss additional options in more detail in the “Filtering apps with views” and “Grouping results” sections, later in this chapter.

### 11. Click OK to create the view.

The new view appears in the browser.

If you created a public view, SharePoint creates a new web page using the name you specified in Step 5. Users can select this view from the drop-down list in the Manage Views section of the Ribbon.



Experimenting with all these options is the best way to discover what works for your site. Item Limits, for example, is great for when you want to control the amount of space a Web Part takes up on a page.

## *Choosing columns for your view*

When you choose the columns to display in your view, you see many columns that are usually behind the scenes, including Edit menu options. These include

- ✓ **Edit (Linked to Edit Item):** Displays an icon that a user can click to edit the item. This column is useful when you don't want to display the Title column.
- ✓ **Title (Linked to Item):** Displays the Title column with a hyperlink to the list item or document. When a user clicks the hyperlinked title, a web page opens and displays the app item or opens the document.
- ✓ **Title (Linked to Edit with Edit Menu):** When a user hovers his mouse over this column, the Edit menu appears.



I may want Edit menu columns on my app page for a member to modify items, but I generally don't want them in my app Web Parts on home pages and publishing pages (in that case, I just want users to click a link to open a document or only view the app data as a table).

Other columns you may have available to add to your view include

- ✓ **ID** displays the identity number of the item. The ID number is used to display the item's values in a form.
- ✓ **Version** displays the version number of the item or document. This allows you to easily see what the latest version of a document is.
- ✓ **Checked Out** shows who has the document checked out.
- ✓ **Folder Child Count** displays the number of folders contained within a folder.

- ✓ **Item Child Count** displays the number of items contained within a folder.
- ✓ **Content Type** displays the content type associated with the item or document.

When you create a view, you often realize that you want to display a column that's based on a value calculated from another column. For example, if your app displays an anniversary date, you may want to calculate years of service. You can do that by creating a new column and then displaying it in your view. (See Chapter 8 for details on working with calculated columns.)



You can also modify and create views using SharePoint Designer. In Designer, you have access to even more columns and the ability to use formatting and formula tools to further transform the presentation of your content.

## *Filtering apps with views*

You can use the filtering options of views to limit the items displayed. You can choose which columns to filter on and how to apply the filter. You can use filters to display app data where a certain column is equal to some value or not equal to some value, or where an item was created between certain date ranges.

You can create filters using columns that are based on String, Number, Currency, or Choice data types. However, you can't filter on lookup columns or multiline text fields.

Building a filter is like writing an equation; for example,  $x > y$ . In this case,  $x$  is the column you want to filter on, and  $y$  is the value you want to test the column contents against. The operator in between determines what the test evaluates. This test gives the system a TRUE or FALSE response to your equation.

Available operators are

- ✓ **Equality:** Is Equal To or Is Not Equal To
- ✓ **Comparison:** Is Greater Than or Is Less Than
- ✓ **Substring:** Contains or Begins With

The filtering equation is evaluated for each item in your app. If the equation is TRUE, the item is included in the view; if the equation is FALSE, the item is excluded.



If you don't see the results you expect to see in your view, your filter is probably evaluating to FALSE.

For numerical values, you usually use the Equality or Comparison operators. When you create filtered views based on string (text) values, you want to be familiar with your data before trying to create the filter. For example, if you want to filter a Contacts app to display only those contacts in the U.K., you have to ask how the value for the U.K. has been entered in the app. Is it U.K., United Kingdom, or both? You can use a Datasheet view to quickly scan the data to determine the range of possible values.



One way to get around this problem is by validating your data when it's being entered. You can use Choice columns to do that or use SharePoint 2013's validation features. (See Chapter 8 for details.)

Say you discover that your data include both values — U.K. and United Kingdom. You could go through and make all the data consistent. Or you could filter for both values using the Or option, as shown in Figure 9-4.

**Figure 9-4:**  
Select the  
column to  
filter the  
view.

The screenshot shows the 'Filter' dialog box. At the top left is a link to 'Learn about filtering items'. Below it are two radio button options: one for 'Show all items in this view' (unchecked) and one for 'Show items only when the following is true' (checked). Under the second option, there is a section titled 'Show the items when column' with a dropdown menu set to 'Sales Territory'. Below this is a dropdown menu for 'operator' set to 'is equal to', and a text input field containing 'U.K.'. Further down, there is another dropdown menu for 'operator' set to 'is equal to', and a text input field containing 'United Kingdom'. At the bottom right of the dialog box is a link 'Show More Columns...'.

You can also use the constants Today and Me to filter your columns. (See Chapter 8 for details on using these constants.)

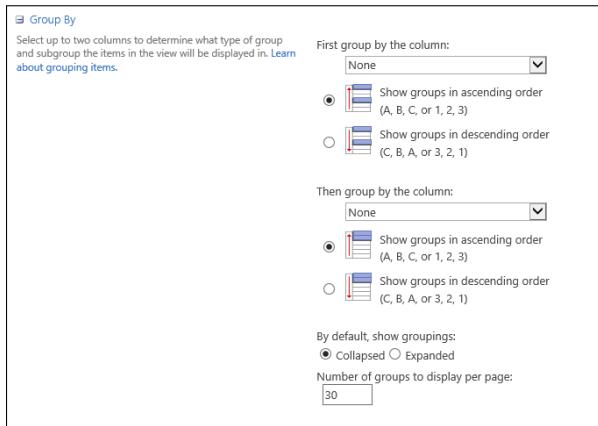
## Grouping results

You can configure your view to group together items based on a common value in a column. For example, you can group a listing of contacts that all share the same department or company.

Figure 9-5 shows the grouping options. You can indicate whether to automatically collapse or expand grouped items and how many items to display per page. Figure 9-6 shows a listing of contacts grouped by department. Use the toggle arrows to the left of each group header to expand or contract the grouped items.

Don't forget the Totals option! Often when grouping data, you want to create totals. For example, grouping on Inventory by Category and totaling the Quantity creates subtotals for the Category grouping as well as an overall total for the app.

**Figure 9-5:**  
You can group items based on a shared value.



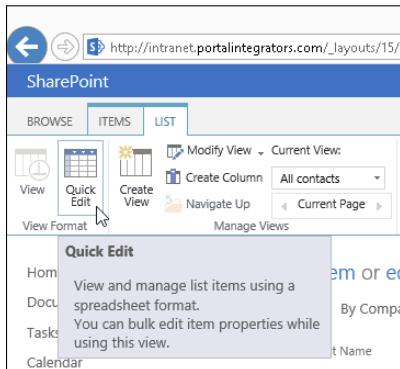
**Figure 9-6:**  
Expand or contract grouped items.

The screenshot displays a SharePoint Contacts list. The left navigation bar shows links like Home, Documents, Tasks, Calendar, Recent, Contacts, Sales Territories, For Dummies Survey, Orders, Customers, Site Contents, and EDIT LINKS. The main content area has a title 'Contacts'. Below it, there's a search bar and filter options for Last Name, First Name, Company, Business Phone, Home Phone, and Email Address. The contact list is grouped by company. Under 'Company : ACS Manufacturing (3)', contacts include Supetran (Alfonso), Supetran (Lourdes), and Supetran (Mai). Under 'Company : Microsoft (2)', contacts are Supetran (Aljun) and Supetran (Beth). Under 'Company : Portal Integrators (6)', contacts are Supetran (Elczar), Supetran (Ken), Withee (Rosemarie), Supetran (Vincent), and Supetran (Aljun). Under 'Company : Woodgrove Bank (1)', a single contact is listed. A cursor is hovering over the expand/collapse arrow next to the 'Withee' entry in the Portal Integrators group.

## Quickly edit app data with Quick Edit

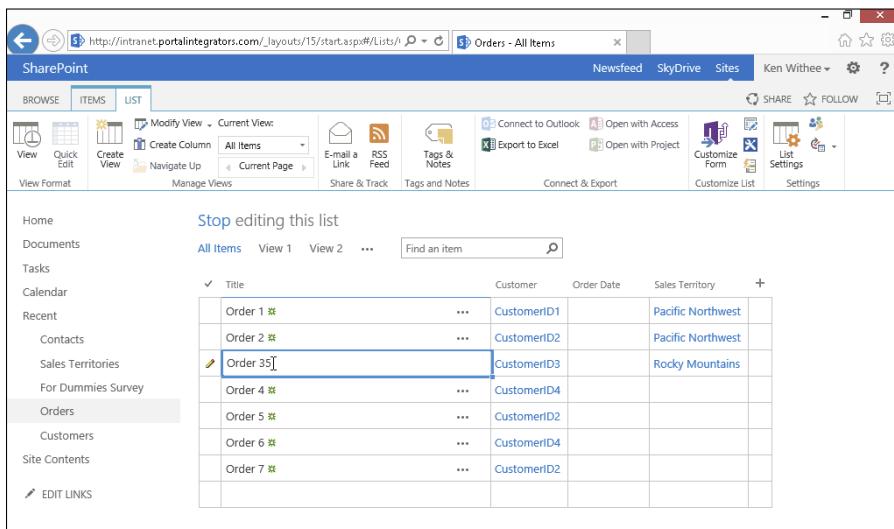
In SharePoint 2010, you had to create special views if you wanted to do things like inline editing and multiple item selection. In SharePoint 2013, this functionality is baked right into every app in the form of Quick Edit. Quick Edit is available on every app based on a list or library. The Quick Edit functionality takes the form of a button on the List or Library tab of the Ribbon, as shown in Figure 9-7.

**Figure 9-7:**  
The Quick  
Edit  
button in  
the Ribbon.



When you click the Quick Edit button, you're presented with the data in the app in an easily editable form. You can make changes right on the pages and with multiple items. An app displaying data in Quick Edit is shown in Figure 9-8.

**Figure 9-8:**  
Using Quick  
Edit in  
an app.



## Choosing a display style

SharePoint 2013 provides several preformatted view styles that you can use to control the display of your view. The default view style displays your app data in rows. You can use several additional styles. Many of these are especially helpful in configuring app Web Parts:

- ✓ **Basic Table** displays app data in a simple table.
- ✓ **Boxed** and **Boxed, No Labels** display items as a series of cards, with or without column labels. This display is similar to the Address Card view in Outlook.
- ✓ **Newsletter** and **Newsletter, No Lines** display a table with a streamlined format.
- ✓ **Shaded** displays items in rows, with each alternate row shaded.
- ✓ **Preview Pane** displays items on the left and previews the details on the right. This is a great way to display a lot of information in a compact display.



Many users overlook these effective display styles. Again, experimenting is the best way to find out how a display style can improve a user's experience with the data.

Figure 9-9 shows the style options you can choose from when configuring your view.

**Figure 9-9:**  
You can  
change the  
format of  
the view.



## Managing App Data in a Datasheet View

Datasheet views are great for performing bulk updates on items and document properties. A Datasheet view displays app data in a web-based spreadsheet.

With Datasheet views, you can

- ✓ Support most column types including Text, Choice, Date, Number, and Lookup columns. Datasheet views don't display with Multiple Lines of Text columns. Additionally, not all column features work as expected in a Datasheet view. In short, when Datasheet views work, they work great. You just have to test your column types before getting overly ambitious.
- ✓ Use the arrow keys to move around in the view like a spreadsheet.
- ✓ Copy and paste values, which is another great way to make bulk updates to an app. I often use this approach instead of importing a spreadsheet as a custom app.
- ✓ Choose View App Data in a Datasheet view on the fly from any Standard view by clicking the Quick Edit button on the List tab of the Ribbon.

You create a Datasheet view just like you create a Standard view, although you have fewer configuration options. You can sort, filter, display totals, and set the item limit on Datasheet views.

Figure 9-10 shows a Contacts app in a Datasheet view. If a column can't be edited because of the column's data type, the contents of the cell turn gray when you click in the cell to edit the data.

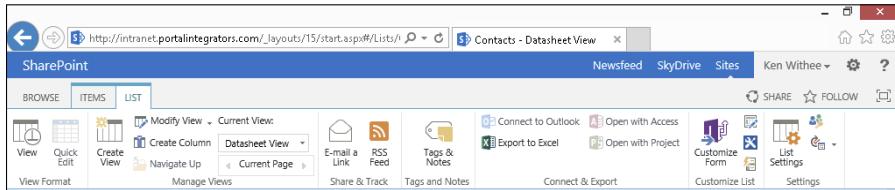
Depending on which Office applications you have installed, you may be able to access additional options for managing app data in Datasheet view. You can access these options in the Connect & Export section of the Ribbon, as shown in Figure 9-11. Notice you can connect the app to Outlook, export the data to Excel, and open the app with Access or Project.

The screenshot shows a SharePoint page titled 'Contacts' in a Datasheet View. The ribbon at the top has 'BROWSE' selected. The left navigation pane lists 'Recent', 'Tasks', 'Calendar', 'Recent', 'Contacts', 'Sales Territories', 'For Dummies Survey', 'Orders', 'Customers', and 'Site Contents'. The main area shows a table with columns: Last Name, First Name, Company, Business Phone, Home Phone, and Email Address. There are six rows of data. The first row (Ken Withee) has a blue selection box around it. The second row (Elczař Adamé) also has a blue selection box around it. The third row (Mai Supetran) has a blue selection box around it. The fourth row (Alfonso Supetran) has a blue selection box around it. The fifth row (Rosemarie Withee) has a blue selection box around it. The sixth row is empty. At the bottom of the table, there is a 'Find an item' search bar and a '+' button. A callout bubble points to the active cell in the second row with the text 'Edit the active cell'.

	Last Name	First Name	Company	Business Phone	Home Phone	Email Address	
	Withee ✎	Ken	Portal Integrators				
	Adame ✎	Elczař	Portal Integrators				
	Supetran ✎	Mai	ACS Manufacturing				
	Supetran ✎	Alfonso	ACS Manufacturing				
	Withee ✎	Rosemarie	Portal Integrators				

**Figure 9-10:**  
Use a  
Datasheet  
view to  
update data.

**Figure 9-11:**  
Use the Connect & Export section to open your app in Outlook, Excel, Access, or Project.



## Using Ad Hoc Views

Users can make Ad Hoc views in any Standard or Datasheet views by using the headers of the columns to sort and filter the data on the fly. These ad hoc changes aren't saved with the app the way defined views are. Helping your users be productive by using these ad hoc options may involve training tips or help support.

Follow these steps to create an Ad Hoc view:

- 1. Hover over a column heading and click the down-arrow that appears on the right of the header. This can be done in Standard or Datasheet view.**
- A drop-down list appears on the column header cell.
- 2. From the drop-down list, select whether you want to sort ascending or descending, or to filter the list based on data in that column.**

Clicking the column header also toggles the sort order between ascending and descending.

Filtering options appear as distinct data from the values in the column (for example, if Marketing appears ten times in the column, it appears only once as a filter choice).

- 3. Select a value from the Filter list.**

Filtering hides rows that don't contain that value.

A Filter icon appears in the column header to indicate a filter is applied.

- 4. To remove the filter, click the drop-down list again and select Clear Filter from [Column Name].**



If you want to access your Ad Hoc view again, simply save it as a favorite in your web browser. You can even copy the web address from the address bar in your browser and send the link to other people.

## Creating a Calendar View

To create a Calendar view, you must have at least one Date field in your app. The predefined SharePoint Calendar app, not surprisingly, uses this view as its default. A Calendar view helps users visually organize their date-driven work and events.

To create a Calendar view, start as you'd begin to create a Standard view (refer to the earlier section, "Creating a Standard View"), but in Step 4, click the Calendar View link. Like the Gantt view (which I describe in the following section), you see new options on the Create View page. You have a section for Time Interval, where you select the date column to use as the Begin and End fields for the view.

You also have selections to make for Calendar columns, including Month/Week/Day Titles and Week/Day Sub Heading Titles (optional). Choose the column of data you want visible on those days in the different calendar layouts.

There is also a scope option for the default display — Month, Day, or Week. As expected, several options aren't available for Calendar views including sorting, totals, item limits, and styles; however, filtering choices are important and are often used with Calendar views.



Calendar views can also be used with Calendar overlays, which allow you to display more than one calendar view in a calendar.

## Displaying Tasks in a Gantt View

To create a Gantt view, your app needs to contain task/project management information relative to that view format. The predefined SharePoint Tasks app contains these types of columns, including Title (task title), Start Date, Due Date, % Complete, and Predecessors (optional).

The Create View page includes Gantt view options not seen in other views based on the five columns mentioned previously.

The Gantt view is a *split view* (see Figure 9-12), where you see a spreadsheet of data on the left and the Gantt chart on the right. A split bar between the two views can be moved by users to see more or less of one side. You can create a custom list or modify the Tasks list to add more columns for this spreadsheet side if you want.



You can synchronize tasks with project plans in Microsoft Project 2013. In Project, choose Save & Send→Sync with Tasks List and enter the URL for your tasks list.

**Figure 9-12:**  
The Gantt  
chart  
columns  
available in  
Gantt view.

	Task Name	Due Date
0	task 1	4/15/2013
0	task 2	4/17/2013
0	task 3	4/18/2013

	7/2013					4/14/2013					4/21/2013						
	M	T	W	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	F
task 1																	
task 2																	
task 3																	

## Managing Existing Views

Chances are that you'll want to modify your views over time. In the following sections, I explain how to modify your views and set one as the default view that users see when they browse to an app. SharePoint also provides a couple of built-in views that you may want to customize.

### Modifying your views

After creating your fabulous new view, you may find that you need to change it. Maybe you forgot a column, it doesn't sort the way you want it to, or the grouping is just all wrong.

To modify a view, follow these steps:

1. Browse to the app where you want to modify the view.
2. Display the view you want to modify.

To change the view that is currently displayed:

- a. Click the Library or List tab on the Ribbon.
- b. In the Manage Views section, click the Change View drop-down list and select the view you want to modify.

Alternatively, you can click the view name at the top of the page.

**3. Click the Modify This View button in the Manage Views section of the Ribbon.**

A View Properties page similar to the Create View page appears, enabling you to edit the view's properties.

Alternatively, you can click the ellipsis next to the view name at the top of the page and choose Modify This View.

**4. Make your desired changes to the view, such as selecting or removing columns or setting sorting or filtering options as described earlier in this chapter.**

**5. Click OK to save your changes to the view.**



Public views are visible to everyone, but private views can only be used by the person who creates them.

## *Setting the default view*

To change the default view, select the Make This the Default View check box when you create or modify a view. If you are modifying the current default view, you don't see the Make This the Default View check box.

Most apps have only one default view; the exception is the Discussion Board list, which has both subjects and replies as default views. Keep in mind that if you make a view a default view, it must be a Public view.

## *Other SharePoint built-in views*

In addition to the other view formats I discuss earlier in this chapter, two other options fall under the view discussion:

✓ **Mobile:** Simplified, text-only views of your apps for use on a mobile device. Mobile is actually a section on the Create View page. You can enable a view to be a Mobile view or set it as the default Mobile view. (Mobile views must be public.)

You can also set the number of items to display for Mobile views. If you don't see the Mobile section in your Create View page, this type of view can't be displayed in Mobile format.

✓ **RSS:** SharePoint generates RSS feeds for apps. (See Chapter 16 for more on how users subscribe to and view SharePoint RSS feeds.)

## Displaying Views via Web Parts

Throughout this chapter, I make references to app Web Parts to point out what view properties are helpful and applicable to a view displayed in a Web Part. You want to display your app data with other text and Web Parts in multiple locations, such as team site home pages, Web Part pages, or publishing pages. In these situations, you don't want your users to interact with the app itself with all the editing options. You just want them to see several columns to access a document or view an item.

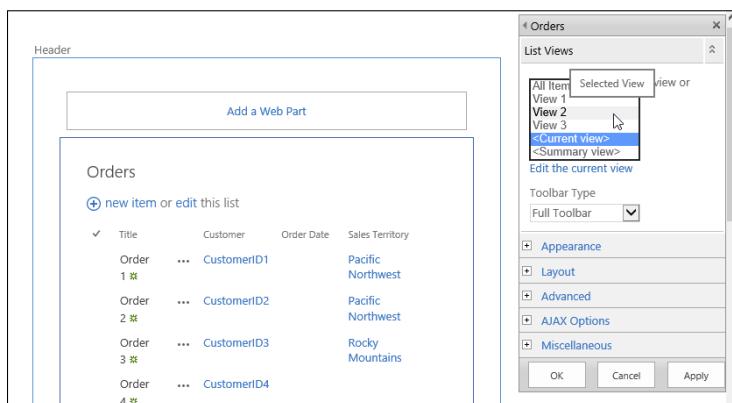
Chapter 6 goes into detail about using Web Parts, including linked Web Parts, connections, and master/detail settings. However, you need to know that each app generates a Web Part that can be used on SharePoint pages. Each of these Web Parts has a Properties panel that allows you to change the view in that instance of the Web Part.

Predefined SharePoint apps may have specific views that are defaults for Web Parts (for example, the Announcements app has a special default view that can't be re-created in the browser for other apps). Custom apps generally show all columns when first generated.

After selecting the Edit Web Part command on the Web Part, you can use the Selected View drop-down list in the Web Part Properties panel to apply another view, or you can also click the Edit the Current View hyperlink to modify the view on the fly. Depending on the complexity of your choices, creating a view first to apply to the Web Part(s) may be a better long-term maintenance strategy.

Figure 9-13 shows the Selected View options in a Web Part for a Tasks app.

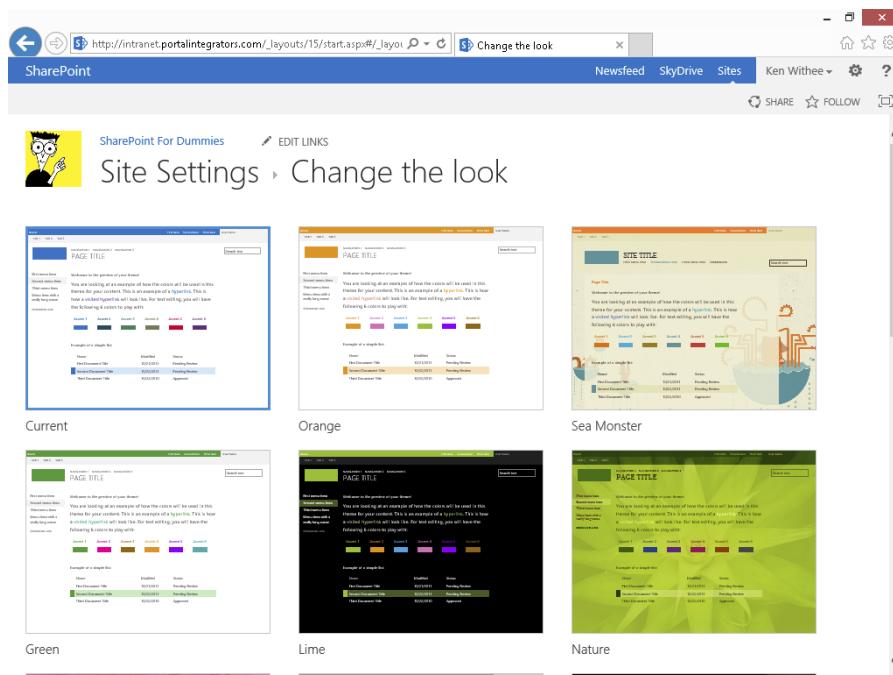
**Figure 9-13:**  
Change the  
view in an  
app Web  
Part.





# Part III

# Becoming a SharePoint Administrator



Visit [www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013](http://www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013) for great Dummies content online.

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Get familiar with the Site Settings page and all the settings available for your SharePoint sites.
- ✓ Add links and customize navigation for your SharePoint sites.
- ✓ Activate and deactivate features in SharePoint and extend functionality with custom features.
- ✓ Change the look and feel of your SharePoint site with themes, and change the top link bar and Quick Launch navigation.
- ✓ Manage SharePoint groups, assign permissions, and manage administrative processes to secure your SharePoint sites.

## Chapter 10

# Getting Familiar with Site Settings

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Getting familiar with the settings for your site
- ▶ Figuring out how to access the Site Settings page
- ▶ Understanding the different site settings categories

**I**t used to be that website administration was done by the same web developer geeks that created the site. This made life simple for the information worker. If something was wrong with the site, call IT! If something needed to be changed, call IT! If a new site needed to be created and developed, call IT!

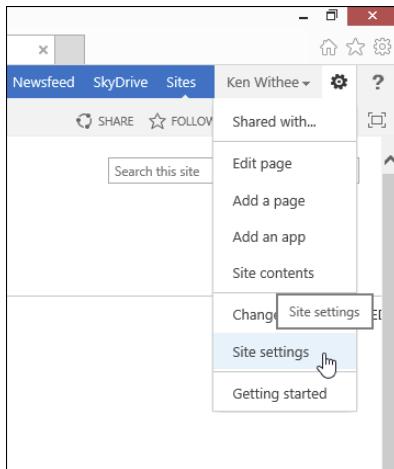
SharePoint has shifted the paradigm of website administration. No longer do you need to involve IT in your website administration. This relieves the pressure on IT and also empowers you to take control of your own site. Wasn't it a line in *Spider-Man*, that with great power comes great responsibility? Well, the same is true with SharePoint. If you are a site administrator, you have great power at your fingertips. Just be prepared; the website users will now come to you instead of IT. No need to fear, though, SharePoint makes website administration straightforward. Everything is done using your web browser from a centralized settings page called Site Settings. Yes, you use SharePoint to administer SharePoint. How convenient!

In this chapter, you go through the settings available for a SharePoint site. You find out how to find the Site Settings page and gain familiarity with the many different settings categories.

## *Finding Site Settings*

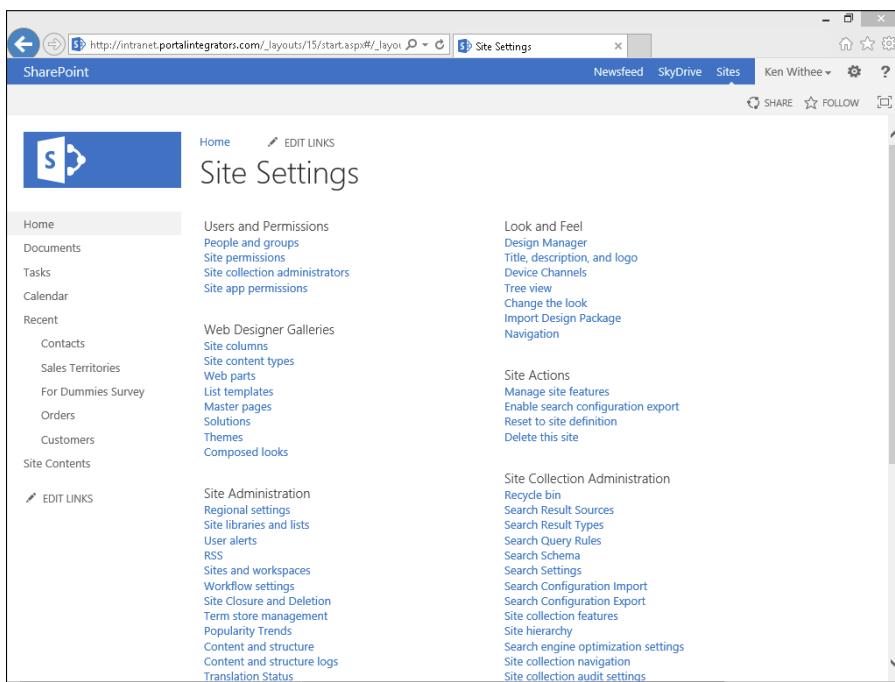
Thankfully, finding the Site Settings page is as easy as two clicks of the mouse. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings, as shown in Figure 10-1.

**Figure 10-1:**  
Opening the  
Site Settings  
page.



When the Site Settings page loads, you see a number of links all grouped into various categories, as shown in Figure 10-2. The Site Settings page can be daunting and overwhelming. Don't worry, though. As you administer a SharePoint site, you will become familiar with all the various settings pages and become an expert before you know it.

**Figure 10-2:**  
The Site  
Settings  
page in  
SharePoint  
2013.



Different settings links appear and disappear, depending on your particular permissions and the type of site you are administering. For example, if you're a site collection administrator, then you see the Site Collection Administrators link under the Users and Permissions section. If you're not, then you won't see this link or even the entire Site Collection Administration section.



If you read about a settings page but can't find it, then chances are you don't have permissions or are working with a site that does not have that particular settings page.

## Digging into Site Settings

The Site Settings page for a site based on the Team Site template contains seven settings categories: Users and Permissions, Web Designer Galleries, Site Administration, Search, Look and Feel, Site Actions, and Site Collection Administration.

### *Users and Permissions*

SharePoint security is a broad topic. In SharePoint, you can create groups, add roles, and set permissions. You can add users to those groups and set permissions for sites and apps. The Users and Permissions section of the Site Settings page is where you administer SharePoint security. (Refer to Figure 10-2 to see the Users and Permissions category.)

The Users and Permissions section contains links to the following settings pages:

- ✓ **People and Groups:** Click to view settings for all the users in your site. Using the People and Groups settings page, you can create new groups, add and remove users from groups, and set permissions for groups.
- ✓ **Site Permissions:** Click to see a page where you can create groups, add roles, change access request settings, and view current roles. In addition, you can add, edit, view, and remove permissions from users.
- ✓ **Site Collection Administrators:** Click this link to set which users have site collection administrator permissions. Site collection administrators have permissions to all the sites contained in the Site Collection. This could be many sites, depending on how your SharePoint farm is set up. If you're a site collection administrator, be very careful who you give this permission to. (This link does not appear if you're not already a site collection administrator on the site.)
- ✓ **Site App Permissions:** Click to provide permissions to the site for SharePoint apps. This is important for third-party apps that you install on the site that need to access your data.

## Understanding administration

SharePoint is a very complex product. This book covers only a small sliver of SharePoint that is the user perspective. In addition to the users of SharePoint, a complete infrastructure also makes up a SharePoint environment. If you use SharePoint Online, then Microsoft handles most of the infrastructure (your organization is still responsible for its own Internet access). If you use SharePoint on your own premise, then there is a small army of administrator roles that need to be considered.

In this part of the book, you find out how to administer a SharePoint site. In addition to site (and site collection) administration, there are also SharePoint farm administrators. A *farm administrator* takes care of all the settings for the entire SharePoint farm. A *farm* is made up of multiple web applications that can each contain multiple site collections. Depending on the size of your organization, you may have multiple farm administrators.

SharePoint runs on Windows and uses the Microsoft database product SQL Server. These are complicated products in their own right and often have their own administrators. In particular,

a database administrator is a very specialized role, and many companies have more than one of them.

SharePoint environments are often made up of multiple servers. And then you have all the users that each have a device that needs to connect to these servers. To make all the communication happen, you need network administrators. Network administrators live in a completely separate world from the rest of the administrators and focus on the wires (and wireless), switches, hubs, and routers that connect all the devices together.

A lot of administrators make up a SharePoint environment. Organizing them all and making everything work properly is one of the reasons SharePoint is considered enterprise-class software. And trust me, mobilizing this army isn't cheap. Using SharePoint on your premise gives you more control over the environment, but using SharePoint Online offers a cost-effective alternative, and SharePoint Online is often the only real choice for small- to medium-sized organizations.



SharePoint security can take some time to comprehend. Sometimes things just don't seem to work the way they should. Hang in there, though. I talk more about SharePoint security in Chapter 14.

## Web Designer Galleries

A common theme throughout SharePoint is reusability. When you spend the time to develop something, you want to be able to use it over and over again. In SharePoint, reusability takes the form of things like data containers, templates, layouts, and solutions. The Web Designer Galleries is where you manage all these reusable components. The components are stored in galleries and are designed to hold the pieces you use when designing your websites. With that in mind, Web Designer Galleries is such a perfect name. (What a nice break from other horribly named technology and acronyms like XSLT, HTML, and CSS.)

The Web Designer Galleries section of the Site Settings page includes the following links:

- ✓ **Site Columns:** A gallery that contains columns you can use throughout the site. For example, you might create a column called Product Name that you could add to any app in the site. SharePoint ships with a number of existing site columns.
- ✓ **Site Content Types:** This gallery stores site content types (which are a collection of columns) so that you can use them throughout the site. For example, say you want to store all the information about a product. A product might contain many different data fields (called site columns) such as Product Name, Product Description, Product Bar Code, Product ID, and probably a lot more. You could create the site column for each data field and then group all of the data fields together into a content type. Now, rather than adding each data field to every app throughout the site, you can simply add the content type when you want to work with a product, and all the columns come along with it. SharePoint ships with a number of content types out of the box. The content types are grouped into categories for easy reference.
- ✓ **Web Parts:** The gallery where all Web Parts (both out of the box and third-party) are stored. *Web Parts* are functional components that can be added to pages. (Web Parts are covered in Chapter 6.)
- ✓ **List Templates:** The gallery where an app saved as a template is stored. (List Templates is a bit of a naming snafu. In SharePoint 2013, all lists and libraries are called apps, so this gallery would more aptly be named App Templates.) Each app based on a list has a link on the List Settings page. Under the Permissions and Management section is the Save List as Template link. When you save a list app as a template, it is then stored in the List Templates gallery. You can then take the template and upload it to this gallery on a different SharePoint site. After it's uploaded, you see a new app type on the Your Apps page, and you can then create apps based on the uploaded template. This is handy when you spend a lot of time building a list app just the way you want it and need to transfer it to another location.
- ✓ **Master Pages and Page Layouts:** This gallery contains all the master pages and page layouts. A *master page* is a template type page that provides a consistent look and feel throughout every page in the site. For example, notice how in every out-of-the-box SharePoint site, the navigation is on the left, there is a header at the top, and the pages are in the middle? That is all due to the master page that ships with SharePoint. (Creating custom master pages for your organization is best left to developers — master pages are a lot of work and can quickly turn into a nightmare project. SharePoint also requires the master page to contain certain things and behave in a certain way.) A page layout is a similar concept to a master page but is designed to be a template for a single page. (Page layouts are a feature of the publishing components of SharePoint and are covered further in Chapter 18.)

- ✓ **Solutions:** A gallery that stores custom SharePoint solutions. A *SharePoint solution* is a bunch of custom-developed functionality all packaged together. The entire package is called a Web Solution Package (WSP). A SharePoint solution might be developed by your in-house developers or purchased from a third party. For example, the company Portal Integrators has a Human Resource Solution. If you purchase it, you get a WSP with all sorts of SharePoint functionality designed for Human Resources. You upload the WSP to this gallery, and your Human Resources department now loves SharePoint.
- ✓ **Themes:** A gallery that holds SharePoint themes. A *theme* is a collection of colors and fonts. When you apply a theme, your SharePoint site magically changes. A number of themes ship with SharePoint, and you can also have a web developer build your own custom themes. (Changing the look and feel of your site is covered further in Chapter 13.)
- ✓ **Composed Looks:** A gallery that has to do with the look and feel of your site. A *composed look* is new in SharePoint 2013; it expands on the idea of themes and adds a background image and a master page. A number of composed looks ship with SharePoint (and are explored in Chapter 13). To give you a sneak peek, SharePoint ships with composed looks called Sea Monster, Breeze, and Immerse. You can look forward to spicing up your SharePoint site, if you so desire.

Refer to Figure 10-2 to see the Web Designer Galleries category.

## Site Administration

The Site Administration section is where you manage options that are specific to this individual site. The changes you make in this section won't affect other sites in the same site collection container. This is different than the Web Designer Galleries section of the Site Settings page. The Web Designer Galleries section includes components that are used throughout the site collection. So if you upload a solution, it will be available to other sites in the site collection.



It's easy to get confused about which site the Site Administration page affects. This is especially true if you manage multiple sites or are a site collection administrator. When working with the Site Administration settings, make sure you are on the correct site.

The Site Administration section contains a large number of settings, so many that I can't cover them all in this book. I encourage you to explore these settings. Among the settings in the Site Administration section are Regional Settings, User Alerts, Workflow Settings, Term Store Management, Popularity Trends, and even Translation Status.

(Refer to Figure 10-2 to see the Site Administration category.)

## Search

The Search section is where you manage all the search functionality for your site. Search can be an incredibly powerful productivity tool. It's worth spending the time to discover the capabilities of SharePoint search.

The Search section contains the following links:

- ✓ **Result Sources** is a settings page where you define where SharePoint search should look for content. You can set sources to local SharePoint content, remote SharePoint content, Exchange, or any other external system that supports the OpenSearch protocol.
- ✓ **Result Types** is where you define how a result will look based on the type of content displayed. For example, you might want the results of a person to look different from the results of an Excel or Word file. A number of prepackaged types ship with SharePoint, and you can also define your own. For example, you might want all your products to display in a search result in a particular way. You might want the picture on the left and a description and price on the bottom. You might then want a link to the product page and also a link to the product documentation. You define this with a custom search result that uses a custom template. Building these isn't simple, but it is possible with the right technical resources.
- ✓ **Query Rules** is a place where you can promote important content into search results. This is valuable because most people are looking for common content. The search engine doesn't know the difference between an actual marketing template and a hundred other documents that might include the words *marketing template*. Using the query rules, you can let SharePoint know that the actual marketing template is what people are looking for when they search the term and that it should be displayed at the top. You can also show additional blocks of search results based on a search that you might think someone is trying to find. For example, if someone searches for *sales decks*, they might really mean *sales PowerPoint documents*. Query rules are very powerful, and it's worth taking the time to figure out the capabilities to provide the best search experience.
- ✓ **Schema** is where you can manage properties and map the properties that the search engine uses when searching. A *property* is a piece of data about the thing that you search for. For example, if you search for a person, you might create a property to hold the person's department. The search engine can then reference that property when you look for a person in a particular department. Managing properties is only available to site collection administrators.

- ✓ **Search Settings** is where you define the general search settings for the site. You can point the search results to a special site called a Search Center or a specific custom page you have developed to show search results. In addition, you can configure navigation for moving between search and the rest of the site.
- ✓ **Searchable Columns** is a where you define which columns you want the search engine to reference when you search. (Creating a new column is covered in Chapter 8.) You can use this settings page to let SharePoint know it should use a particular column of metadata when searching for content.
- ✓ **Search and Offline Availability** allows you to ban the site content from appearing in search results, set fine-grained search permissions, and even allow items from the site to be downloaded to offline clients.
- ✓ **Configuration Import** lets you import a search configuration file. A search configuration file can contain all the settings and details that you have already spent the time to set up. You definitely wouldn't want to go through the entire exercise on every site, so you can use configuration files to move settings between sites.
- ✓ **Configuration Export** is used to export a search configuration file after you have everything set up just how you want it. You can then use the Configuration Import setting to import on the new site.

SharePoint search is a very broad topic and it takes some time to get familiar with its capabilities. It is well worth the effort, however, because search can greatly improve your organization's productivity. (I discuss SharePoint search in more detail in Chapter 19.)

(Refer to Figure 10-2 to see the Search category.)

## *Look and Feel*

The Look and Feel section of the Site Settings page includes links for managing things like the color, title, and landing page. You can easily change a number of things to customize your site and make it your own.



The Look and Feel section of the Site Settings page is a perfect lesson in SharePoint frustration. The links that appear in this section depend on whether you have the SharePoint Server Publishing feature activated. Not knowing this could cause you frustration because you may read about a settings link, but when you look at your own SharePoint 2013 site, that link is nowhere to be found. To make matters worse, the links are different depending on whether SharePoint Server Publishing is activated at the site collection level or the site level. For example, you could have SharePoint Server Publishing activated at the site collection level but not activated at the site level. You will still see the Navigation link in the Look and Feel section, as

opposed to the top link bar and Quick Launch navigation links that appear if the publishing feature was deactivated at the site collection level. (Activating and deactivating SharePoint features is covered in Chapter 12.)

The Look and Feel section contains the following setting links (when the SharePoint Server Publishing feature is not active at the site collection or site level):

- ✓ **Title, Description, and Logo** is where you can change the title of your site, add or edit the description, and insert a logo. Just changing the title and logo is often enough to make a business site your own. With this simple change, your site looks professional and unique to your team or organization. You can then get on with the productivity benefits that SharePoint has to offer.
- ✓ **Quick Launch** enables you to configure the navigation on the left side of the page. You can add headings, links, and change the order.
- ✓ **Top Link Bar** enables you to configure navigation at the top of the page.
- ✓ **Tree View** is where you enable or disable the Quick Launch (left navigation) or turn on a special type of navigation on the left side that shows a tree of the site's content.
- ✓ **Change the Look** is where you choose the colors and design of the site. There are some exciting and outrageous looks such as Sea Monster and Immerse. The looks available to choose from are in the Composed Looks gallery (see the earlier section, "Web Designer Galleries").

When you activate the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature at the site collection level, the Tree View and Top Link Bar setting links disappear and are replaced with a single Navigation link. In addition, the following settings links appear (even though the SharePoint Server Publishing feature has not been activated for this particular site, it was activated at the site collection that contains this site).

- ✓ **Design Manager** is a web-based tool that you can use to create your own SharePoint site designs. The tool is wizard based and walks you through uploading design files, editing your master page, changing page layouts, and publishing and packaging your design.
- ✓ **Device Channels** enables you to specify certain characteristics of your site based on the device used to view the site. A channel can be optimized for the device to display the site in a specific way. For example, you can set up a channel for smartphones (such as an iPhone or Windows Phone). You could set up a different channel for the iPad or Surface tablets. And finally, you can set up a channel for laptops and desktop browsers.
- ✓ **Import Design Package** enables you to import a design package developed by a third party or in-house designer.

- ✓ **Navigation** enables you to manage navigation links and also change how the navigation behaves. You can configure global navigation (top of page) and also current navigation (left side of page). The Navigation settings page also enables you to change the sorting order of the navigational links and show and hide the Ribbon.

When you activate the SharePoint Server Publishing feature for this particular site, the following links appear in the Look and Feel section:

- ✓ **Master Page** is where you choose which master page the site uses and which master page the system uses. The system master page is for pages used by the system, such as when you view an app.
- ✓ **Page Layouts and Site Templates** enables you to control which page layouts and site templates are available for users of the site. All the page layouts are contained in a gallery (see the earlier section, “Web Designer Galleries”). This settings page enables you to limit the page layouts and site templates that users of the site can use.
- ✓ **Welcome Page** is the landing page for a publishing site. You can use this settings page to determine which page should be used for the landing page.
- ✓ **Image Renditions** is where you determine how images and video should render. You can choose a particular width and height for each type of image or video.

I cover changing the look and feel of your site in Chapter 13 and cover SharePoint navigation in Chapter 11.

The Look and Feel category, with the SharePoint Server Publishing feature activated, is shown in Figure 10-2.

## *Site Actions*

The Site Actions section is where you manage the SharePoint features for the site. You can activate or deactivate particular features using the Manage Site Features link. In addition, you can reset the site to its original template definition or delete the site completely.

I cover activating and deactivating SharePoint features in detail in Chapter 12.

(Refer to Figure 10-2 to see the Site Actions category.)

## Site Collection Administration

A *site collection* is a container for multiple sites. SharePoint allows organizations to delegate different levels of administration. For example, you might be a site collection administrator, and there might be an administrator for each site. This delegation of duty is important for offloading the work required to keep a large number of websites running smoothly.

The Site Collection Administration section of the Site Settings page is used to administer the overall site collection. The result is that any changes made to these settings pages affect all sites in the site collection. In addition, you can activate or deactivate a feature here to make it available or remove it from all the sites in the collection. The next step up in administration from site collection administrator is SharePoint farm administrator. A SharePoint farm administrator uses a tool called Central Administration, and the changes they make at the farm level affect all site collections in the SharePoint farm.



In order to see this section, you must be a site collection administrator.

There are over 30 links to settings pages in the Site Collection Administration section. Most of the links are similar in nature to the Site Administration section but affect all sites in the collection and not just the current site.

The Site Collection Administration category is shown in Figure 10-3.

- Site Collection Administration
- Recycle bin
- Search Result Sources
- Search Result Types
- Search Query Rules
- Search Schema
- Search Settings
- Search Configuration Import
- Search Configuration Export
- Site collection features
- Site hierarchy
- Search engine optimization settings
- Site collection navigation
- Site collection audit settings
- Audit log reports
- Portal site connection
- Content Type Policy Templates
- Storage Metrics
- Site collection app permissions
- Site Policies
- Popularity and Search Reports
- Content type publishing
- Variations Settings
- Variation labels
- Translatable columns
- Variation logs
- Suggested Content Browser Locations
- Help settings
- SharePoint Designer Settings
- HTML Field Security
- Site collection health checks
- Site collection upgrade

**Figure 10-3:**  
The Site  
Collection  
Administra-  
tion  
category  
of the Site  
Settings  
page.



## **Chapter 11**

---

# **Configuring Site Navigation**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Configuring global and current navigation
  - ▶ Adding static headers and links in navigation
  - ▶ Creating your own custom navigation menus
- 

**S**harePoint handles navigation by default. When you create a site based on a template, you already have navigational links to pages such as your Documents app, the Home page, and the contents of the site. As you get more advanced with SharePoint, you may want to start modifying the default navigation and customizing it to fit your needs.

In this chapter, you see how to configure SharePoint navigation. You add your own links not only to SharePoint pages, but also to anywhere on the World Wide Web. You discover the differences between dynamic and static navigation. Finally, you delve into some of the options available when configuring navigation in your SharePoint site.

## ***Understanding How to Configure SharePoint Navigation***

SharePoint navigation is fairly straightforward until you turn on the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature. This feature is activated and deactivated at the site collection level. When the feature is not active for the site collection, you manage SharePoint navigation in a straightforward manner. When it is activated, you manage SharePoint navigation in a more advanced manner. In addition, the name of the navigation settings links on the Site Settings page change when the feature is activated. To see exactly how the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure changes the names of the links, check out the section about Look and Feel settings in Chapter 10.

In this chapter, I focus on navigation when the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature is activated for the site collection. Without this feature, you can simply add, remove, and order links. With this feature activated, a whole world of SharePoint navigation is flung open. (To find out more about navigation when the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature is not turned on, check out Chapter 13.)

## Configuring SharePoint Navigation

The navigation options in a publishing site allow you to manage both the top navigation and the site's Quick Launch navigation on one page. SharePoint enables you to manage the two major kinds of navigation found on most websites:

- ✓ **Primary navigation** is what your site visitors use to reach the main areas in your site, no matter where they are in your site. Primary navigation is usually positioned somewhere in the top of the page and is consistent across every page in your site. SharePoint calls this *global navigation*.
- ✓ **Contextual navigation** is usually found in the body of the page, usually on the left, and provides access to pages within each major area of your site. This navigation is considered contextual because the navigation items may change, depending on where the visitor is in the site. SharePoint calls this *current navigation*.

SharePoint provides two navigation menus that correspond with global and current navigation. The Top Link bar is the global navigation menu that's usually present at the top of publishing pages. The Quick Launch menu provides the current navigation that appears along the left side of most pages.

SharePoint's publishing site assumes that you want global and current navigation menus created dynamically based on site hierarchy. To that end, configuring navigation in a publishing site requires two things:

- ✓ **A site hierarchy that matches your navigation requirements.** In other words, you have subsites for the major items in your global navigation and pages for the items below. Any time you want to create a new grouping of pages in the navigation menu, you have to create a new subsite. This often leads to extensive nesting of sites, which I recommend you avoid. This is one reason that people start looking for alternative approaches to navigation.

✓ The ability to think in terms of the current site you're setting navigation options for, its parent site, its sibling sites, and any children sites that may exist. This can be extremely confusing to people, which is one reason why I see many people abandon dynamic navigation. It's too hard to keep track of what's happening where.

## Configuring global navigation

In most publishing sites, you want all pages and sites to display the same navigation settings. SharePoint can dynamically display all subsites and pages within a subsite in your global navigation. Pages display in a dropdown list.

Each site in your publishing site can have its own global configuration settings. So you need to perform the following steps for each site. The settings you make in a subsite, such as whether to display pages, impacts navigation for the entire site, not just what the visitor sees when they're on that site. Follow these steps:

1. **Browse to the publishing site or subsite you want to configure global navigation for.**
2. **Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings, and then click the Navigation link in the Look and Feel section.**

The Site Navigation Settings page appears.

3. **In a parent site, such as the top-level site, use the Global Navigation section to indicate whether you want to display navigation items that are below the parent site.**

Select the Show Subsites options to display each subsite in the global navigation. To show the pages that have been created in the parent site, select Show Pages.

Scroll down to the Structural Navigation: Editing and Sorting section of the page to get a sneak peek at your global navigation hierarchy.

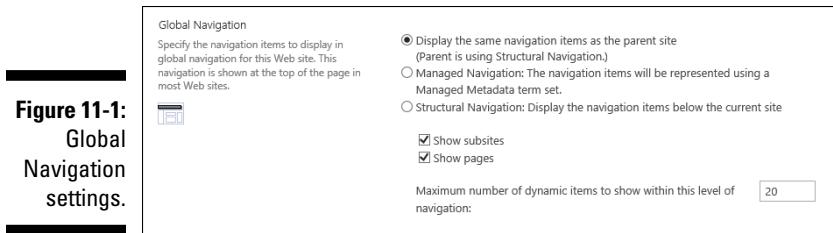
4. **In a child site, use the Global Settings section to determine whether the subsite will display the same global navigation items as its parent site.**

Select the Show Subsites and Show Pages options to display subsites and pages on the current site and any other site (parent or child) that opts to display navigation for the site you are configuring. Figure 11-1 shows the global navigation options for a child site.

A child site can be a parent site to another site.



**Figure 11-1:**  
Global  
Navigation  
settings.



For example, you might create a subsite in your publishing site called MyPubSubSite. If you enable Show Subsites and Show Pages, the top-level home site will also display any pages and subsites of the MyPubSubSite navigation option. Figure 11-2 shows the MyPubSubSite navigation menu from the parent site when the Show Pages option is selected.

**Figure 11-2:**  
The  
MyPubSub  
Site naviga-  
tion menu  
and global  
navigation  
settings for  
a parent  
site.



##### 5. Click OK to save your global navigation settings.



I usually have two browser windows open when I configure navigation. I use one browser window to configure the navigation and another to view the changes I made.

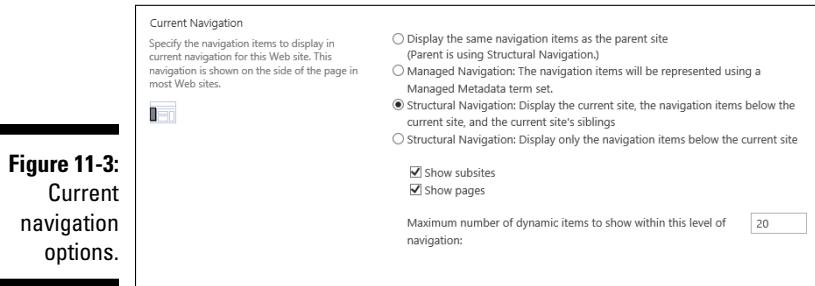
Figure 11-2 shows the global navigation menu for a typical publishing site. This site's parent site is configured to show subsites and pages. The subsite, MyPubSubSite, is configured to show pages. Table 11-1 summarizes typical global navigation settings.

**Table 11-1** Typical Global Navigation Settings

<i>When You Select This Option</i>	<i>This Appears in Global Navigation</i>
Select the Show Subsites check box in each site in your hierarchy.	Subsites automatically appear in the global navigation as soon as they're created. If this option isn't selected in the parent site, no subsites appear in your global navigation.
Select the Show Pages check box in each site in the hierarchy.	Pages automatically appear in the global navigation as soon as they're approved. If this option is selected in the parent site, the parent's sites pages appear as siblings to any subsites in the global navigation.
Select the Display the Same Navigation Items as the Parent option.	All sites have the same global navigation. Make sure that you select this option in each site's global navigation settings.

## Configuring current navigation

Configuring current navigation settings for each site is similar to global navigation. You have the same options to automatically show pages and subsites. As shown in Figure 11-3, you have these options to determine what items appear in the site's current navigation:



**Figure 11-3:**  
Current  
navigation  
options.

- ✓ **Display the Same Navigation Items as the Parent Site:** This option displays the current navigation items using the settings of the parent site.
- ✓ **Managed Navigation:** This option enables you to manage navigation using a set of terms you define called Managed Metadata. When you select this option, your site will show sites and subsites based on the terms you have defined and not the subsites and pages in the site. When you select the Managed Navigation option, the option to show subsites and pages disappears.
- ✓ **Structural Navigation:** This option gives you the choice to display subsites and pages below the current site.



Choosing the Show Pages and Show Subsites options in the Global Navigation section makes navigation items show for pages and subsites in the top navigation. Choosing the Show Pages and Show Subsites option in the Current Navigation section shows the navigational links in the left navigation.

## Configuring Static Navigation

Most clients I work with don't want pages and subsites showing automatically in their navigation. They usually want a static menu that doesn't change when someone publishes an article page.

You can opt to use a static navigation menu by deselecting the Show Pages and Show Subsites options in the navigation settings for each site. You can then manually enter whatever navigation you want to appear in the global and current navigation for each site.

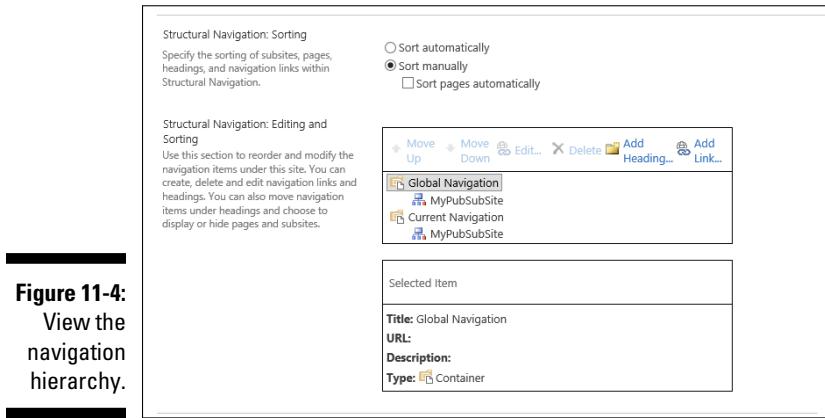
To manually configure your navigation items:

1. **Browse to the site you want to configure, choose Site Settings→Site Settings, and then click the Navigation link in the Look and Feel section.**
2. **Scroll down to the Structural Navigation: Editing and Sorting section.**

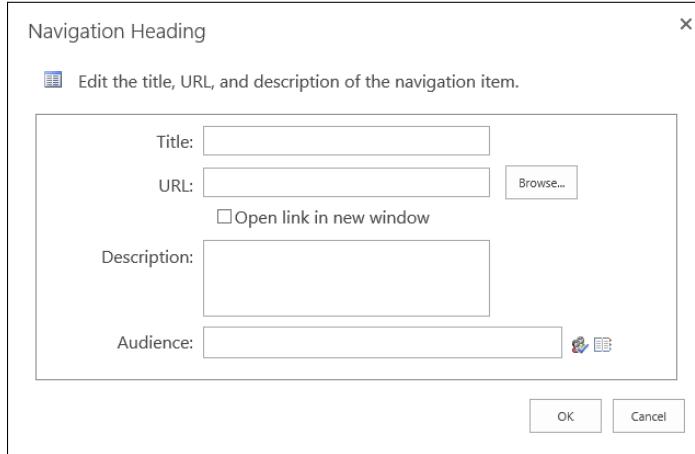
This section shows a hierarchy of your global and current navigation items, as shown in Figure 11-4. The items you see here depend on the settings you make in the global navigation and current navigation settings of the page. For example, if you select the Show Subsites in Global Navigation option, you see subsites listed in this section of the page.

3. **To add a new navigation to your global or current navigation, click the place in the hierarchy where you want to add the item.**
4. **Click the Add Heading button to add a new heading, or click the Add Link button to add a new link.**

Figure 11-5 shows the Navigation Heading dialog box. The Add Link dialog box looks exactly the same. A heading doesn't require a web address or URL. That is, you can use a heading to contain links without requiring that the heading point to anything in the browser.



**Figure 11-4:**  
View the  
navigation  
hierarchy.



**Figure 11-5:**  
Adding a  
new head-  
ing to your  
current  
navigation.

## 5. Enter the details for the navigation item.

You have these options:

- **Title:** The text you enter in this field appears in the navigation menu.
- **URL:** Enter the page where the item links to. This is an optional field for headings.
- **Open Link in New Window:** Select this check box to open the link in a new window.

- **Description:** The text you enter in this field displays as a tooltip when someone hovers over the navigation item.
- **Audience:** Use this text box to filter the navigation item so that only members of the selected audience can see the navigation item.



Get creative about adding navigation items. I often add static links to the current navigation for common tasks that people need to perform, such as managing a group's membership.

**6. Click OK to save your heading or link.**

The heading appears in the site's navigation hierarchy, as shown in Figure 11-6. Use the Move Up or Move Down buttons to reposition the item in the hierarchy.

**Figure 11-6:**  
Your item  
appears  
in the  
navigation  
hierarchy.

Structural Navigation: Editing and Sorting  
Use this section to reorder and modify the navigation items under this site. You can create, delete and edit navigation links and headings. You can also move navigation items under headings and choose to display or hide pages and subsites.

Move Up Move Down Edit... Delete Add Heading... Add Link...

Global Navigation  
MyPubSubSite  
Example Heading  
Example Link

Current Navigation  
MyPubSubSite

Selected Item

Title: Example Heading  
URL:  
Description:  
Type: Heading

**7. Repeat Steps 3–6 to add more links and headings to your navigation hierarchy.**

**8. Use the Edit button to make additional changes to the hierarchy.**

Click the Edit button to modify the Title, Description, URL, or Audience for a navigation item.

**9. Click OK to save your navigation settings.**

## *Navigation Using Web Parts*

It'd be naïve to expect that you only need to use two kinds of site navigation. In reality, webmasters and site visitors expect lots of ways to get to content. In Chapter 6, I discuss the Content Rollup Web Parts. These Web Parts are often used to provide the additional navigation options that you want to see inside your web pages, not just in the header and along the side.

One such Web Part, the Table of Contents Web Part, can be used to create a sitemap. A considered best practice is to provide a sitemap, and the Table of Contents Web Part dynamically generates it for you.



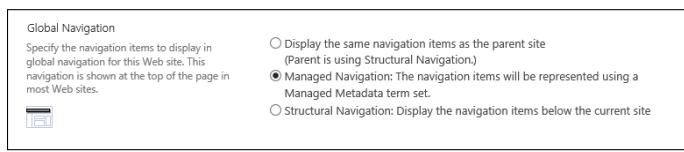
Advanced web developers can use a custom master page to control where the site's navigation menu appears on the page. For example, if you want the current navigation on the right instead of the left, you can have it moved there in the master page. Customizing master pages is not an easy task and should be left to SharePoint master page experts. SharePoint expects certain controls and behaviors from a master page, and if it is customized in the wrong way, SharePoint will throw errors.

## Understanding Managed Navigation

In many cases, people want more control over the site navigation than SharePoint provides out of the box. Publishing sites provide great options for dynamically displaying the navigation based on the site's hierarchy, but what if you want to display navigation based on metadata?

SharePoint 2013 introduces Managed Navigation. Managed Navigation allows you to drive SharePoint navigation based on managed metadata. Managed metadata is hierachal in nature and is managed at the site collection level. When you tie navigation to this hierarchy, you can be sure that every site in the site collection will subscribe to the same structure. When you need to update the hierarchy, you update it for the entire site collection, and every site automatically updates navigation as well. The Managed Navigation option on the navigation settings page is shown in Figure 11-7. You access the Navigation settings page from the Look and Feel section of Site Settings.

**Figure 11-7:**  
The  
Managed  
Navigation  
option.



If you still need more navigation control, you can always bring in developers. SharePoint is built on ASP.NET and allows developers to use special controls for modifying navigation. Because this involves writing code, it's best left to professional developers — but you should at least know it's possible.



## Chapter 12

# Understanding SharePoint Features

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Figuring out how a SharePoint feature works
- ▶ Discovering some of the features that ship with SharePoint 2013
- ▶ Using features to extend SharePoint

**A**s you can read in Chapter 3, the term *feature* can be a bit confusing in SharePoint. You often hear people talk about functionality in terms of features. The term feature has a double meaning in SharePoint. The first meaning is in the traditional sense, so you could say web-based administration is a feature of SharePoint. The second meaning of feature is technical and specifically means a package of code that can be activated and deactivated (turned on and off).

In this chapter, you discover SharePoint features. You see how a feature works and which features are active by default. You also find out how to activate and deactivate features and explore some of the most common and helpful ones. Finally, you see how SharePoint can be extended with custom features.

## *Getting a High-Level View of SharePoint Features*

I have to admit that SharePoint features took me a long time to really understand. The reason is that a feature can do anything in SharePoint. A feature is just a collection of code that alters SharePoint in some manner. For example, say you want to write some code that adds a new item to the drop-down list that appears when you click the Settings gear icon. SharePoint lets you do this in code. Now, how do you deploy it to SharePoint? How do you let site administrators turn it on and off? The answer is that you package that code up in a SharePoint feature. When the feature is installed, an administrator can

activate (turn on) or deactivate (turn off) the feature. The result is that your custom item appears in the Settings drop-down list when the feature is activated and disappears from the drop-down list when the feature is deactivated.

SharePoint ships with a number of features out of the box. In fact, features can be a major source of frustration. Take the earlier example of a feature that makes an item appear on a menu when the feature is activated. The way you reach navigation in SharePoint (covered in Chapter 11) depends on whether a particular SharePoint feature is activated. That feature is the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature. This feature does a lot of things when you activate it, including altering the settings links for navigation. Before you activate the feature, the navigation links on the Site Settings page in the Look and Feel section are displayed as Quick Launch and Top Link Bar. When you activate the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature, it removes those two links and adds one called Navigation.

You will find that the answer to a SharePoint question is often that it depends on which features are activated!

## *Turning On and Off Features*

You turn on and off features by activating and deactivating them. Features are activated at two different levels. The first is a site collection; the second is a site. Features activated at the site collection level affect all sites contained within the site collection. Features activated at the site level only affect that particular site.

When a feature is active (turned on), a blue Active status indicator appears next to the feature on the ride side of the page. See the Access App row in Figure 12-1 and note the Active button in the Status column. When a feature is inactive (turned off) the status column is empty, as shown in the second row (BiCenter Data Connections Feature) in Figure 12-1.

To view a listing of all features for a particular site:

- 1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings.**

The Site Settings page appears.

- 2. In the Site Actions section, click the Manage Site Features link.**

A listing of all the features for this particular site is displayed. Each feature includes an icon, name, description, Activate/Deactivate button, and status column.

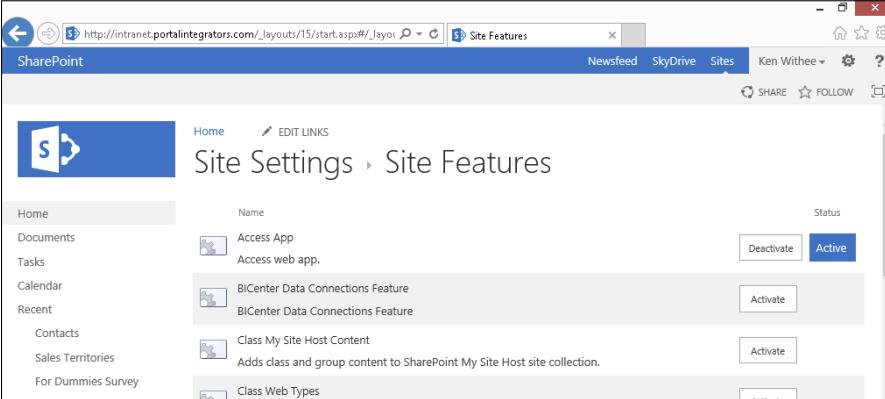
To view a listing of all features for a particular site collection:

- 1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings.**

The Site Settings page appears.

**2. In the Site Collection Administration section, click the Site Collection Features link.**

A listing of all the features for this particular site collection is displayed. Each feature includes an icon, name, description, Activate/Deactivate button, and status column.



The screenshot shows the SharePoint Site Settings page with the 'Site Features' link selected. The page lists several features with their names, descriptions, and status (Active or Deactivated). The 'Access App' feature is active, while others like 'BI Center Data Connections Feature' and 'Class My Site Host Content' are inactive. A warning message at the bottom right of the list indicates that activating certain features may affect other sites in the collection.

Name	Status
Access App	Active
Access web app.	Deactivate
BI Center Data Connections Feature	Activate
BI Center Data Connections Feature	Activate
Class My Site Host Content	Activate
Adds class and group content to SharePoint My Site Host site collection.	Activate
Class Web Types	Activate

**Figure 12-1:**  
Active and  
inactive  
SharePoint  
features.

If you don't see the Site Collection Administration section on the Site Settings page, then you do not have Site Collection Administrator permissions.



It's easy to get turned around when working with SharePoint features. For example, if you are in a subsite and go to the Site Settings page for that subsite, you don't see all the settings links in the Site Collection Administration section. You instead see a link that takes you to the settings page for the site collection. When you click that link, the Site Settings page reloads for the site collection, and you see all the Site Collection Settings links. (A site collection is also a site.) So if you then click the Manage Site Features link, you are actually managing the features scoped for only the site collection site and not the subsite where you originally started.

## Exploring Common Features

Exploring all the features that ship with SharePoint could fill a book unto itself. Each feature on the settings page includes a name and description; I wish I could tell you that they are all straightforward, but they are not. Some features are massive and complicated and others are simple. For example, the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature can do a mind-boggling number of things. Conversely, the Site Feed feature simply enables the use of site feeds on a site.

A couple of the most common features are the SharePoint Server Standard Site features and the SharePoint Server Enterprise Site features. These features include functionality for the different editions of SharePoint Server (Standard and Enterprise). The Standard Edition features include functionality such as user profiles and search, and the Enterprise Edition features include functionality such as Visio Services, Access Services, and Excel Services.



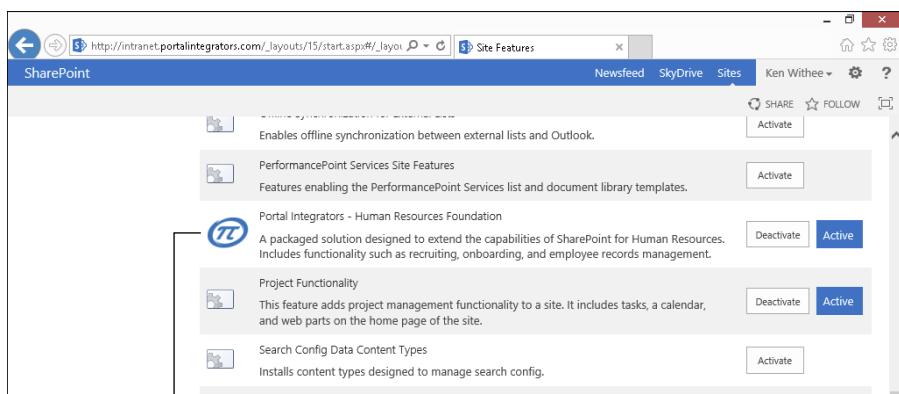
If you're looking for functionality such as Excel Services, and you can't find it, then check to make sure the SharePoint Server Enterprise Site feature is activated for your site.

## *Extending SharePoint with Features*

Microsoft ships a ton of features with SharePoint 2013, but the product can always be extended further. If your organization has a dedicated development team, they can build features specific for your organization. For example, a large public utility company might use in-house developers to create a custom SharePoint feature that adds metering information to a site when activated. Each team in the company can then choose whether to activate or deactivate the feature based on whether they need the metering information on their SharePoint site.

Alternatively, third-party companies also develop features to extend SharePoint for a particular audience. For example, Portal Integrators has a Human Resources Solution, shown in Figure 12-2, that can be activated to extend SharePoint with human resources functionality. After installing a third-party feature, it shows up right alongside the features that Microsoft ships with SharePoint.

**Figure 12-2:**  
A third-party  
feature that  
extends  
SharePoint  
with human  
resources  
functionality.



A third-party feature

## **Chapter 13**

---

# **Changing the Look and Feel of Your Site**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Getting a handle on the Look and Feel section
  - ▶ Changing the site logo
  - ▶ Changing the look of your site
  - ▶ Working with team site navigation
- 

**C**hanging the look and feel of a site can be very powerful. The standard SharePoint colors work just fine, but perhaps you want to change the color palette for a holiday or to match your team's color scheme. SharePoint provides some very powerful features for changing the look and feel of your site. You don't need web designers or any specialized technical skills.

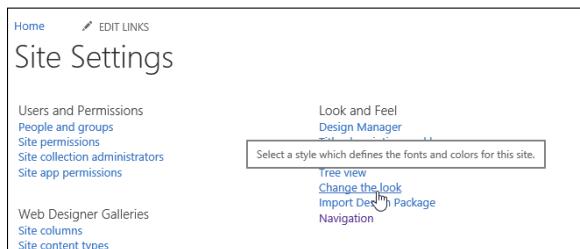
Usability experts have a lot to say about the look and feel of a site. After users are familiar with the look and feel of a site, it's best not to change it. Creating change when it isn't required causes a productivity loss. However, it can be a good idea to spice things up a bit by changing some of the colors for a holiday or special day. You just shouldn't go too crazy (unless you want your users to do the same).

In this chapter, you find out how to change the look and feel of a SharePoint site. You see how themes are used for colors and fonts and how composed looks are used. Finally, this chapter delves into editing the top link bar and Quick Launch navigation on a team site.

## The Look and Feel Section of Site Settings

You change the look and feel of your site using settings in the Look and Feel section of the Site Settings page, shown in Figure 13-1. You can access the Site Settings page by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Settings.

**Figure 13-1:**  
The Look  
and Feel  
section  
of Site  
Settings.



The Look and Feel section contains a number of links for changing things on your site such as navigation, title, description, logo, and most importantly, the look of your site. The links in the Look and Feel section of Site Settings differ depending on which SharePoint feature is active. (To find out about the available links in the Look and Feel section and how features affect these links, see Chapter 10.)

## Changing Your Site Icon

SharePoint team sites contain a site icon in the upper-left corner. The default image in a team site is a blue rectangle with the SharePoint 2013 logo. SharePoint has a setting that allows you to change this image.



In the past, you had to worry about the exact size of your logo. SharePoint 2013 dramatically simplifies the process by letting you choose a logo image from your computer or from a Library app somewhere on your SharePoint site. SharePoint then automatically resizes the image to the optimal size for the logo.

To change the site icon:

1. **Navigate to the Site Settings page by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Settings.**

The Site Settings page appears. You see all the options available in the Look and Feel section.

**2. Click the Title, Description, and Logo link in the Look and Feel section.**

The Title, Description, and Logo page appears, as shown in Figure 13-2.

**3. Click the From Computer link and browse your computer for the image you want to use as a logo.**

When you browse and select an image, SharePoint automatically uploads it to your SharePoint site for you. After the image is uploaded, you see the URL for the image and also a preview of the image.

4. Type a short description of the image in the Enter a Description (Used as Alternative Text for the Picture) text box.

Alternative text is important for accessibility software such as screen readers.

## **5. Click OK to commit your changes.**

You see your new logo in the header area, as shown in Figure 13-3.



If you want to return to the default SharePoint logo, you can simply clear the logo URL and click OK. SharePoint automatically updates the site with the default SharePoint logo.

http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/\_layouts/15/start.aspx#/layout Title, Description, and Logo

SharePoint Newsfeed SkyDrive Sites Ken Withee ▾ SHARE FOLLOW

 Home EDIT LINKS

## Site Settings > Title, Description, and Logo

**Title and Description**  
Type a title and description for your site.

**Title:**

**Description:**

**Logo and Description**  
Associate a logo with this site. Add an optional description for the image. Note: If the file location has a local relative address, for example, /\_layouts/images/logo.gif, you must copy the graphics file to that location on each front-end Web server.

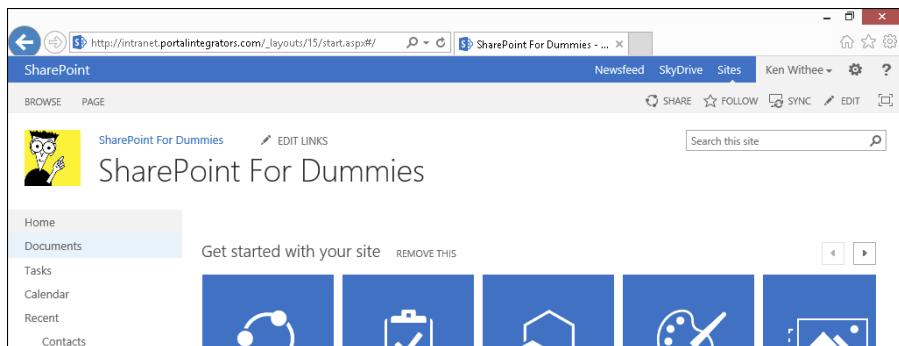
**Insert Logo:**  
FROM COMPUTER | FROM SHAREPOINT  
  


Enter a description (used as alternative text for the picture):

OK Cancel

**Figure 13-2:**  
The Title,  
Description,  
and Logo  
page.

**Figure 13-3:**  
A team site  
with the  
site logo  
changed.



## Changing the Look of Your Site

A *composed look* in SharePoint is a collection of colors, fonts, and layouts that all come together to display your site with a certain look and feel. SharePoint comes with several predefined looks, and your organization may have added others to coordinate the look and feel of other sites.

To change the look of your site, follow these steps:

1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings; in the Look and Feel section of the Site Settings page, click the Change the Look link.

The Change the Look page appears, as shown Figure 13-4, with a preview of many different site looks. Some examples include Sea Monster, Lime, Nature, City, Orbit, Immerse, and Wood. Each preview pane shows you a sample of the site look.

2. To try out a look, simply click the preview image.

The preview image is enlarged and settings are displayed so you can change the background image, the color palette, the site layout, and the font combinations used in the site, as shown in Figure 13-5.

3. Click the Try It Out link in the top-right corner of the page to see what your actual site will look like.

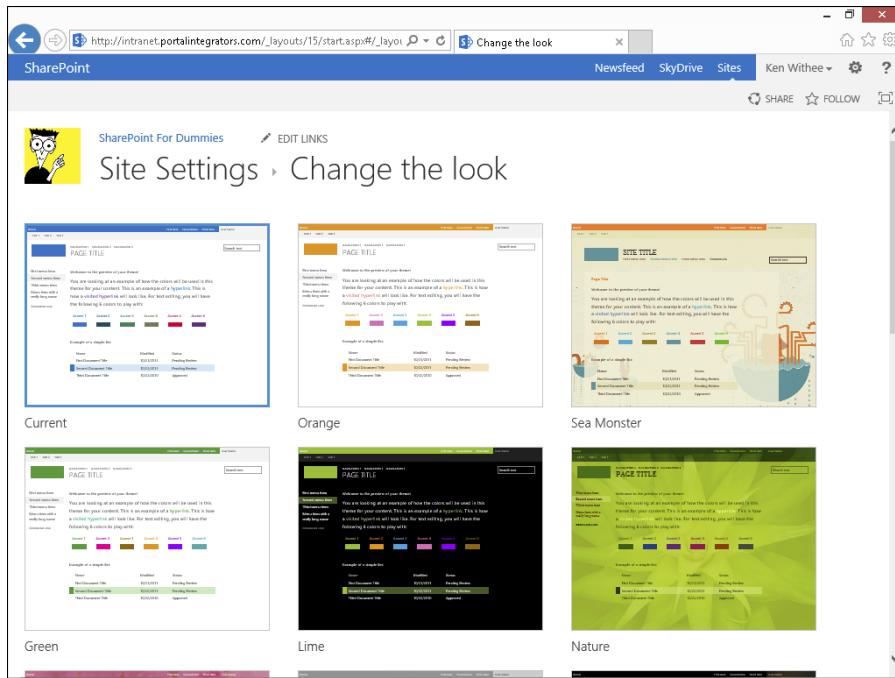
SharePoint does some work and shows your site with the new look in place. The top of the page lets you decide whether to keep the site (by clicking Yes, Keep It) or to revert to the original settings and make more changes (by clicking No, Not Quite There), as shown in Figure 13-6.

4. When you're satisfied with the new look of your site, click Yes, Keep It.

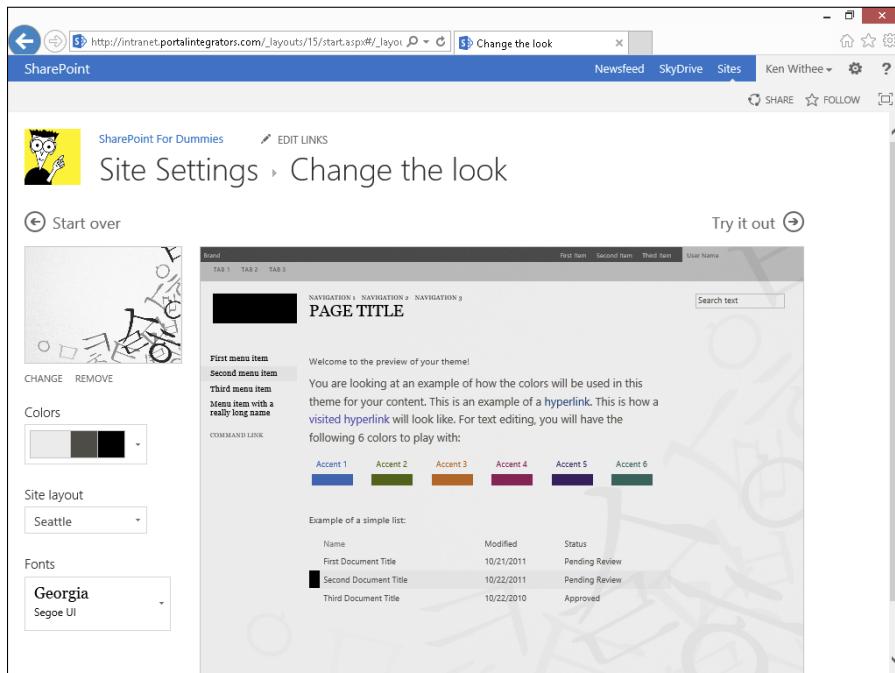
Your site loads with the new look and feel.

If you want to go back to the original look of a SharePoint 2013 site, you can always change back to the Office look.

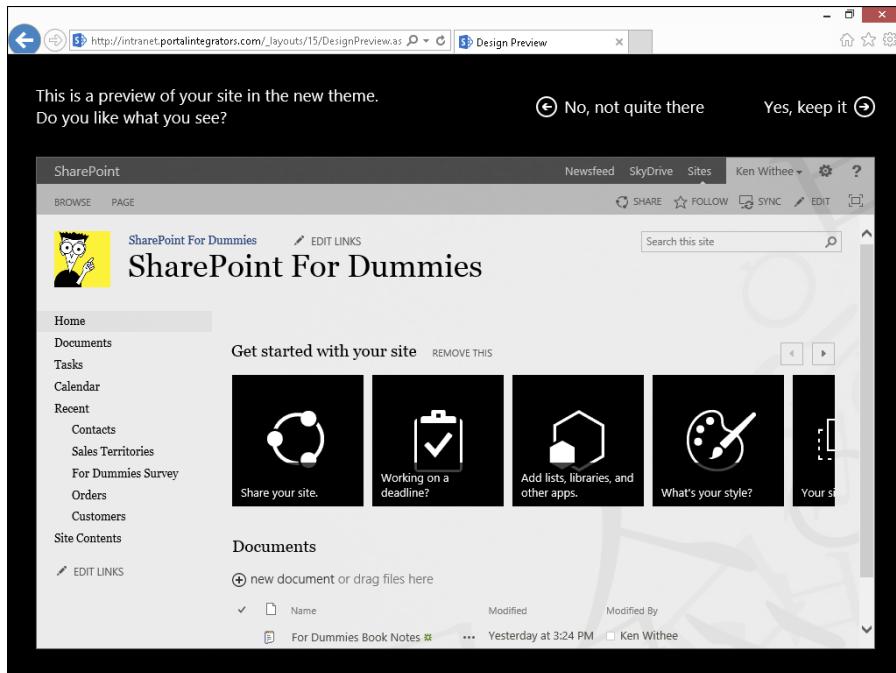




**Figure 13-4:**  
The Change  
the Look  
settings  
page.



**Figure 13-5:**  
Changing  
settings on  
a particular  
look.



**Figure 13-6:**  
Previewing  
a particular  
look for your  
site.

## A note on fonts

The most common fonts used in web design used to be of two families — ones with *serifs* (the strokes that extend from letters), such as Times New Roman, and *sans-serif* (those without strokes from the letters), such as Arial and Verdana. You couldn't guarantee what fonts users had on their computers, so those fonts were a safe default. They're also recognized as fonts with good readability. (For those reading this book that can't wait to pick Gigi, Jokerman, or Curlz MT, and you know who you are, you may want to hold up and read the "A word on usability" section, later in this chapter.)

The best practice when I first learned to design web sites was that serif fonts were good for paragraph text and sans-serif fonts were good for very large and very small text (like headings and footer notes). The trend today for many sites is to use only sans-serif fonts, or in the case of SharePoint, the Segoe UI Light and Segoe UI fonts.

Many companies have a large amount of font styles available on employee computers, especially as the options in Microsoft Office have grown.

However, if your users don't have the font you selected, the browser will convert to a default font.

When you're customizing a look (as I describe earlier in this chapter in the "Changing the Look of Your Site" section), you can choose different font combinations. The font combinations have been matched for each packaged site look.

A new trend in Microsoft technology is the use of Segoe UI fonts. The Segoe font family is used across all Microsoft products such as Windows Phone 8, Windows 8, the new Surface tablet, and of course Office.



The default look of a SharePoint site uses the Segoe font family.

## *A word on usability*

I suppose the reason you have a SharePoint site is that you and your team are *using* it, and a big part of using a site is being able to read it. The following common checkpoints for websites might apply to your site look choices or perhaps your content on the team site pages as well:

- ✓ **Make sure there is a strong contrast between the background colors and the text.** Dark text on a white background is generally considered the easiest to read. The second best is very light text on a very dark background.  
One area of SharePoint that this has been a problem with in the past is the Quick Launch menu or left navigation area, where the contrast between the background and links isn't distinct enough. Be careful with your selections. Even if red and green are holiday colors, red text on a green background isn't very readable.
- ✓ **Choose a font that's simple and easy to read.** No matter that the Chiller font looks cool at Halloween, a whole page of Chiller will have your users running for the door, or at the very least not reading your site.
- ✓ **Use only a few colors.** Even though it seems like the theme palette has a lot of color options, many of them are similar in hue. Using the entire rainbow makes it hard for your users to focus on what's important.
- ✓ **Make link colors obvious.** If the text is black and links are navy blue or brown, it becomes difficult to identify them.
- ✓ **Make the *followed* (or visited) link color different enough from the unvisited link color.** A red hyperlink that changes to maroon when visited may not be enough of a visual cue to users that they've followed that link.



Microsoft took the liberty of helping you choose decent combinations when it created the out-of-the-box looks. Some of the looks are downright scary, though. Don't believe me? Try changing your site to the Sea Monster look and see how your users run away, or maybe run to you, screaming.

## *The benefits of composed looks*

Composed looks are a big step up from previous versions of SharePoint. Composed looks now allow you to change the background image, colors, site layout, and fonts. Best of all, composed looks can dramatically change the look and feel of your site with just a few clicks of the mouse. You don't need to worry about breaking SharePoint by fiddling with a master page.

Whenever a discussion of branding occurs, you should take note to pose a major question. Can you achieve what you need with an out-of-the-box composed look, or do you need to create a completely custom look? If you need a completely custom composed look, then be prepared to bring in web designers and developers. Depending on your needs, a custom look can be a considerable investment and involves creating custom master pages, CSS files, and themes.

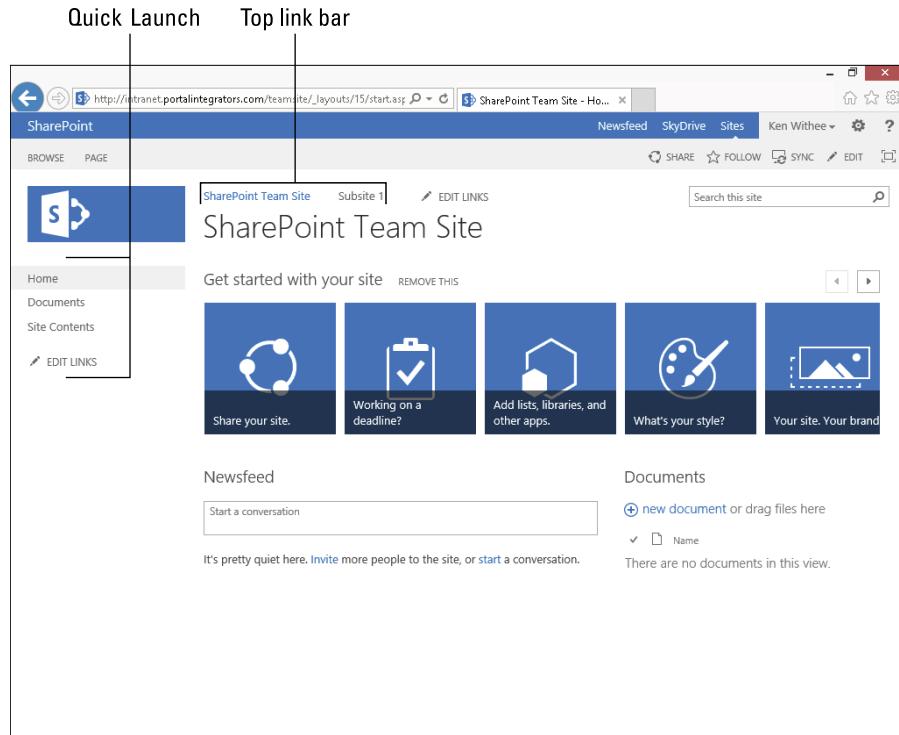
## *Changing Team Site Navigation*

Chapter 11 covers navigation when using a site with the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature enabled. If you don't have this feature enabled, then navigation is much more straightforward. You can add links to the top of the page (called the top link bar) or to the left side of the page (called the Quick Launch).

The top link bar can be used to link all your subsites together. So in other words, every subsite would have the same top link navigation. A common scenario is to put links to each site across the top link bar. This allows users to navigate among subsites with minimal frustration. The Quick Launch is unique to each site. The Quick Launch contains links for apps and pages that live in the current site.

Figure 13-7 shows these navigational elements for a SharePoint team site.

A polished team site may look good, but if people can't find anything, then it isn't very helpful. Lucky for you, most of these navigation settings are easy to change in a team site.



**Figure 13-7:**  
The top  
link bar  
and Quick  
Launch  
navigation  
in a team  
site.



The SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature is activated for a site collection. If you're a site administrator, then it may be out of your hands whether this feature is activated or not. You will know right away if the feature is activated by looking at the links in the Look and Feel section on the Site Settings page. If you see the Navigation link, then the Feature is activated. If instead you see the Quick Launch and Top Link Bar links, then the feature is not active.



All SharePoint 2013 sites have a common set of navigational elements that appear at the top of the site's page. This includes Newsfeed, SkyDrive, and Sites. These links are distinct for each user, and users click them to go to their personal sites. This functionality is covered in Chapter 15.

## Going global with the top link bar

Each team site has its own *top link bar* — a common navigational element used to provide access to resources across all subsites. The top link bar is a series of tab links that run across the top of the page. The links that appear in the top link bar often display the titles of all the subsites. A common source of confusion though is that you can edit these links to point to anything you

want. For example, you might include two links to the two subsites, a link to CNN, and a link to the Documents app in the main site. This might seem like it makes sense, but it will really confuse users. I know it really confused me when I first started with SharePoint!



Rather than randomly adding links across the top link bar, maintain usability by only linking to subsites.

These following steps apply only to team sites. (See Chapter 12 for details on configuring navigation for publishing sites.)

You manage the top link bar with the Top Link Bar settings page. To access the page, follow these steps:

1. **Browse to the site where you want to modify navigation, and then click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings.**

The Site Settings page appears.

2. **In the Look and Feel section, click the Top Link Bar link.**

The Top Link Bar settings page appears. You must be an administrator of the site to edit the top link bar.

3. **Click the New Navigation Link button.**

4. **Enter the web address and name for the link you want to appear on the top link bar in the Web Address and Description text boxes, respectively.**

5. **Click OK.**

The link appears on the top link bar.



The top link bar is also often referred to as the global navigation bar. This is because the top link bar is often used to navigate between different sites and is therefore globally available across all sites in the site collection. Keep in mind that you can modify the top link bar to include any links you want.

To remove or modify an existing tab in the Top Link bar:

1. **Browse to the site where you want to modify navigation, and then click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings.**

The Site Settings page appears.

2. **In the Look and Feel section, click the Top Link Bar link.**

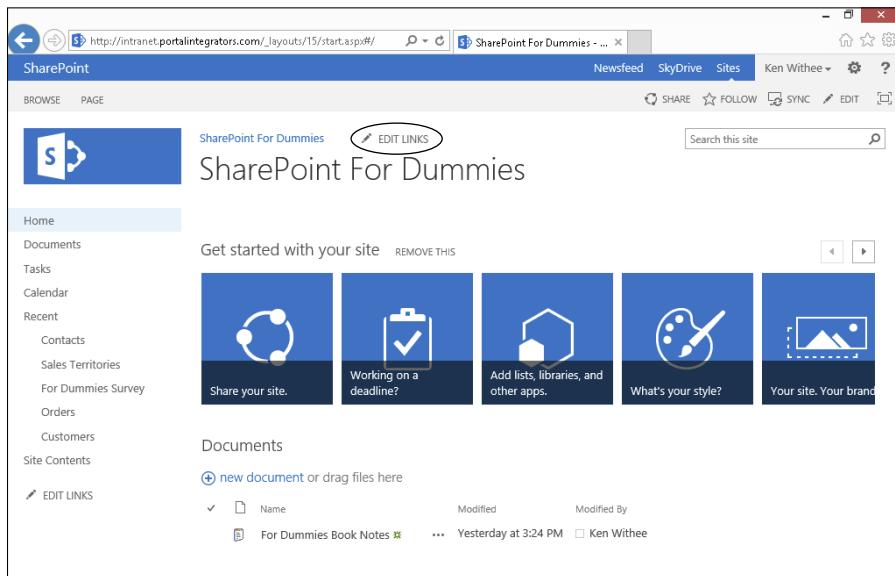
The Top Link Bar settings page appears.

3. **Click the Edit button next to the item you want to modify.**

4. **Edit the entry or click the Delete button to remove the tab altogether.**



As a shortcut to managing the top link bar, you can click the Edit Links button next to the top link bar, as shown in Figure 13-8. You must be on the top-level site collection in order to see the Edit Links button. If you’re on the top level site collection and you still don’t see the Edit Links button next to the top link bar links, then you’re not an administrator of the site.



**Figure 13-8:**  
Edit the top  
link bar with  
the Edit  
Links button.

## Staying local with Quick Launch

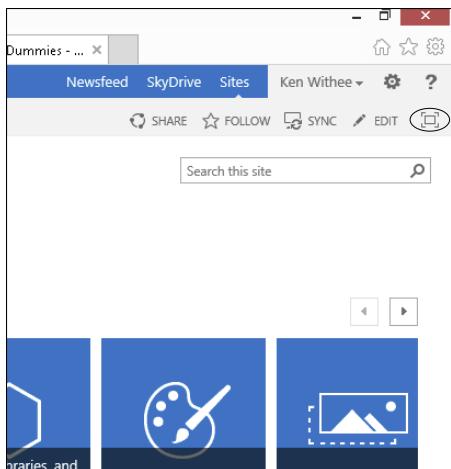
SharePoint team sites display a list of navigation links on the Quick Launch navigation along the left side of the page. The Quick Launch, also known as the Current Navigation, displays links to featured site content such as apps and pages. By default, the team site Quick Launch includes three very important links:

- ✓ **Home:** A link back to the main start page for the team site.
- ✓ **Documents:** A direct link to the Documents app.
- ✓ **Site Contents:** A link to the Site Contents page. The Site Contents page shows all the apps in the site.



The Quick Launch navigation takes up valuable space. Depending on the device you’re using, you might want to hide the Quick Launch while working with an app. You can hide the Quick Launch and take over the entire screen by clicking the Full Page Expansion button in the upper-right corner of the screen, as shown in Figure 13-9.

**Figure 13-9:**  
Expand an  
App to take  
over the  
entire page.



You can manage Quick Launch in the same way you manage the top link bar; however, the Quick Launch doesn't have the capability to inherit from the parent site. Instead, the items that appear in the Quick Launch are determined by the apps you add to the site and the links you manually add to the Quick Launch. Each app contained in a site can display a link to itself on the Quick Launch.

You can easily add or remove an app from the Quick Launch using the app's settings:

**1. Browse to the app you want to add or remove from the Quick Launch.**

For example, click the Documents app on the Site Contents page.

**2. Click the Library tab in the Ribbon and then click Library Settings.**

The Library Settings page appears.

**3. In the General Settings section, click the Title, Description, and Navigation link.**

The General Settings page appears.

**4. In the Navigation section, indicate whether to include the list or library on the Quick Launch by selecting Yes or No.**

**5. Click the Save button.**

The links in the Quick Launch update to reflect your changes.

You also can disable the Quick Launch entirely for a site. You can add a site hierarchy called a *Tree View* to the left navigation panel instead of the Quick Launch. If you leave the Quick Launch enabled, the Tree View appears below the Quick Launch. To perform either of these tasks, follow these steps:

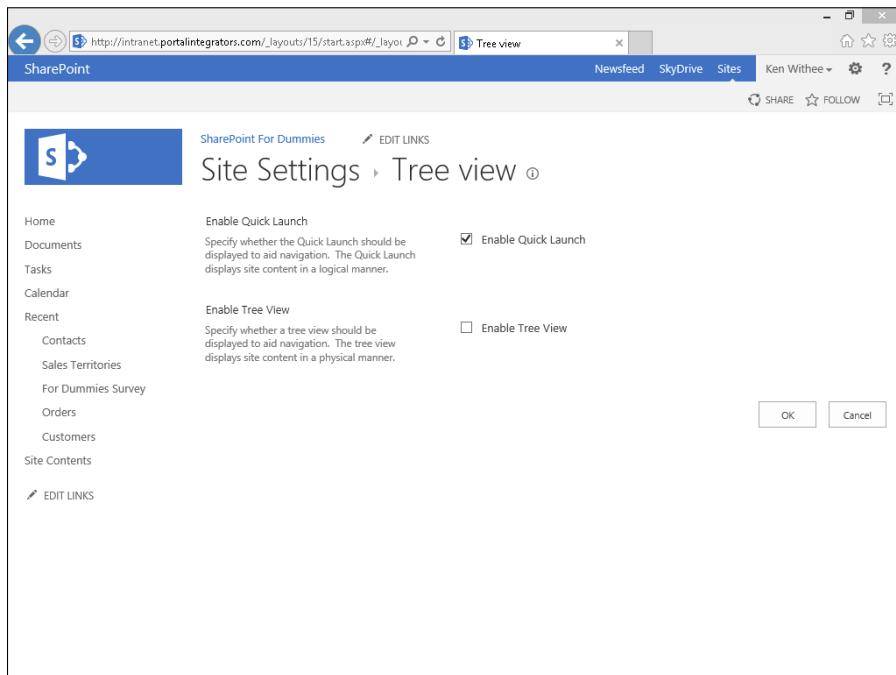
1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings for the site you want to manage.

2. In the Look and Feel section, click the Tree View link.

The Tree View page appears. Figure 13-10 shows the Tree View page.

3. Choose whether to enable the Quick Launch or the Tree View or both by selecting the Enable Quick Launch and/or Enable Tree View check boxes.

4. Click OK.



**Figure 13-10:**  
The Tree View page is used to enable or disable the Quick Launch and the Tree View.



## Chapter 14

# Securing Your SharePoint Site

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Managing groups in SharePoint
- ▶ Handling security for apps, documents, and items
- ▶ Giving access to administrators
- ▶ Checking user permissions

**S**harePoint is a great tool for storing documents and managing calendars and contacts. But how do you know that your information is secure? Although your IT department makes sure that your network and servers are secure, managing the security for your SharePoint content falls on you as the site administrator.

When securing your site, you need to perform three basic tasks. I list them here in the order of the frequency you perform these tasks, from most often to seldom:

- ✓ **Managing SharePoint group membership:** When it comes to that dreaded time to manage SharePoint security, what you really need to be thinking is, “To which SharePoint group do I need to add this person?” If you don’t have an existing group and you find yourself descending into a morass of permission levels, inheritance, and other such incomprehensible stuff, back away from your browser. The reality is that assigning permissions — breaking inheritance and assigning groups — should be a rare event, if done right.
- ✓ **Assigning permissions to sites, apps, or folders:** Deciding which groups get access to what is an important task, and one you only want to think about infrequently — most usually at the time (or ideally before) you create your site. In other words, granting Read Only, Edit, and Delete permissions to the content in your site should be a set-it-and-forget-it task if you make those assignments to SharePoint groups. When these permission assignments are granted to your SharePoint groups, you only have to manage who is in each group.
- ✓ **Managing administrative access:** Even less frequently do you need to grant or revoke administrative access to your site.

In this chapter, I explain these three tasks.

## Using SharePoint Groups

SharePoint uses groups to manage the process of granting someone access to the content in a site. Each *SharePoint group* maps to a set of permissions that define the tasks that a user can perform. Most users fall into one of SharePoint's three default groups:

- ✓ **Site Visitors:** Grants read-only access to the site and allows users to create alerts. Users who need read access to a site but don't need to contribute content are visitors.
- ✓ **Site Members:** Confers the Contribute permission level for users, which allows them to add, edit, and modify items and browse sites. Most end users fall into this category for a site.
- ✓ **Site Owners:** Grants full control. A site owner may or may not use the site on a regular basis, but the site owner can delegate administrative and design tasks to others. Also, a site owner may or may not be a technical person.



Access to your site and its content is managed through *group membership*. Adding and removing users from SharePoint groups is the most efficient way of granting and revoking permissions.

A top-level site has a single set of Site Visitors, Site Members, and Site Owners. The actual names of the groups are determined by the name of the site. For example, if your site is named *Sales*, SharePoint calls your groups Sales Visitors, Sales Members, and Sales Owners.

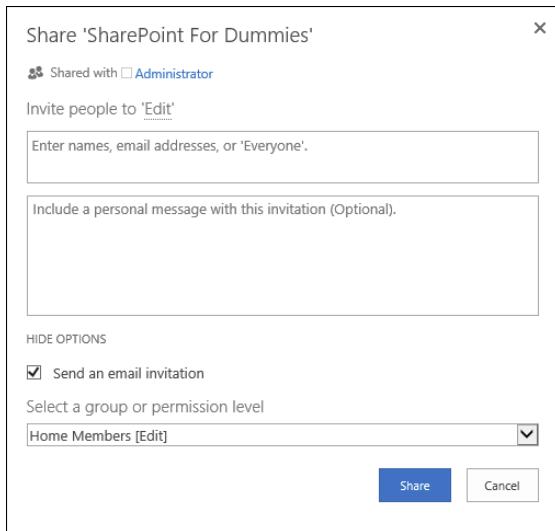
These three groups are created and named when the top-level site is created. All the apps and subsites that are created below the top-level site use these groups and have the same set of people inside the groups. By default, all the content and subsites in your top-level site have the same permissions, dubbed *permissions inheritance*.

### Adding users to a group

For people to access your site, you must share it with them by adding them to one of these default groups. For example, to add users to the *Site Members* group, follow these steps:

1. Log in to the site as a *Site Owner*, and then click the Share button in the upper-right corner of the page.

The Share dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 14-1.



**Figure 14-1:**  
The Share dialog box is used to add users to the site.



Alternatively, you can add users to groups on the Site Settings page by clicking the People and Groups link in the Users and Permissions section.

**2. Enter the names of the users you wish to add to the site.**

You can enter names or e-mail addresses of users that SharePoint can add to the site.

Type the names in the form of domain\account. For example, if your domain name is PORTALINTEGRATORS and the name is Ken Withee, type **PORTALINTEGRATORS\kenwithee**. You can also just type **Ken Withee**, and SharePoint will try to resolve the name to the account.

If you don't know the names of user accounts, you can type the e-mail addresses. SharePoint tries to map the e-mail address for the account. For example, the e-mail address `ken.withee@portalintegrators.com` resolves to `PORTALINTEGRATORS\kenwithee` in my domain. Chances are that you can use the e-mail addresses from your address book in Outlook.

**3. Include a personal message that will be included with the invitation.**

This step is optional. If left blank, users will be e-mailed a generic welcome message.

If you don't see a dialog to enter a personal message, then e-mail has not been configured for the SharePoint environment.

**4. Decide if you want to send the users a welcome e-mail message by selecting or deselecting the Send an E-mail Invitation check box.**

**5. Click Show Options to select the group where you want to add the users.**



By default, the dialog box adds users to the *Site Members* group. Above the text box where you enter the names of the users, you can see it says “Invite People to ‘Edit.’” Edit represents the *Site Members* group. If you change the group to the *Site Visitors* group, the line at the top will change to say “Invite people to ‘Read.’”

**6. Click the Share button to add the users to the SharePoint group and thus share the site with them.**

With Office 365, you have the ability to invite people to use your site who are outside your organization. I discuss using this functionality to create a client extranet in Chapter 23.

## *Understanding the permission structure*

Members in the Site Owners SharePoint Group create the permission structure for a site. The Site Owner should have a pretty good understanding of which users need to access the site and what that access should be. This means that members of IT usually shouldn’t be Site Owners. Instead, you want members of the business departments to take responsibility for site ownership.

Permissions are contained within a site collection. Therefore, all the people, groups, and permission levels defined for a site collection are available to every site and app within the collection. Permissions inheritance is in place by default, so all the content and subsites in SharePoint inherit permissions from their parents.



Web sites, apps, folders, and list items are all securable with permissions in SharePoint.

When a subsite is created, all the content structures within the site inherit permissions from the site collection. For example, when you create a new site using the Team Site template (see Chapter 4), all the apps in the site inherit permissions from the site collection. The default permissions configuration for a site collection is as follows:

- ✓ The Site Owners, Site Visitors, and Site Members groups are created.
- ✓ The primary and secondary site collection administrators are added to the Site Owners group. These administrators are specified when the site collection is created.

The site collection administrator takes responsibility for planning the permissions. If desired, the site collection administrator can delegate the responsibility of implementing the permissions to the Hierarchy Managers group in publishing sites. In team sites, the owner has to create a new permission level that confers the Manage Permissions permission to those individuals and groups assigned to it.

SharePoint also provides the following set of specialized administrative groups for sites based on publishing templates that enable the site's owner to delegate responsibility:

- ✓ **Approvers:** Enables Approve permissions, which allow users to approve items and override document check-outs.
- ✓ **Designers:** Grants permission to change the look and feel of sites with style sheets and themes.
- ✓ **Hierarchy Managers:** Enables Manage Hierarchy permissions, which makes it possible to manipulate the site's hierarchy and customize lists and libraries.

In addition to providing several kinds of administrative roles, SharePoint 2013 provides the following groups for restricting access:

- ✓ **Everyone:** Enables access for every SharePoint user.
- ✓ **Excel Services Viewers:** Enables users to view Excel documents in a page. This is required so that the page they are viewing can read the library app where the Excel document is located.
- ✓ **Quick Deploy Users:** Moves content from one server to another, such as from a staging server to a production server.
- ✓ **Restricted Readers:** Enables users to view only items and pages but doesn't show any item history.
- ✓ **Style Resource Readers:** Enables users to read from the master page gallery and style library.

Figure 14-2 shows common SharePoint groups, their permission levels, and their permissions in a site based on a publishing template.

## ***Securing a site collection***

After you know how to add new users and domain groups to a SharePoint group, finish setting up security for a site collection by doing the following:

### **1. Add user accounts or domain groups to the *Site Visitors* group.**

The *Site Visitors* group has Read permissions, which enables this group to view the site collection's content.

I suggest you add the Authenticated Users domain group to the *Site Visitors* group. This enables all your network users to access your site collection (assuming you want to allow them, of course).

**2. Add user accounts or domain groups to the *Site Members* group.**

Members of the *Site Members* group have Contribute permissions, which allow them to add content to the site collection.

**3. Add users to the **Hierarchy Manager** and **Designers** groups in publishing sites.**

You may want to create a separate permission level for consultants. SharePoint team sites don't have these groups by default, but you can create similar groups if you need that kind of role.

**4. Configure unique permissions for content structures in and below the top-level site.**

You have to stop inheriting permissions from the top-level site before you can create unique permissions for subsites and apps. See the section, "Creating unique permissions for a subsite," later in this chapter, for details.

**5. Add subsites to the main site collection site.**

You can inherit permissions or use unique permissions when you create the site.

The screenshot shows the SharePoint 'People and Groups' page for the 'Sales' site. The URL in the browser is [http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/sites/sales/\\_layouts/15/group](http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/sites/sales/_layouts/15/group). The page title is 'Sales > People and Groups'. On the left, there's a navigation pane with 'Groups' listed under 'Sales'. The 'Sales Members' group is selected. The main content area shows a table of groups with their descriptions and permissions:

Group	Edit	About me	Work email
Approvers		Members of this group can edit and approve pages, list items, and documents.	
Designers		Members of this group can edit lists, document libraries, and pages in the site. Designers can create Master Pages and Page Layouts in the Master Page Gallery and can change the behavior and appearance of each site in the site collection by using master pages and CSS files.	
Everyone		Members of this group can create sites, lists, list items, and documents.	
Hierarchy Managers		Members of this group can create sites, lists, list items, and documents.	
Quick Deploy Users		Members of this group can schedule Quick Deploy jobs.	
Restricted Readers		Members of this group can view pages and documents, but cannot view historical versions or review user rights information.	
Sales Members		Use this group to grant people contribute permissions to the SharePoint site: <a href="#">Sales</a>	
Sales Owners		Use this group to grant people full control permissions to the SharePoint site: <a href="#">Sales</a>	
Sales Visitors		Use this group to grant people read permissions to the SharePoint site: <a href="#">Sales</a>	
Style Resource Readers		Use this group to give read permissions to the Master Page gallery and Style Library, which are required to browse this site. Do not delete this group.	
Translation Managers		Members of this group can translate pages, list items and documents in	

**Figure 14-2:**  
The People  
and Groups  
page for a  
site based  
on the  
Team Site  
template.



Remember that everything *in* the site collection inherits *from* the site collection by default. Make sure your site collection permissions don't grant too many people access.

## *Securing Apps, Folders, Documents, and Items*

In theory, you could set up security once for a site collection and allow everything to inherit. In reality, you may not want everyone to have the same access. In order to create unique permissions for a site, app, folder, or item, you have to stop inheriting permissions from the parent.



### *Creating unique permissions for a subsite*

You must be in a subsite to create unique permissions; the following steps don't make sense otherwise.

To stop inheriting permissions in a subsite from a parent site, follow these steps:

- 1. Browse to the Site Permissions page for a site by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Settings and then clicking the Site Permissions link in the Users and Permissions section.**

The Site Permissions page is displayed with a message reading This website inherits permissions from its parent (Home). If you wish to change permissions for the entire site collection, click the Home link.

- 2. Click the Stop Inheriting Permissions button in the Permissions tab on the Ribbon.**

A message window appears reading, in part, You are about to create unique permissions for this website.

- 3. Click OK.**

The Set Up Groups for this page is displayed. Choose the groups you want to use in the site. By default, the page uses the groups from the site collection.

- 4. If you need your own groups for this site, then you should select the Create New Group radio button.**
- 5. Set groups for Site Visitors, Site Members, and Site Owners by selecting an existing group from the drop-down list.**
- 6. Click OK to create the new unique groups for the site.**

The main home page for the site reloads, and your site now has unique permissions. Repeat Step 1 to return to the Site Permissions page. You see that there is now a This website has unique permissions message. Any permissions changes you make on this site are now unique to this site. No other sites in the site collection will be affected.



Be careful about adding users to SharePoint groups at the site or app level. You're actually adding users to the entire site collection group. Individual subsites and apps don't have their own SharePoint groups. This behavior causes a great deal of confusion. To drive the point home, do the following. When you stop inheriting site permissions and are on the page, to set up groups (Step 4 in the preceding list) choose to create new groups for the site. After you have finished, go to the Site Permissions page for the site collection. You see the groups you created in the site are in the site collection. This is because all groups in SharePoint are located at the site collection level, even if they are only used by a subsite that is set to use unique permissions.

To reinherit permissions from the parent site, choose Inherit Permissions in Step 2. Any changes you've made are discarded, and the site inherits the parent's permissions.



After you stop inheriting permissions, the parent's permissions are copied to the site.



Be extremely careful when deleting groups and permissions! If you are in a site that is inheriting permissions and you delete a group, you are actually taken to the site collection to delete the group. I have seen highly trained IT administrators make this mistake and wipe out the entire permission structure for the entire site collection. Before you delete a group, make certain that your site isn't inheriting permissions and you're not deleting all the permissions at the site collection level by deleting the group at the site level.

## *Removing existing permissions*

Follow these steps to remove existing permission assignments:

1. Browse to the Site Permissions page for a site by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Settings and then clicking the Site Permissions link in the Users and Permissions section.
2. Place check marks next to the permission assignments you want to remove.

Remember to leave yourself with permissions; otherwise, you won't be able to access the site.

3. Click the Remove User Permissions button, and then click OK to confirm the deletions.

All the permissions are deleted for the selected permissions assignments.

## *Creating unique permissions for an app or document*

Allowing a site's content structures to inherit permissions from the site is usually sufficient. Don't try to secure everything individually. But at times, you need to secure a folder in an app or limit access to an app. You may want to delegate ownership of an app, thus pushing administrative responsibilities for the app to an app administrator.



To manage permissions, the user must have the Manage Permissions permission. You must be a member of the Hierarchy Managers group to edit permissions.

To create unique permissions for an app, follow these steps:

1. Browse to the app, click the Library or List tab of the Ribbon, and click the Library or List Settings button in the Settings group.
  2. Click the Permissions for This Document Library link in the Permissions and Management section.
- The Permissions page appears.
3. Manage the permissions as you would for a subsite by breaking inheritance and managing the permissions uniquely for the list.

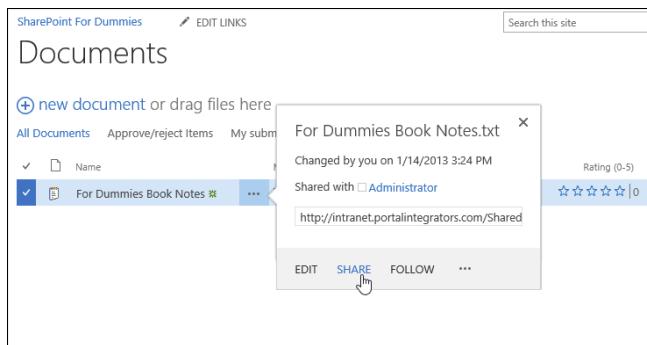
Managing permissions on apps is the same as managing permissions for subsites — see the earlier section, “Creating unique permissions for a subsite.”

Follow these steps to create unique permissions for a document, item, or folder in an app library:

1. Browse to the app where the item, document, or folder is located.
2. Click the ellipsis next to the item and click Share, as shown in Figure 14-3.

The Share dialog box appears.

**Figure 14-3:**  
Click Share  
for a docu-  
ment in a  
library app.



3. Enter the name, e-mail address, or group, and then select the permission you wish to give — Can Edit or Can View.
4. Click the Share button to give permissions.



For an item in a library app, the process is similar. Instead of clicking the ellipsis and selecting Share, you choose Shared With. The resulting dialog box shows you who the item is currently shared with. If you then select Advanced, you are taken to a page similar to the permissions page for a subsite, but that is unique to the item. In this manner, you can set unique permissions for a particular item in a list app.

## Managing permissions scenarios

Managing permissions is tricky, and the steps I outline in this section are my recommendations. These aren't the only ways to manage permissions. Try a scenario to help you better understand permissions. Assume you have a site with the SharePoint groups I outline here.

<b>SharePoint groups</b>	<b>Members</b>
Site Members	John, Bill, and Steve
Site Visitors	Mary, Sue, and Sally

Everything in the site inherits from the top-level site. In this scenario, those in the Site Members group have Contribute permissions, whereas those in the Site Visitors group have Read permissions.

Assume you create a new subsite, and you only want your Site Members to access it. You don't want Site Visitors to even know the subsite exists. In this case, you create unique permissions on the subsite and remove the Site Visitors group.

Assume you have an app for policy documents, and you want John and Sally to have Contribute permissions. I recommend creating a new Policy Reviewers SharePoint group at your top-level site and then adding John and Sally as members to the group. You aren't done here, however. You haven't actually granted the group permission to anything yet. You have to browse to the app, break inheritance from its parent, and then grant the Policy Reviewers SharePoint group the Contribute permission level.

Why not just add John and Sally to the app and grant them the Contribute permission level? That approach will certainly work, but it's hard to manage. That approach obscures that John and Sally have some permissions granted outside the context of a SharePoint group. I like to be able to look at my SharePoint groups and have a good idea of what the role of that group is, based on their names on the site. If you start adding users individually to subsites, apps, documents, folders, and items, it becomes difficult to get a big-picture view of how your permissions for the site are configured.

## ***Viewing a group's permissions***

You can easily check the permissions for a given group to see everything that group has been granted access to in your site. You must repeat these steps at each site in your site collection. To do so:

- 1. Browse to the top-level site in your site collection.**
- 2. Open the People and Groups page for the top-level site by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Settings, and then clicking the People and Groups link in the Users and Permissions section.**

The list of SharePoint groups appears on the Quick Launch.

- 3. The list of groups is truncated. Click the More button at the bottom of the listing of groups in the Quick Launch.**

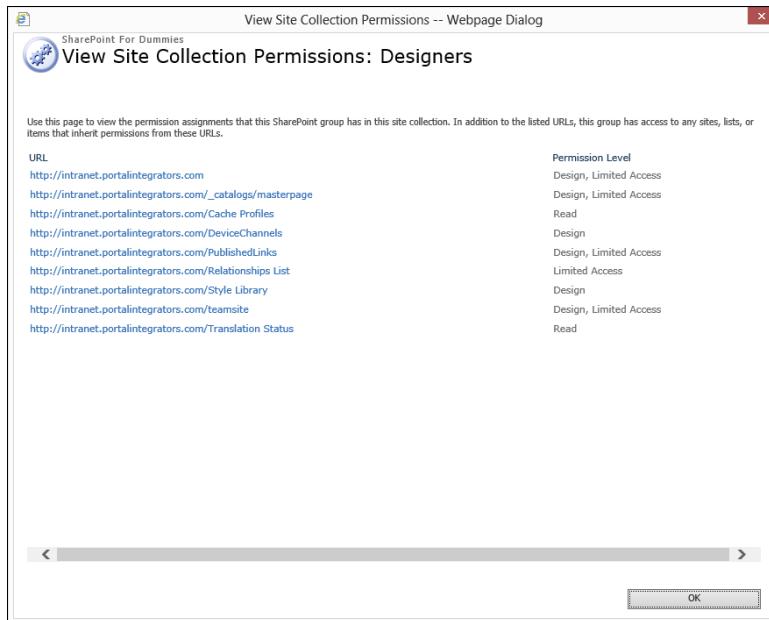
The list of all SharePoint groups in the site collection appears in the main part of the page.

- 4. Click the name of the group for which you want to view permissions.**
- 5. Choose Settings→View Group Permissions.**

The View Site Collection Permissions window appears, as shown in Figure 14-4. All the sites, lists, and libraries that the group has permission to access appear in the list.

Everyone who is a member of the group has the permissions shown on the View Site Collection Permissions window.





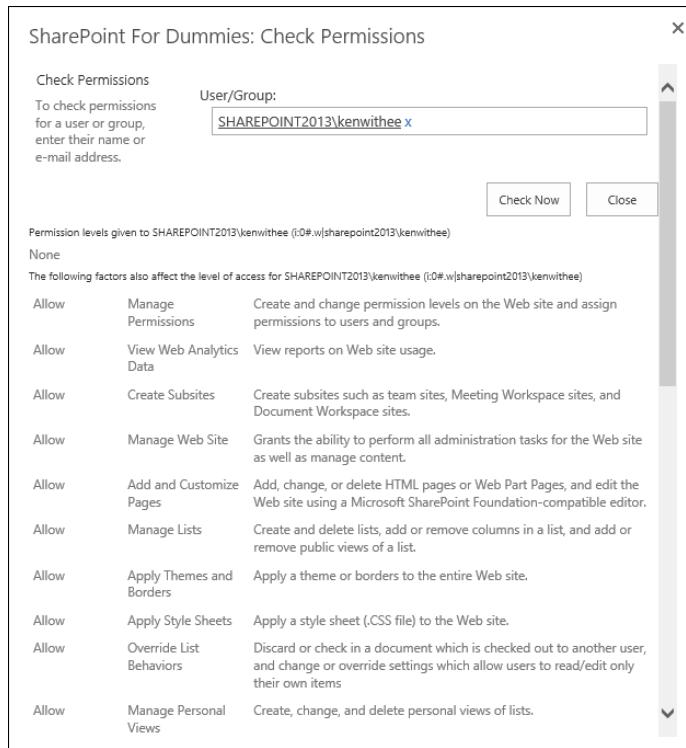
**Figure 14-4:**  
The View  
Site  
Collection  
Permissions  
window.

## *Checking a user's permissions*

Sometimes, you just want to know who has permission to do what in a given site. SharePoint 2013 provides just such a method:

- 1. Browse to the site where you want to check a user's permissions.**  
This command only checks permissions within a single site. You have to check each site manually.
- 2. Browse to the Site Permissions page for a site by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Settings, and then clicking the Site Permissions link in the Users and Permissions section.**
- 3. Click the Check Permissions button on the Ribbon.**
- 4. Enter the name of the user or group whose permissions you want to check for the current site in the User/Group field, and then click the Check Now button.**

The permissions appear in the bottom of the window, as shown in Figure 14-5.



**Figure 14-5:**  
View a  
user's  
permissions  
to the  
current site.

## Putting it all together

I often encourage site owners to create their own SharePoint groups instead of using the built-in Visitors and Members. There's something about naming your own groups that makes managing them more intuitive (maybe because you don't refer to your coworkers as *members*).

By creating your own groups, you can very easily add a new employee to a particular group when someone asks, "Hey, can you add

the new guy to the Accounting Clerks group in the team site?" Because you've already assigned proper permissions to the Accounting Clerks group throughout your site, the new guy is guaranteed to have all the access he needs. When the not-so-new guy gets promoted a year later, you can change his membership to the Accounting Supervisors group and get back to important stuff.

## Granting Administrative Access

You'll find a number of different administrator levels in a SharePoint deployment. Administrators usually have full access over the domain they've been charged with administering. The levels of administrators in SharePoint are

- ✓ **Server administrators:** By virtue of having local administrator access to the physical server, a server administrator can do anything from the server console. Server administrators are usually members of the technical staff.
- ✓ **Service administrators:** Administration of SharePoint's services, such as Search or User Profiles, can be delegated. This allows administrators to specialize.
- ✓ **Site collection administrators:** These administrators can access everything within a site collection. SharePoint allows you to appoint a primary and secondary administrator for each site collection, who both receive e-mail notifications when the site hits its storage quota or is slated for deletion due to lack of use. Site collection administrators also manage all the features that affect the entire site collection.
- ✓ **Site administrators:** Members of the *Site Owners* SharePoint group are the site administrators. If subsites inherit permissions, a site administrator has full access to each site.
- ✓ **App administrators:** Permissions can be unique for an app, which allows for the delegation administration. Depending on the size of your department or team, you might have different people administer different apps.
- ✓ **Document/item administrators:** For extremely sensitive documents and items, you can use unique permissions that in effect enable someone to administer just that document or item.

In Office 365, the server administrator role is replaced by the SharePoint Online administrator. Microsoft Online manages the entire infrastructure for you, so you just have to manage SharePoint Online.

The primary and secondary site collection administrators are determined at the time the site collection is created. Additional site collection administrators can be added to the site collection itself.

To set the site collection administrators for a site:

1. **Browse to the top-level site in your site collection.**
2. **Open the Site Collection Administrators page by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Settings, and then clicking the Site Collection Administrators link in the Users and Permissions section.**

The Site Collection Administrators page appears.

3. Add or remove users from the Site Collection Administrators box by typing in their names or deleting their names using the backspace key, and then click OK.

Users are separated by semicolons.



Assigning users to be site collection administrators is one time when it's acceptable to use individual user accounts instead of domain groups.

## Viewing Site Permissions

A site can have all the elements of an *authorization model* — people, groups, and permissions, in other words — but still not be secure. The deciding factor in securing SharePoint's content lies with the permission assignments made on securable objects such as sites, apps, folders, documents, and items. A permission assignment consists of permissions, *principals* (users and groups), and securable objects.

Permissions are the smallest unit for managing security in SharePoint. Permissions confer rights a user may have, such as View Pages rights or Add Items rights. In SharePoint, you deal with following three permission types:

- ✓ **App (List or Library):** Permissions related to accessing apps, folders, documents, and items.
- ✓ **Site:** Permissions related to accessing sites, pages, and permissions.
- ✓ **Personal:** Permissions related to creating personal views of web pages.

When managed properly, you never have to work with permissions on a case-by-case basis because permissions are never assigned directly to principals. Rather, they're assigned to *permission levels*, which are assigned to default SharePoint groups. You can also assign permission levels directly to user accounts or custom SharePoint groups you create.

Follow these steps to view a list of permission levels for a site:

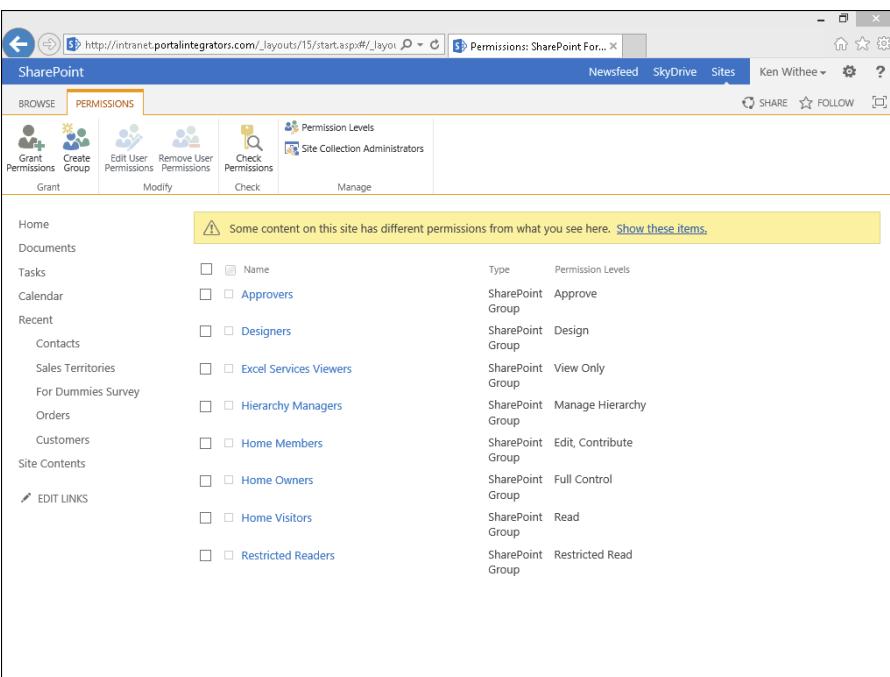
1. Browse to the Site Permissions page for a site by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Settings, and then clicking the Site Permissions link in the Users and Permissions section.

A list of groups and their corresponding permission levels appears, as shown in Figure 14-6.

If you've assigned permission levels to user accounts or domain group accounts outside SharePoint groups, you see them listed here.

Each site inherits its site permission assignments from its parent site or has its own unique permission assignments.





The screenshot shows the SharePoint Permissions page. At the top, there are tabs for 'BROWSE' and 'PERMISSIONS'. Below the tabs are four buttons: 'Grant Permissions' (with 'Grant' and 'Check' sub-options), 'Create Group' (with 'Modify' and 'Check' sub-options), 'Edit User Permissions' (with 'Check' and 'Manage' sub-options), and 'Remove User Permissions' (with 'Check' and 'Manage' sub-options). To the right of these buttons are 'Permission Levels' and 'Site Collection Administrators' buttons. The main content area displays a table of permission assignments:

	Type	Permission Levels
<input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Name	SharePoint Group	Approve
<input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Approvers	SharePoint Group	Design
<input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Designers	SharePoint Group	View Only
<input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Excel Services Viewers	SharePoint Group	Manage Hierarchy
<input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hierarchy Managers	SharePoint Group	Edit, Contribute
<input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Home Members	SharePoint Group	Full Control
<input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Home Owners	SharePoint Group	Read
<input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Home Visitors	SharePoint Group	Restricted Read
<input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Restricted Readers	SharePoint Group	

A yellow banner at the top of the content area says: '⚠ Some content on this site has different permissions from what you see here. [Show these items.](#)'

**Figure 14-6:**  
View the  
site's  
permission  
assignments.

## 2. Click the Permission Levels button on the Ribbon.

The Permission Levels page appears. You can use this page to create new permission levels or modify existing ones.

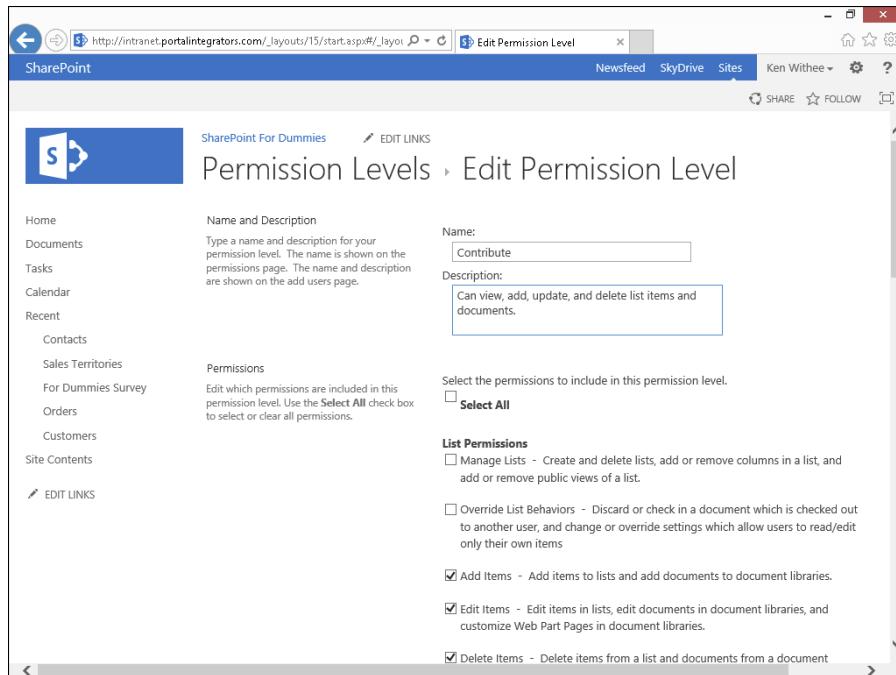
## 3. Click a permission level, such as Contribute, to view or modify the permissions in the permission level, as shown in Figure 14-7.

**Note:** The permissions you see might not be the entire set of permissions available in SharePoint. The server administrator can limit the list of permissions available to a web application using Web Policies.



Keep in mind that the Permissions Levels page doesn't really show individual permissions. Instead, the page shows permission levels.

Table 14-1 lists the permission levels, the rights they grant, and the SharePoint group they're assigned to by default.



**Figure 14-7:**  
View  
permission  
levels.

**Table 14-1** **Permission Levels**

<b>Permission Level</b>	<b>Rights Granted</b>	<b>SharePoint Group Assigned to by Default</b>
Full Control	Wield administrative access	Site Owners
Design	Change the site's look and feel	Designers
Edit	Add, edit, and delete apps as well as the items and documents contained within the apps	Site Members
Contribute	Add and modify content	Site Members
Read	View all content, including history	Site Visitors
Limited Access	Open (same as guest access)	Quick Deploy Users
View Only	View items and pages	Viewers
Approve	Approve content	Approvers

(continued)

**Table 14-1 (continued)**

<b>Permission Level</b>	<b>Rights Granted</b>	<b>SharePoint Group Assigned to by Default</b>
Manage Hierarchy	Manage the site's structure and permissions (this is only available in the site collection when the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature is active)	Hierarchy Managers
Restricted Read	View and open	Restricted Readers
Restricted Interfaces for Translation	Open apps and use remote interfaces	Restricted Interfaces for Translation

## Managing SharePoint Designer Access

SharePoint 2013 allows you to configure which users can use SharePoint Designer 2013 to access your site. Before you jump to the conclusion that you don't want anyone doing that, bear in mind that the role of SharePoint Designer has changed with SharePoint 2013. SharePoint Designer is the primary tool used for developing workflow. Workflow has a number of powerful abilities that maximizes processes.

To grant a user the right to use SharePoint Designer 2013 with your site:

- 1. Browse to the top-level site of your team site, click the Settings gear icon, and choose Site Settings, and then click the SharePoint Designer Settings link in the Site Collection Administration section.**
- 2. Select the options that you want to enable:**
  - *Enable SharePoint Designer:*** Users who are *Site Owners* or who have Design permissions can use SharePoint Designer to access your site.
  - *Enable Detaching Pages from the Site Definition:*** I advise against allowing this unless you have a good reason to do so. Detaching pages can cause problems when upgrading later. I do this all the time when I'm developing, but then I implement my changes later in such a way that doesn't require detaching from the site definition.
  - *Enable Customizing Master Pages and Page Layouts:*** This is fine for publishing sites, although not usually required for team sites.
  - *Enable Managing of the Web Site URL Structure:*** This allows users to see the folder hierarchy. I usually allow this unless I think it will overwhelm the user.
- 3. Click OK to save your changes.**

# Part IV

# Getting Social and Going Mobile

The screenshot shows a SharePoint blog page titled "For Dummies Blog". The page includes a sidebar with categories like "Events", "Ideas", "Opinions", and "ADD CATEGORY". It also shows a post by Ken Withee from January 16, 2013, with a camera icon and a note about not updating the profile picture. Navigation links at the bottom include "RSS FEED" and "ALERT ME".

http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/blog/\_layouts/15/start.aspx#/

Home - For Dummies Blog

SharePoint

BROWSE PAGE

Newsfeed SkyDrive Sites Ken Withee ?

SHARE FOLLOW

Search this site

Home

For Dummies Blog

Welcome to my blog!

Wednesday, January 16, 2013

This is where I'll be sharing my thoughts on topics that matter to me. Who knows... I might even share pictures, videos and links to other interesting stuff.

If I catch your interest, let me hear from you.

by Ken Withee at 4:27 AM

0 comments | Like Email a link ...

Blog tools

Create a post

Manage posts

Manage comments

Manage categories

Launch blogging app

Change post layout:

Basic

No, this isn't actually my picture. I just haven't gotten around to updating this section. It's good to know that someone is reading every last word though. Thanks!

RSS FEED

ALERT ME



Visit [www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013](http://www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013) for great Dummies content online.

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Explore your personal site, use newsfeeds, sync documents with SkyDrive, and update your personal profile.
- ✓ Discover the SharePoint social networking tools that enable you to communicate, collaborate, tag, share, and connect with your coworkers.
- ✓ Create views for mobile devices, push content to mobile devices, and retrieve Office documents on your mobile device.

## **Chapter 15**

---

# **Taking Control of Your Personal Profile and Content**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Understanding your personal hubs
  - ▶ Wrangling digital content with SkyDrive
  - ▶ Keeping track of your favorite sites
  - ▶ Creating and maintaining a blog
  - ▶ Customizing your SharePoint profile
- 

**T**hroughout this book, you can read about SharePoint sites and how they can be used with teams and organizations. SharePoint also provides individualized benefits designed specifically for you. In particular, you can customize your own individual site, called My Site, and configure your personal profile.

In this chapter, you explore how your personal site works. You find out about the different hubs for your My Site and how these hubs show up as tabs at the top of your browser window. You discover how to aggregate news with the Newsfeed tab, sync and organize documents with the SkyDrive tab, and add and follow specific sites with the Sites tab. Finally, you explore and set up your personal profile.

## ***Finding Your My Site Hubs and Profile***

Your My Site manifests itself as three unique hubs. This is a break from the way previous versions of SharePoint approached your personal My Site. When My Sites is set up in your SharePoint environment, you have access to your Newsfeed tab, SkyDrive tab, and Sites tab. Each tab is called a *hub* because it's organized functionally.

The Newsfeed tab includes an aggregation of news about you and others that you want to follow. The SkyDrive tab is where you store and organize your documents. And the Sites tab lets you create and follow sites throughout your SharePoint environment.

The tabs appear at the top of your browser window, as shown in Figure 15-1.

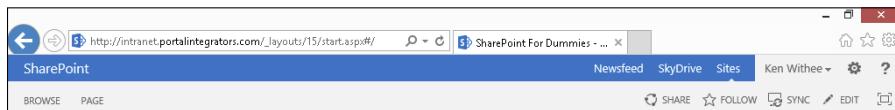
In addition to your My Site, you can also configure your personal profile. Your personal profile includes the usual boring data such as your name, phone number, department, title, and manager. In addition, you can upload your picture and enter information about yourself, such as things people should ask you about, your past projects, skills, schools you attended, your birthday, and your interests. Finally, your profile is where you set up your specific Newsfeed hub configuration settings and your language and region information.

---

**Figure 15-1:**

The Newsfeed, SkyDrive, and Sites tabs provide hubs into your personal My Site.

---

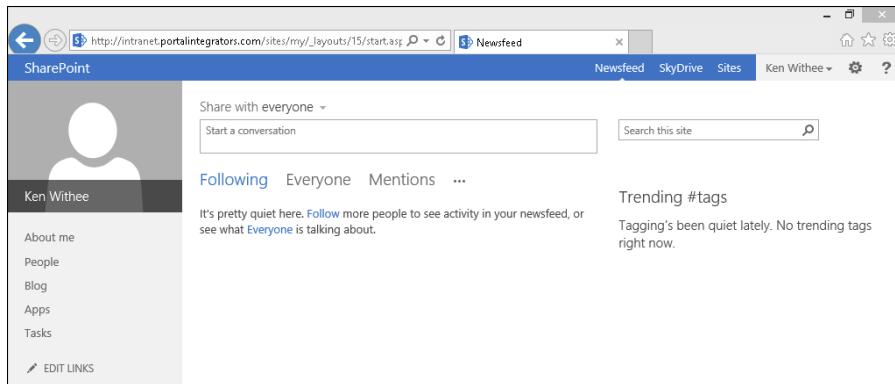


## Aggregating SharePoint Activity with Your Newsfeed

Your Newsfeed hub is an aggregation of SharePoint activity such as news, mentions, and likes. When you click the Newsfeed tab, you're presented with a dashboard of your relationships and connections throughout the organization. In addition, you can see which hashtags are trending and how many people, documents, sites, and tags you are following. The Newsfeed dashboard is shown in Figure 15-2.



A *hashtag* is a way to track a theme throughout multiple conversations. A hashtag is the hash symbol (#) followed by a word or phrase without spaces. For example, you might use the hashtag #companypicnic2013. All postings that use this hashtag will be grouped together. You can see the most popular, or trending, hashtags on the Newsfeed landing page in the Trending #tags section.

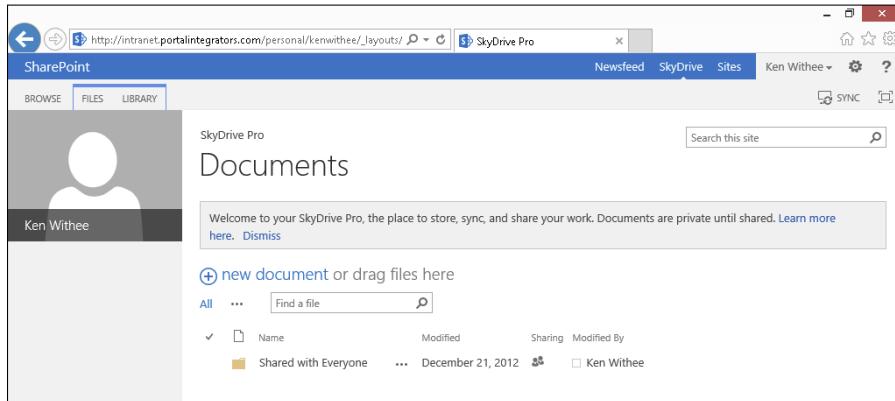


**Figure 15-2:**  
The  
Newsfeed  
landing  
page.

From the Newsfeed landing page, you can post a status update with everyone or with specific sites for which you have permissions. As people see your post, they can like it or reply to continue the conversation. You see these replies on your Newsfeed page and can thus stay interconnected with your organization in one place without clicking around through each site of every team.

## Saving Stuff with SkyDrive

The SkyDrive hub is designed as a place to store, organize, and share your personal documents. For example, you might have a carpool list that you're working on or a potluck spreadsheet. You might also be working on business documents that don't really fit into any specific app in SharePoint. Your personal SkyDrive is the catch-all place you can store it. The SkyDrive landing page is shown in Figure 15-3.



**Figure 15-3:**  
Your  
personal  
SkyDrive  
hub.

Think of your SkyDrive as your personal Documents folder on your computer. The difference is that your personal Documents folder on your computer is only on that single computer. If you're using a different computer, you can't access those documents. In addition, if your computer crashes and you have not backed up your Documents folder, then those files are lost. SkyDrive is designed to be a secure and safe place to store all your documents. What if your device crashes or is stolen? With your documents stored in SkyDrive, you just log in again from a different device and continue working on your documents.



Your SkyDrive files are only secure and backed up if your IT team sets up the infrastructure that way. If you're using SharePoint Online, then you can be assured that Microsoft is doing this for you. If your local IT team is running SharePoint for you, then check with them to make sure they back up and secure your SkyDrive documents.

Your SkyDrive is designed to live in the cloud and be accessible by any device you happen to be working on. For example, you might start a document at work and then have to stop working on it when you leave to pick up your kids. When you get home, you might log in and continue working on the document. Then you might have to take your mother-in-law to the doctor, so you take your tablet with you. You log in from your tablet while waiting in the doctor's office. When you drop off your mother-in-law, you remember you have to run to the grocery store; while there, you get an e-mail on your smartphone asking about a detail in the document you have been working on. You connect to your SkyDrive on your smartphone and view the document so you can respond to the inquiry. Being this connected isn't always the best way to spend your off time, but SkyDrive enables you to decide when and where you want to work. The idea behind SkyDrive is that when you need your documents, you can access them as long as you can connect to the Internet.



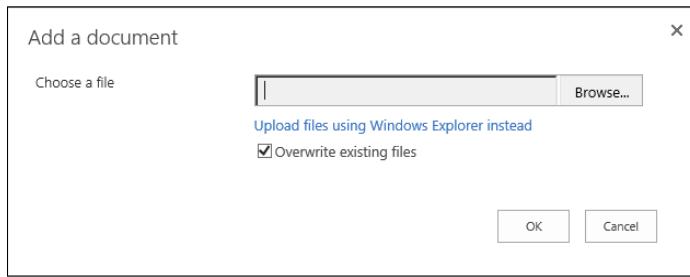
The SkyDrive discussed in this chapter is called SkyDrive Pro, and it is designed for organizations and integrated with SharePoint. A consumer version of SkyDrive is also available at <https://skydrive.live.com>. Best of all, the consumer version is free! When using the consumer version, your files are stored in the cloud on Microsoft servers. The consumer version of SkyDrive is similar to other cloud storage services such as Dropbox and Google Drive.

## *Adding documents to your SkyDrive*

When you first land on your SkyDrive page, you are presented with a notice letting you know that SkyDrive Pro is a place to store, sync, and share your documents. You can add documents to SkyDrive by following these steps:

1. Navigate to your SkyDrive page by clicking SkyDrive at the top of the SharePoint window.
2. Click the New Document link at the top of the page.
3. Browse to the document you want to add to SkyDrive and click OK to add the file, as shown in Figure 15-4.

You can choose to overwrite the document if a document with the same name already exists. If versioning is turned on, a new version of the document will be created and the existing document will be the previous version. If versioning is turned off, then overwriting will result in the loss of the existing document with the same name.



**Figure 15-4:**  
Adding documents  
to SkyDrive.

## *Following a document from another site*

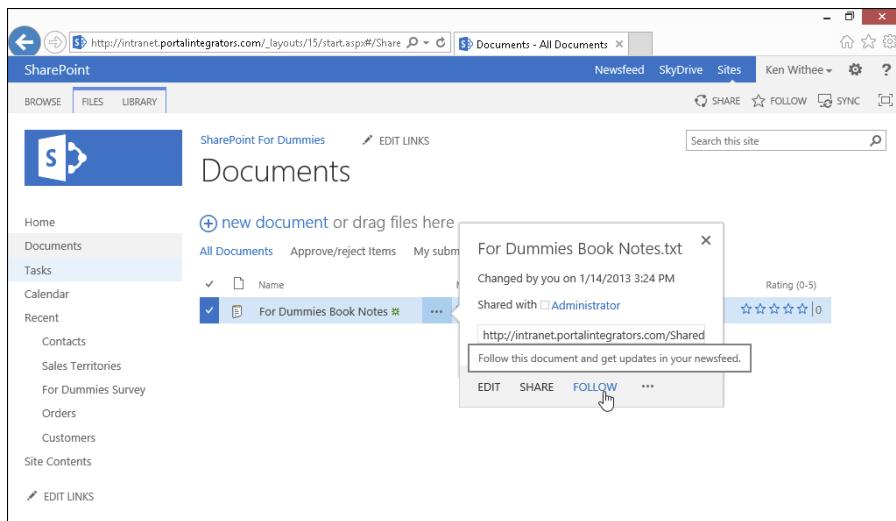
A modern organization generates an unbelievable amount of digital content. The sheer number of digital documents can be beyond comprehension. SharePoint is a product that was developed from the beginning to help manage digital content. As each team begins using SharePoint, it can become burdensome to navigate to each site and monitor each document. You might get carpal tunnel from so much clicking! The SkyDrive site aggregates all the documents that you are following into a single dashboard.

To follow a document and add it to your SkyDrive dashboard, follow these steps:

1. Browse to the app that contains the document you want to follow.
2. Click the ellipsis next to the document and click Follow, as shown in Figure 15-5.

A dialog box pops up in the upper-right corner of the screen letting you know you are now following the document.

**Figure 15-5:**  
Following  
a docu-  
ment in a  
SharePoint  
site.



3. Navigate to your Sites page by clicking SkyDrive at the top of the SharePoint window.
4. Click Followed Documents in the left navigation area to see the document you just followed.

The documents you follow are displayed along with the web address of the document. Below the web address is a link you can click to stop following the document.

## Tracking Your Favorite Sites

The number of sites being used throughout your organization can be overwhelming. You might be a user on sites for sales, human resources, various departments, carpools, child care, product development, and so on. As SharePoint gains momentum, the number of sites you might participate in will grow quickly. To help you keep track of your sites, the Sites tab aggregates all the sites you follow, as shown in Figure 15-6. In addition, the Sites tab allows you to create new sites and even suggests sites that you might be interested in following based on the sites you currently follow. In other words, the Sites tab is a one-stop sites shop and a sites dashboard.



To follow a site, click the Follow button in the upper-right corner of the site. If the Follow button isn't present, then the Following Content feature has not been activated for the site. After the Following Content feature has been activated, the Follow functionality is enabled for the site.

The screenshot shows the SharePoint landing page for the 'Sites' tab. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Newsfeed', 'SkyDrive', 'Sites', and a user profile for 'Ken Withee'. Below the navigation is a search bar labeled 'Search this site'. To the left, there's a sidebar with a placeholder profile picture for 'Ken Withee' and sections for 'Followed Sites' and 'Sites I'm following'. Under 'Followed Sites', it lists 'Subsite 1' and 'MyPubSubSite'. Under 'Sites I'm following', it lists 'SharePoint Team Site' and 'Subsite1'. Each listing includes a link, a stop following button, and a 'Suggested sites to follow' section.

**Figure 15-6:**  
The landing  
page for the  
Sites tab.

There comes a time when you might want to put together your own site for a particular reason. The reason might not warrant requesting a new site or adding a site to an existing department or group site. SharePoint provides the capability to create your own personal site. For example, you might create a site for everyone carpooling from your neighborhood.

You can create your own personal sites by following these steps:

1. **Navigate to the Sites dashboard by clicking the Sites tab at the top of SharePoint.**

Your Sites dashboard is displayed.

2. **Click the New Site button in the top-left corner of the page.**

A dialog box pops up, asking for a name for the site and the location where you would like to save the site.



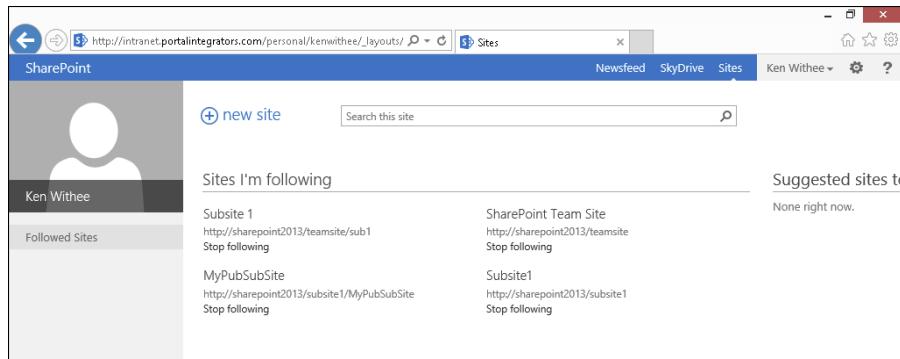
You might notice that Figure 15-6 does not contain the New Site button and Figure 15-7 does include the button. These figures illustrate the point that the SharePoint user interface adds or removes components based on a number of different criteria. For example, in the case of the New Site button, your SharePoint farm administrator needs to configure Self Service Site Creation (SSSC) for the My Site host in order for the New Site button to appear.

3. **Enter a name for the new site and select the location from the URL drop-down list, as shown in Figure 15-7.**

4. **Click Create to create the site.**

The new site is displayed.

**Figure 15-7:**  
The Start a  
New Site  
dialog box.



## Reaching Out with a Blog

You can share information within your company in many ways. You can send an e-mail, publish a document to your portal, or maybe go real old-school and leave a hard copy on everyone's desk.

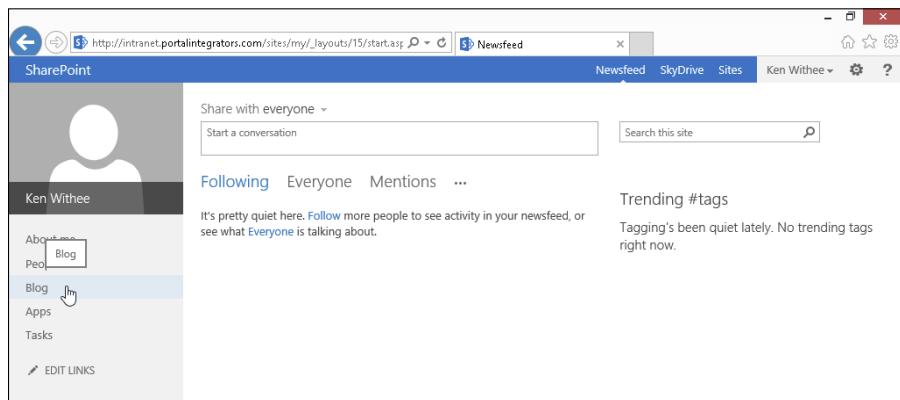
But nothing really compares to a good blog. It's a bit like reading a book with really short chapters. As shown in Figure 15-8, your Newsfeed has a link to your own personal blog. Clicking that link actually does just that — it creates your very own blog site with an entry that lets everyone know to stay tuned to hear from you.



Your blog is provisioned when you first click the Blog link on your Newsfeed page. The direct URL to your blog is configured based on how the My Sites functionality was set up in SharePoint. An example is

`http://portalintegrators.com/my/personal/kenwithee/Blog/`

**Figure 15-8:**  
The link to  
your blog  
site.



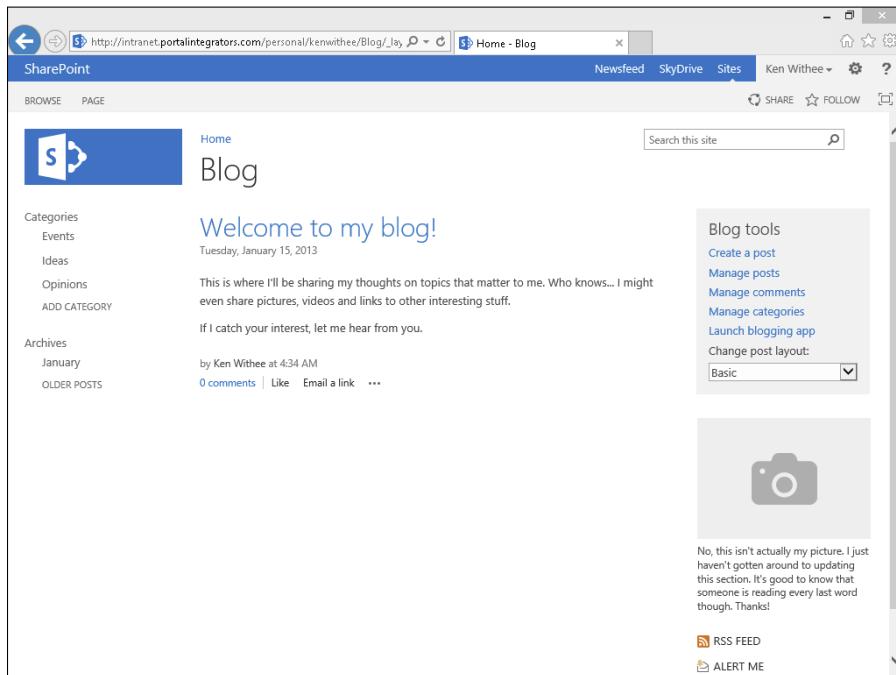
Your blog posts show up on your Newsfeed and the Newsfeed of anyone following you.

As shown in Figure 15-9, your blog site contains some useful links. Notice that you see Categories on the left side and a link to add a new category. You also see an Archives section that shows you past months. This makes it easy for readers of your blog to navigate through and find topics of interest.

On the right side, you have links to the blog tools. Here you can create, edit, and delete posts and manage comments that people make on your blog.

So what is so special about a blog? Nothing, really, except for the content you create in it. Blogging is not for everyone, but if you feel like sharing your thoughts with your colleagues, and you know that you can post at least a few times a month, your blog might be compelling to your coworkers.

Writing in your blog is a great way to communicate what you're working on, your ideas about the latest company initiative, or what's going on in your life that you think others may find interesting. The topic of your blog can be about a single thing or can range from the Amazon to Zambia. It doesn't really matter (unless you start violating some company blogging policies), but what matters to your readers is that you create posts that are interesting to read and you're updating your blog on a somewhat regular basis.



**Figure 15-9:**  
A  
SharePoint  
blog site.

## *Expressing Yourself with Your Profile*

People are central to any business, no matter how big or small. Without people, also known as employees, a business wouldn't run. How people interact with each other creates the culture of a business, and part of that culture is how people figure out who does what job, who knows who, who knows what, and how someone might be able to help you do your job better. That culture, to some extent, can be reflected in SharePoint user profiles, and the better the user profile, the more likely you're going to get your job done more effectively. And, the more likely others are going to be able to find you easily when they need to.

### *Creating a holistic profile experience*

The first part of creating your profile is to take a look at what properties are there by default. Many of the basic properties come from Active Directory (AD), but depending on how SharePoint was set up, you could also see information from other systems as well. The AD properties that typically show up in user profiles include your name, title, department, manager, and some contact information such as your work phone.

You can update other properties on your profile page, such as About Me, your picture, your location, your home phone, your skills, interests, and projects you've worked on in the past. All this extra information creates a much better sense of who you are than just the basic information about who you work for and where you are.

These properties can be edited by clicking your name in the upper-right corner of the screen and selecting About Me. When you're on your profile page, click the Edit Your Profile link to add in your information.



After browsing around your profile and the different sections of it, you may think of properties in the Outlook address book that should be in SharePoint profiles. Ask your SharePoint administrator to get those properties into SharePoint. This task is done in SharePoint Central Administration.

### *Filling in your profile information*

It seems like practically everyone in the world is familiar with and probably uses social networking sites such as Facebook and Twitter, and Microsoft has taken some cues to extend that social networking functionality into SharePoint 2013. It all starts with sharing some information about yourself so that other people in your organization can find you and read a little about you. That's where the basic profile information comes into play.

Along with the really basic information that comes from Active Directory (AD), you also see About Me, Picture, and Ask Me About fields when editing your profile, as shown in Figure 15-10. These items are shared with everyone, unlike some of the extra information I cover next.



The information you share in the About Me and Ask Me About fields should be what you want people to know about you as it relates to what you do at your company. There's really no need to share your love of pet rats (unless your business caters to owners of pet rats). Rather, share a little bit about where you came from, what you like to work on, and when you started at the company — keep it simple and useful for others.

In the Ask Me About section, put in what you're really good at, work-wise, and things that people might want to know more about you if they knew you had the same interests or a particular knowledge of something they need to know more about. But again, keep it business-related, because this information is shared with everyone.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Details' page for a user named Ken Withee. The page has a navigation bar with links for Newsfeed, SkyDrive, Sites, and a user dropdown. Below the navigation is a search bar. The main content area is titled 'Edit Details' and contains tabs for 'Basic Information', 'Contact Information', 'Details', and '...'. Under the 'Basic Information' tab, there are fields for 'Name' (Ken Withee) and 'About me' (with a placeholder for a personal description). There is also a 'Picture' field with a placeholder image and a 'Upload picture' button. Under the 'Ask Me About' field, there is a placeholder for topics of expertise. At the bottom right are 'Save all and close' and 'Cancel and go back' buttons.

**Figure 15-10:**  
Editing  
basic profile  
information.

For your picture, I recommend one of you in business attire rather than the one of you sunburned and on the beach. Remember, the picture you share here shows up in SharePoint, attached to documents you've created, or when you show up in search results. A picture is really helpful, for example, if you work in a large organization, and even a small- to medium-sized organization where people don't work in the same location. Maybe all the employees of your company are so distributed that they don't all get together but once every year or two, so being able to place a face with a name can help bridge that gap of unfamiliarity. (I've been in many situations where the voice doesn't go at all with the eventual face when I met them in person — a profile picture helps to alleviate some of that awkwardness.)



For administrators and managers, remember that if one person in the organization updates their profile, it's a start but it's really not that useful. But if everyone does, it becomes a great place to get to know who you work with, what motivates people, and what they're good at. Your challenge is to come up with a contest or some type of incentive program for getting employees to fill out their profiles.

Filling in the rest of your profile is up to you. One of the cool features of the Contact Information, Details, Newsfeed Settings, and Language and Region sections of your profile is that you can choose who you share that information with. You can choose to share it with everyone or keep it to yourself.

# **Chapter 16**

---

# **Getting Social**

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Using the Ribbon to share and track sites
  - ▶ Tagging in SharePoint
  - ▶ Talking on blogs, wikis, and discussion boards
  - ▶ Getting familiar with feeds
  - ▶ Subscribing and managing alerts
  - ▶ Using Lync to reach out and connect
- 

**T**he folks at Microsoft got to thinking about how SharePoint is a lot like social networking communities on the web. *Social networking* services build online communities of people who share interests and/or activities and consist of services and sites such as instant messaging (IM), discussion boards, blogs, wikis, bookmarking sites, Facebook, MySpace, Flickr, Twitter, and so on (and on).

Some people use them all. I just can't. And neither should you feel like you have to use all the social networking options in SharePoint. Focus on picking the right tool(s) for you and your team. You can still be cool (and productive) using just a few. There are good and specific reasons for using discussion boards, blogs, and wikis, and even more reasons for using alerts, feeds, and tagging. And SharePoint even has a What's Happening feature similar to the on-the-fly updates of Twitter.

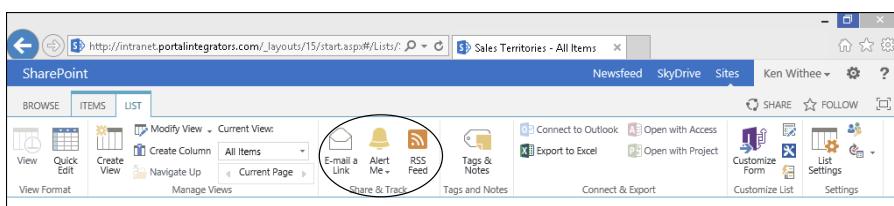
SharePoint offers other social networking features that all site visitors can use and some features (such as wikis and discussion boards) that a site owner must set up for a team to use. SharePoint also offers social networking features with My Site.

In this chapter, I discuss social networking tools that let individuals and groups communicate, collaborate, tag, share, and connect. Depending on the culture of your organization and the projects you work on, these tools may find greater or lesser use; I encourage you to experiment with them all. Organizations generally experience some anxiety and growing pains around the less structured communications that social networking facilitates, but after a period of adjustment, I often find that those who were initially most reluctant become social networking advocates as they discover the value these tools can bring to productivity, collaboration, and morale.

## Sharing and Tracking Using the Ribbon

The Ribbon in SharePoint 2013 features a Share & Track group that consolidates several common tasks for keeping track of useful SharePoint resources and sharing them with others. Figure 16-1 shows the Share & Track group.

**Figure 16-1:**  
The Share &  
Track sec-  
tion of the  
SharePoint  
Ribbon.



Share & Track has three buttons:

- ✓ **E-Mail a Link** uses Outlook to send a link to a page to someone else.
- ✓ **Alert Me** allows you to set and manage your alerts to apps so that an e-mail is sent to you when changes are made.
- ✓ **RSS Feed** enables you to subscribe to an RSS feed. Each app in SharePoint 2013 publishes an RSS feed that you can subscribe to and view in your favorite RSS viewer.

## Tagging for Yourself and Others

Tags are keywords that you assign to content. Tagging pages to share with others is *social bookmarking*, and it's very popular on the web. If you've ever used a site like Delicious (<http://delicious.com>), you already know how social bookmarking works.

### "My" stuff

SharePoint has a lot of "My" things. Previous versions of SharePoint included My Site. The contents of your personal My Site, as well as new social tagging functions, have been consolidated in SharePoint 2013 into hubs made up

of tabs at the top of the screen. The hubs that make up your personal site include Newsfeed, SkyDrive, Sites, and your About Me personal profile. To find out more about your My Site hubs, see Chapter 15.

As more people assign the same tags, tags become a way to navigate to similar content. The Tags and Notes group on the Ribbon lets you type your own tag keywords, so you can mark content with terms that are meaningful to you. This button also lets you access the *Note Board*, which you can use to leave publicly viewable comments on a document or page.



The emphasis is on *keyword* in tagging. SharePoint doesn't prevent you from typing longer tags, but I recommend you use, and train others to use, single words or very short phrases as tags. Otherwise, you defeat the purpose in using tagging as a fast, concise way to categorize information. If you need to make longer remarks, use the Note Board.

To tag content in SharePoint, follow these steps:

**1. Browse to the page you want to tag.**

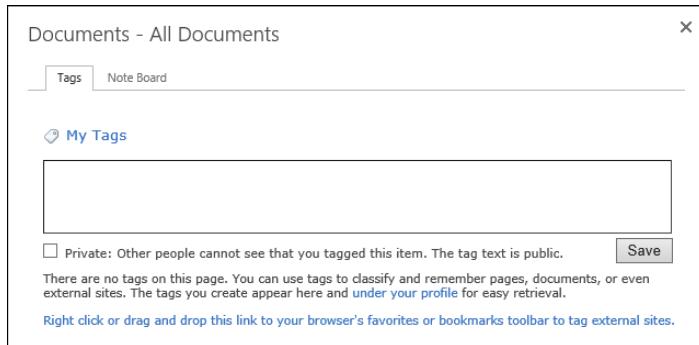
To tag individual items or documents, you must browse to the app and click the row you want to tag. The Tags and Notes for individual items or documents is on the Items tab of the Ribbon.

**2. Locate the Tags and Notes group on the List or Library tab of the Ribbon to see your tagging options.**

**3. Click the Tags and Notes button.**

The Tags and Note Board window appears, as shown in Figure 16-2, populated with recent tags you've applied.

**Figure 16-2:**  
The Tags  
and Note  
Board win-  
dow.



**4. In the My Tags text area, click an existing tag and/or type the tags you want to apply to the content.**

Use a semicolon to separate tags.

**5. (Optional) To mark your tags as private so others can't see them, select the Private check box.**

**6. Click the Save button to save your tags.**

When you save your tags, they appear in the Suggested Tags section of the page. You can click any of the tags in this section to view the Tags Profile page.

To add a note to an item, follow these steps:

**1. Click the Note Board tab and type your note in the text box.**

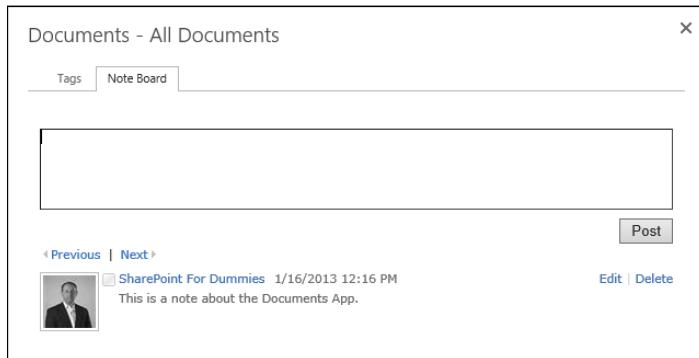
Unlike tags, notes entered with the Note Board can't be marked private and so are viewable by anyone else with the same access. Choose your words carefully.

**2. Click the Post button to post the note.**

The note appears in the window, along with any other notes that have been entered. You can scroll through all the posts entered for this content using the Next and Previous buttons, as shown in Figure 16-3.

**3. To close the window, click the X in the upper-right corner of the window.**

**Figure 16-3:**  
Scroll  
through  
notes.



## Information Sharing with Blogs and Wikis

*Blogs* are intended to be mainly one-way communication: An individual or group with an opinion or expertise creates posts that others read and subscribe to. Readers can comment, like, and e-mail a link to the post, but the blog posts themselves aren't collaborative. You often see executives in an organization maintaining blogs to communicate to employees, or IT departments creating a blog with helpful posts that address FAQs.

*Wikis*, on the other hand, are specifically collaborative efforts: information is added to, and maintained by, a network of users. Perhaps the most well-known wiki is *Wikipedia* ([www.wikipedia.org](http://www.wikipedia.org)), a web encyclopedia of

information about any topic imaginable, editable by anyone in the Wikipedia community. A wiki is a very flexible and democratic way for individuals to work together to share, refine, and collect information.



Good candidates for wikis include corporate encyclopedias, dictionaries, and training manuals so that many individuals can add their knowledge and examples.

## *Creating a blog site*



To create a blog in SharePoint, you create a new site or subsite. Take the time to consider where this blog will be located in your site hierarchy.

Every My Site has an integrated blog for every SharePoint user. You access the blog in the left navigation of the Newsfeed hub.

Although you can change permissions at any level, it may make more sense to have your president's blog on the main site of your SharePoint intranet (and open to all users of the site hierarchy), but perhaps your manager's blog should be created as a subsite of your team site (so that permissions can be inherited from the team site). See Figure 16-4 for an example of a blog site.

The screenshot shows a SharePoint blog site titled "For Dummies Blog". The top navigation bar includes links for SharePoint, Newsfeed, SkyDrive, Sites, and Ken Withee. The left sidebar features categories like Events, Ideas, Opinions, and ADD CATEGORY, along with Archives for January and Older Posts. The main content area displays a blog post titled "Welcome to my blog!" posted on Wednesday, January 16, 2013. The post content reads: "This is where I'll be sharing my thoughts on topics that matter to me. Who knows... I might even share pictures, videos and links to other interesting stuff. If I catch your interest, let me hear from you." It was written by Ken Withee at 4:27 AM. Below the post are links for 0 comments, Like, Email a link, and three dots. To the right of the post is a "Blog tools" sidebar with options for Create a post, Manage posts, Manage comments, Manage categories, Launch blogging app, and Change post layout (set to Basic). A placeholder image for a profile picture is shown with a caption: "No, this isn't actually my picture. I just haven't gotten around to updating this section. It's good to know that someone is reading every last word though. Thanks!" At the bottom right are links for RSS FEED and ALERT ME.

**Figure 16-4:**  
A  
SharePoint  
blog site.

To create a blog site:

1. **Navigate to the Site Contents page by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Contents.**

The Site Contents page appears, showing all the apps in the site.

2. **Scroll down to the bottom of the page to the Subsites section and click New Subsite.**

3. **Type a name, description, and a URL for the site in the Name, Description, and URL text boxes, respectively.**

4. **In the Template Selection section, choose the Blog template located under the Collaboration tab.**

Notice that there are different site templates to choose from. In Chapter 4, you used the Team Site template to create a team site.

5. **Keep the default to use the same permissions as the parent site.**

You can also choose unique permissions if you want to break the inheritance of permissions for the blog site. (To find out more about permissions and inheritance, see Chapter 14.)

6. **In the Navigation Inheritance section, you can choose to use the same top link bar from the parent site or use a unique top link bar.**

If you use the same top link bar of the parent, then you can navigate back to the parent site from within the blog. If you do not use the same top link bar, then the blog will appear isolated. You can always manually add navigation to the top link bar as well. (See Chapter 11 for more about SharePoint navigation.)

7. **Click the Create button.**

You see a message that SharePoint is working, and then your new blog appears.

8. **Click the Create a Post button (under Blog Tools on the right side) to add a new entry to your blog.**

The home page of the blog site shows a Welcome to Your Blog default post, a list of Blog tools for posting, a place for your picture, and RSS Feed and Alert Me buttons.

The site content includes a Photos app, Categories app, Posts app, and Comments app.

## *Posting to a blog*

Creating a blog post, commenting on a post, and liking a post are pretty straightforward. A user with permissions to post can click the Create a Post

link under Blog Tools and type his post (or copy and paste text from a text editor or Word). The dialog box where the post is typed also allows for adding one or more category labels to the posts.

Comments and likes (if any) are displayed below the blog post to which they apply. The Comments link and the Add Comment field allow users to comment on a post by titling their comment (optional) and adding body text. The Comments link also shows the current number of comments. The Like button creates a smiley face and shows the number of likes, along with an Unlike button if you change your mind. You can also click the E-mail a Link to send a link to the post, or you can click the ellipsis to edit the post (assuming you're the author).

Other features of the Blog Site template are predefined links on the Quick Launch menu for post categories and archives, making it easy to see a filtered list of posts in one category or review older archived posts.

## ***Using wikis to collaborate and coauthor***

A *wiki* app is a library of pages that can be edited by any member (Contributor) of your site. As I describe earlier, encyclopedias, dictionaries, and training manuals are all good examples of wikis for an organization. These examples are entities that provide structure to what is being accomplished but benefit by input of a group.

One of the marketing mantras of SharePoint 2013 is *wikis everywhere*. A SharePoint 2013 team site is essentially a wiki with the capabilities to add additional kinds of apps. SharePoint 2013 includes the Enterprise Wiki site template, which is intended for collaborative content creation among larger groups of people, such as a division. The steps discussed in this section apply to wikis anywhere — that is, it doesn't matter where you encounter wikis in SharePoint.

### ***Creating a wiki app***

A wiki app in SharePoint is a library of wiki pages. Create the wiki the way you would any other app, which I describe in Chapter 7, by selecting Wiki Page Library app.

### ***Adding pages to a wiki***

Two pages are created by default in your new wiki app, Home and How to Use This Wiki Library. Both provide predefined instructions that may be helpful when you first create the wiki. Most users change the home page content before launching the wiki, but you can keep the How to Use This Wiki Library page or delete it, depending on its usefulness.

To add other pages to your wiki, follow these steps:

1. **Navigate to the home page of the wiki app by using the link on the Quick Launch menu, if available.**

You can also navigate to the Site Contents page and open the app.

2. **Click the Page tab of the Ribbon and click the View All Pages button located in the Page Library section.**

You see the list of pages.

The Files and Library tabs appear on the Ribbon.

3. **Click the Files tab and click the New Document button.**

The Add a Page dialog box appears.

4. **Type your new page name in the New Page Name text box, and then click the Create button.**

The new page appears, ready for editing. Just click in the page, and then the Format Text tab appears.

You can now edit the page, or repeat the steps to create multiple pages before editing.

Alternatively, you can click the Settings gear icon and choose Add a Page from an existing wiki page to add a new page to the same wiki library.



Another easy way to create pages is to create a link to them first in a wiki page and then click that link. The new page is created automatically with the name found in the link. For example, type **[[My New Page]]** to create a link to the My New Page page. The link to an uncreated page appears underlined with dashes. If users click the link, the page is created for editing and the link turns into a normal hyperlink. To create a link to a page and have the name be different than the wording of the link, type a pipe character (|) after the page name and type the display text. For example, type **[[Resources|Resources for You]]** to create the Resources link that points to the Resources for You page.

### ***Editing a wiki page***

When you first create a wiki page, the page appears in Edit mode, as shown in Figure 16-5. When you want to come back to a wiki page and edit later, follow these steps:

1. **Access the page from the Quick Launch menu or Wiki Library Page list.**
2. **Click the Page tab of the Ribbon and click the Edit button located in the Edit section.**

The screenshot shows a SharePoint page titled "SharePoint For Dummies - ...". The ribbon is visible at the top with tabs for BROWSE, PAGE, FORMAT TEXT (which is selected), and INSERT. The main content area is a large text editor with a toolbar above it. The toolbar includes buttons for Save, Check Out, Paste, Undo, Bold (B), Italic (I), Underline (U), Superscript (X<sup>2</sup>), Subscript (A<sub>2</sub>), Font Size (13px), Paragraph styles (Body, AaBbCcDd, AaBb, Heading 1), Alignment, and Layout. The layout section has a dropdown menu for "Text Layout". On the left side, there's a navigation pane with links like Home, Documents, Tasks, Calendar, Recent, Contacts, Sales Territories, For Dummies Survey, Orders, Customers, Site Contents, and EDIT LINKS.

**Figure 16-5:**  
A wiki  
page in  
Edit mode.



Like other documents, check out the page if you don't want others to be able to edit at the same time and perhaps overwrite your work. See Chapter 18 for details.

Editing a wiki page is similar to working in a word processor. You can type or copy text, indent, make bullets, apply bold and italics, and insert all other types of content such as tables and images. To stop editing, click the Save button on the Format Text tab of the Ribbon. You need to check in your wiki as a separate step if you checked it out.

You can also define your text layout. By default, text layout is one column (full page width), but you can change the layout by choosing one you like from the Text Layout drop-down list on the Format Text tab. (**Note:** You must be in Edit mode to see the Format Text tab.) Now you may have multiple text containers to work with.



You can switch layouts at any point. But be careful — if you switch to a layout with fewer containers than your current layout, SharePoint combines content in one container with content in another. You won't lose the content, but you'll probably have to make some edits to fix the combined content.



Changing the text layout of a wiki page isn't the same as changing the layout on a Web Part page or the page layout on a publishing page. Wiki pages, Web Part pages, and publishing pages all behave slightly different and have different purposes. See Chapter 5 for a more thorough discussion on SharePoint's web pages. By the way, if you can articulate the differences among these three kinds of SharePoint pages, consider a career as a SharePoint consultant.

## Communicating with Discussion Boards

*Discussion boards*, along with alerts, are the granddaddies of social networking services. Discussion boards have been around since before the World Wide Web and consist of text postings by individuals with others posting replies to the original subject or to other replies. A discussion board post and the responses to it are one *thread*.

One of the benefits of a discussion board (versus a long e-mail chain, and you know what I'm talking about) is the ability to find and search posts easily for information. Threads provide a useful history of the comments on a topic. Users generally have various levels of expertise in organizing and searching their e-mail, but SharePoint discussion views and search make it easy for users to both find and read posts.



One of the benefits of a team discussion board is (should be) the less formal approach in posting questions and answers — a discussion board exchange resembles a true discussion. Blogs and wikis are more formal, so discussion boards are generally where team members can ask questions and share thoughts. SharePoint 2013 also introduces the new approach of *microblogging*, which is blogging in just a couple of sentences at a time. Microblogging is discussed later in the chapter in the "Staying connected with feeds and microblogs" section.

### Creating a Discussion Board app

Adding a Discussion Board app is a very straightforward process. You simply choose the Discussion Board app from the Apps You Can Add page.

You can add as many discussion boards to your site as you like. You might find it beneficial to create a discussion board for each functional area to keep the discussions on topic. On the other hand, you might find that it is better to just have a single discussion board for the team and to get people using it and interacting with their ideas. As with most things in SharePoint, the way

you work with the functionality is up to you. SharePoint just provides the platform, and it's up to you and your SharePoint consultant to determine the best way to use it.

To create a new Discussion Board app, follow these steps:

- 1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Add an App.**
- The Your Apps page appears.
- 2. Scroll down and click the Discussion Board App button.**
- 3. Type a name for the discussion board in the Name text box.**
- 4. Click the Create button.**

The new discussion board is added to your site and is accessible in the Quick Launch navigation on the left side. Congratulations! You're ready to start a discussion.

## *Posting and replying to a subject*

To create a new subject in a discussion board, follow these steps:

- 1. Browse to your discussion board.**
- 2. Click the New Discussion button.**
- The New Discussion dialog box appears.
- 3. Type a subject for the new discussion in the Subject text box.**

This needs to be a short phrase that teammates can relate to as a topic.

- 4. Type the detail of your post in the Body text area.**

You have all the editing options of Rich HTML in this area. Use the Editing tools to format your text with the toolbar and styles, as well as insert tables, images, and links. You can upload files using the Insert tab.

You also have spell checker in this dialog box!

- 5. Select the Question check box if you're asking a question.**
- 6. When you're finished with your post, click the Save button.**

Your new post appears and shows the subject title, who created it, the amount of replies, and when it was updated last.

The Discussion Board app shows a number of different views into the discussions: Recent, Unanswered Questions, Answered Questions, and Featured.

To reply to a subject or another reply, follow these steps:

**1. Click the *Subject Title* link for the discussion.**

The subject appears in Flat view with a Reply button. If you're the owner of the discussion posting, you also see an Edit button. You can also click the ellipsis to be alerted to additional replies, mark the discussion as Featured, or delete the discussion.

**2. Click the Reply button or click in the Add a Reply text box.**

The Reply dialog box activates, and you can type your reply. By default, the Reply dialog box shows only a Body field.

**3. Type your reply; if desired, use the Rich HTML features (as I describe in the preceding step list).**

Remember that you can attach files, upload files, and add all sorts of text formatting.

**4. When you're finished with your reply, click the Reply button.**

## *Connecting with Others Using Feeds, Microblogs, and RSS*

You can follow SharePoint feeds on the Newsfeed tab for your My Site. A *feed* is a stream of content that you follow. For example, whenever a user posts a status update on her My Site page, she generates an item for the Everyone feed. You can also tune in to specific sites and documents by clicking the Follow button. The Follow button is in the upper-right corner of a site and in the drop-down list when you click the ellipsis next to a document.

The Newsfeed page includes the following feeds:

- ✓ **Following:** The updates of documents, sites, and people you follow.
- ✓ **Everyone:** All the updates from every person using SharePoint.
- ✓ **Activities:** All your activities within SharePoint.
- ✓ **Likes:** All the things you have liked. As the community rates content by clicking the Like button, you can begin to find the best content without having to go looking in every nook and corner.
- ✓ **Mentions:** All the posts where you were mentioned. Mentions are accomplished using the @ symbol and your username.

A different type of feed is called an RSS feed. An *RSS feed* is a feed formatted in a special way to be read by an RSS reader. As you can explore later in the “Viewing RSS feeds” section, every app has the ability to display its data using an RSS feed.



A feed on the Newsfeed tab and an RSS feed are different. Both are feeds of data, but an RSS feed is designed for external applications to view SharePoint data, and the Newsfeed is a place for you to aggregate and view communication happening within SharePoint.

## *Staying connected with feeds and microblogs*

Microblogging was made famous by Twitter. Using Twitter, you post a short message (140 characters or less) out to the world. You can follow other people and attract your own followers. You mention other people using the @ symbol followed by their name and can tag a topic using the # symbol (called a hashtag).

SharePoint 2013 brings microblogging to the corporate world. Twitter is great, but do you really want to post your company secrets and ideas to the world? SharePoint provides the same functionality as Twitter, but in a controlled environment that is only accessible by other SharePoint users at your organization.

In SharePoint, you post microblog updates from your Newsfeed page. To post a microblog update, follow these steps:

- 1. Navigate to your Newsfeed page by clicking the Newsfeed tab at the top of the screen.**

The Newsfeed page is displayed. If you do not see the Newsfeed tab, then My Sites has not been configured for your SharePoint environment.

- 2. Click in the Start a Conversation text box, and type your message.**

If you want to mention someone, type the @ symbol and choose the person from the drop-down list. If you want to provide a hashtag topic, type the # symbol followed by a topic name (without spaces).

- 3. At the top of the message box, click the drop-down list to decide who you want to share the message with.**

By default, a message is shared with everyone. You can select the drop-down list and choose to share the message with a particular site.

- 4. Click the Post button to publish your message.**

You can see trending hashtag topics in the lower-right corner of your Newsfeed page. A *trending topic* is the most popular hashtag at the time. For example, if a bunch of people use the tag #CompanyMovieNight, then the tag will show up in the trending list. You can click the tag to see the related posts for that topic. You can also choose to follow the tag so that you will be updated whenever someone makes a new post about the topic. (The Newsfeed page is discussed further in Chapter 15.)

## *Viewing RSS feeds*

Nowadays, virtually all web sites publish a syndication feed, or *RSS feed*, of their site's content. SharePoint 2013 sites are no different. In fact, every app in SharePoint can publish an RSS feed. You can even create RSS feeds based on views, which means you can filter what gets published to the RSS feed. If you subscribe to the feed, you're *pulling* the information. However, you can also subscribe to alerts to make SharePoint *push* updates to you.

RSS feeds are a popular way for people to keep track of updates to a web site without visiting that site.

To use RSS feeds, they must be enabled for the app. If you see the standard RSS button in the app's Ribbon, RSS feeds are enabled. If RSS feeds are disabled, the button appears in the Ribbon but is disabled, as shown Figure 16-6.

**Figure 16-6:**  
The  
disabled  
RSS Feed  
button.



To enable RSS feeds for your app, follow these steps:

1. In your app, click the List tab of the Ribbon, and in the Settings group, click the List Settings button.

The List Settings page appears.

If you're in a Library app, click the Library tab of the Ribbon and click the Library Settings button.

2. In the Communications section, click the RSS Settings link.

If you don't see the RSS Settings link, RSS isn't enabled for your site. You can enable RSS settings for your site by clicking the RSS link in the Site Administration section of the Site Settings page. RSS must also be enabled for your web application by the SharePoint farm administrator.

**3. On the Modify RSS Settings page, select the Yes radio button under the Allow RSS for This List option.**

You can also use this page to configure the settings for the app's default RSS feed, such as the feed's title, columns, and item limit.

**4. After you finish configuring the default settings for your app's RSS feed, click OK to save your changes.**



Each list and app has its own RSS feed. Therefore, you must configure RSS for each app where you want to use RSS.

After you enable RSS feeds for your app, you can view the RSS feed as follows:

**1. Browse to the app where you want to view the RSS feed, click the List tab of the Ribbon, and click RSS Feed button on the Share & Track section.**

Most browsers display the RSS feed using a built-in style sheet for formatting. Figure 16-7 shows an RSS feed for a SharePoint Tasks list in Internet Explorer.

**2. Subscribe to the feed using your browser as a reader or paste the web address for the feed in the feed reader of your choice (see the section, "Reading RSS feeds with Outlook," later in this chapter, for instructions).**

The screenshot shows an Internet Explorer window displaying an RSS feed. The URL in the address bar is [http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/\\_layouts/15/listfeed.aspx?L=0&ListId=...](http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/_layouts/15/listfeed.aspx?L=0&ListId=...). The title of the page is "RSS FEED for SharePoint For Dummies: Contacts". The content area displays a table of contents with several items, all of which link to the same "Supetran" contact entry. Below the table of contents, there is a detailed view of the "Supetran" contact, showing fields for First Name (Beth), Company (Portal Integrators), and Notes (Created at Tue, 15 Jan 2013 00:55:59 GMT by Ken Withee). A link to "Read the full item" is also present. The browser interface includes standard navigation buttons (Back, Forward, Stop, Home) and a search/address bar.

**Figure 16-7:**  
Viewing an  
RSS feed in  
the browser.

You can also view the RSS feed for a specific view in an app. (See Chapter 9 for details on creating a view.)



RSS must be enabled for the farm, site, and app. In other words, you can't use RSS feeds if they aren't turned on. You can also turn off RSS feeds for a given app or site if you don't want people to use them. The default option is to allow RSS feeds. At the site level, RSS feeds are enabled in the Site Settings page. The RSS settings for an individual app are managed in the List Settings or Library Settings page for that app, respectively.

## *Reading RSS feeds with Outlook*

Your e-mail application, and specifically in terms of SharePoint integration, Microsoft Outlook, is still the bedrock of online communication for most business users. As in the past, you can still integrate Outlook with SharePoint calendars, contacts, and tasks using the Sync with Outlook button in the Ribbon of an app. You might prefer following a SharePoint app using RSS.

To add a SharePoint 2013 RSS feed to Outlook 2013, follow these steps:

- 1. On the Ribbon, click File, then Info, and then click Account Settings.**
- 2. On the RSS Feeds tab, click New.**

The New RSS Feed dialog box appears.

- 3. Type the URL of the RSS feed (or press Ctrl+V to paste it).**

You get the SharePoint app's RSS feed URL by clicking the RSS Feed button in the Ribbon of your app.

- 4. Click the Add button.**

The feed is added to the list of subscribed feeds on the RSS Feeds tab.

## *Displaying RSS feeds of other sites*

SharePoint 2013 includes an RSS Viewer Web Part that allows you to display RSS feeds from SharePoint apps and public websites in your site. To use this Web Part, follow these steps:

- 1. Browse to the page where you want to add the RSS feed, click the Page tab of the Ribbon, and then click the Edit Page button.**

The page is in Edit mode.

**2. Click Add a Web Part in the layout zone in the page where you want the Web Part to appear.**

The Insert tab appears on the Ribbon.

**3. In the Categories section of the Insert tab, click the Content Rollup category.**

A list of Web Parts appears.

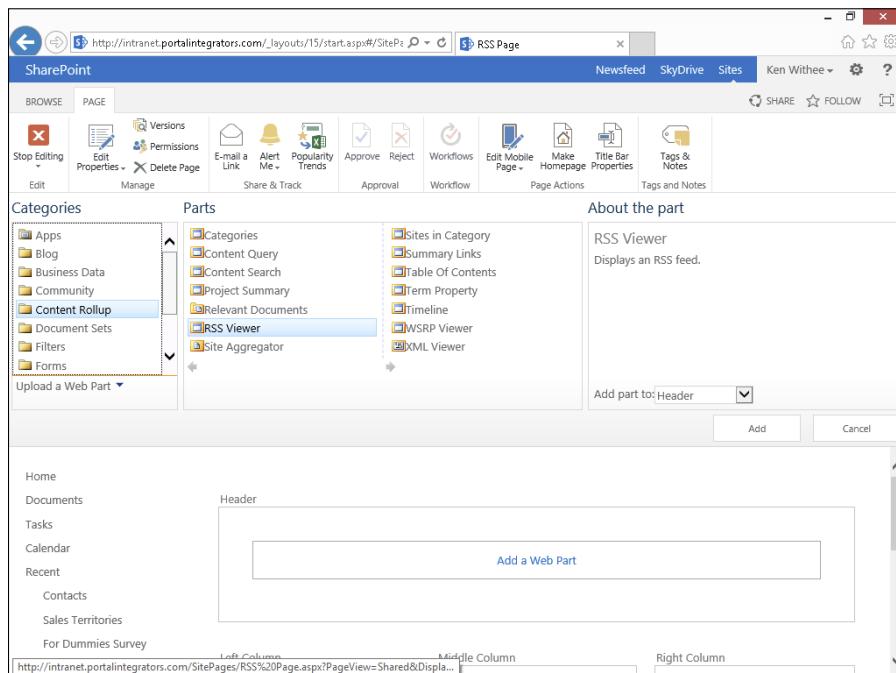
**4. Click the RSS Viewer Web Part.**

A description of the Web Part appears.

The SharePoint Server Standard Site Collection feature must be activated to see the RSS Viewer Web Part. If you don't see the Web Part, activate this feature. (See Chapter 12 for details on activating features.)

**5. Click the Add button to add the Web Part to the page, as shown in Figure 16-8.**

The Web Part appears on the page, awaiting configuration.



**Figure 16-8:**  
Add the RSS  
Viewer Web  
Part to your  
page.

To complete the configuration of the Web Part, you need to have the web address or URL for a feed you want to display in the Web Part. To add an RSS feed web address, follow these steps:

1. With your Web Part on the page, place a check mark in the upper-right corner of the Web Part.
2. Click the Web Part tab of the Ribbon, and then click the Web Part Properties button.

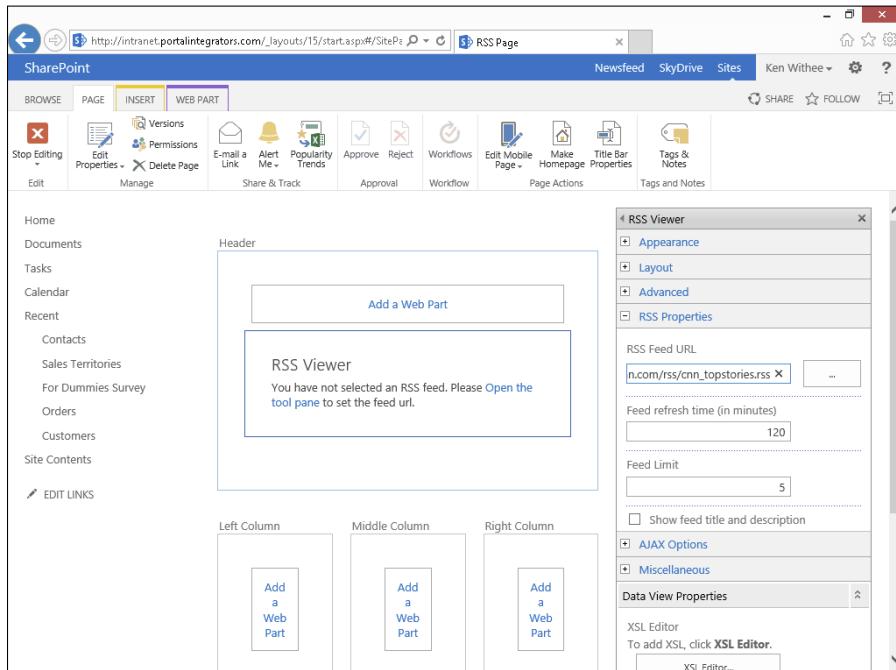
The Web Part's properties appear as a tool pane on the right side of the screen.

3. In the RSS Properties tab of the tool pane, enter the web address of the RSS feed you want to display in the RSS Feed URL text box, as shown in Figure 16-9.

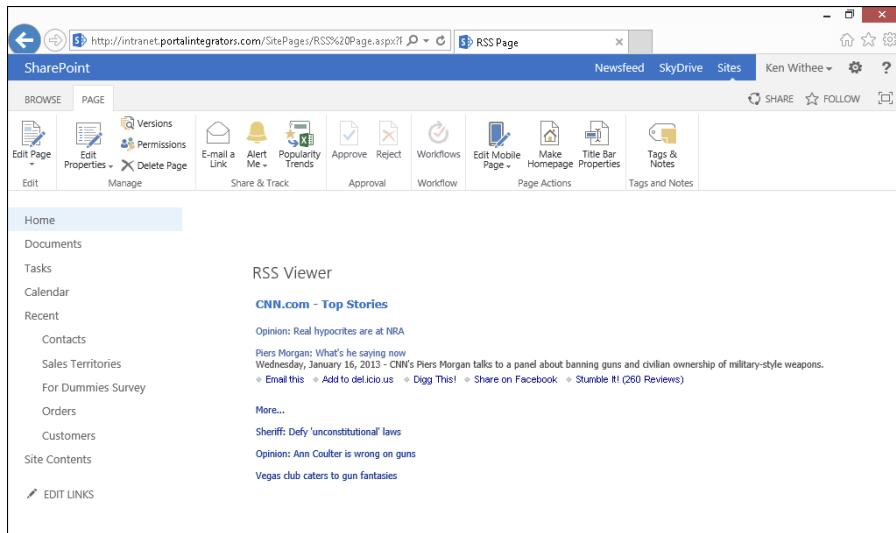
In this example, I pasted in the CNN Top Stories RSS feed web address.

4. Click OK, and your RSS feed appears in the web page.

You can click a headline in your Web Part to display the item's details, as shown in Figure 16-10. You can also click the More link to open the items from the RSS feed.



**Figure 16-9:**  
Enter  
the RSS  
feed web  
address.



**Figure 16-10:**  
Click the  
CNN head-  
line to view  
details.

You can use the RSS Viewer Web Part to display RSS feeds from SharePoint apps; however, your SharePoint farm must be configured to use Kerberos authentication. If you receive an authentication error while attempting to use the Web Part, it is most likely a Kerberos problem. You will have to engage your IT folks for help.



You can modify the default XSLT (Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations) template that the RSS Viewer Web Part uses if you want to change the output display. The XSLT template can be accessed from the Web Part's properties pane. For example, you can change the template so that the headline links to the article instead of displaying the item's details. You can use any XSLT programming or text editor to modify the XSLT template, including SharePoint Designer 2013.

## Alert Me

If RSS isn't your thing, you can opt to receive e-mail notifications when apps change by creating an alert. *Alerts* are a great way to keep track of the changes your teammates make to documents and items.

You need the Create Alerts permission to create alerts. This permission is granted usually with the out-of-the-box configuration of the *Site Members* SharePoint group. (See Chapter 14 for details on working with permissions.)

To create an alert to an app, follow these steps:

1. **Browse to the app where you want to subscribe to an alert and then click the Alert Me drop-down button in the Share & Track section of the Library tab of the Ribbon (for a library-based app) or the List tab of the Ribbon (for a list-based app).**
2. **Choose Set Alert on this Library from the drop-down list.**

The New Alert window appears.

You can subscribe to an alert for an item or document by selecting the item or document and choosing Alert Me on the Items tab of the Ribbon.

3. **In the Alert Title text box, enter a name for the alert.**

I suggest making the name something meaningful to you in your inbox, such as **Documents Modified Today – Budget Team Site**. Otherwise, you have no meaningful way to tell one alert from another.

4. **In the Send Alerts To text box, enter the names of people in addition to you who should receive the alert.**

That's right, you can subscribe other people to an alert! You must have the Manage Alerts permission, which is granted by default to Site Owners.

Organizations and site owners may want to subscribe multiple users to an alert to make sure they get important updates, as well as encourage them to contribute to a discussion board, blog, or wiki. Users can still opt out by modifying settings in their Alert settings.

5. **In the Delivery Method section, select whether to receive alerts via e-mail or text message to your cellular phone.**

Text messaging requires that your SharePoint administrator configures this service through a third party, so you may not be able to send alerts to your phone.

6. **In the Change Type section, select the option that matches the type of notifications you want to receive — All Changes, New Items Are Added, Existing Items Are Modified, or Items Are Deleted.**

If you're responsible for managing an app, I recommend receiving an alert any time items are deleted.

7. **In the Send Alerts for These Changes section, choose when to receive alerts.**

The options you see here vary based on the kind of app you're working with. For example, a Tasks app allows you to receive an alert when a task is marked Complete or any time a high-priority task changes.

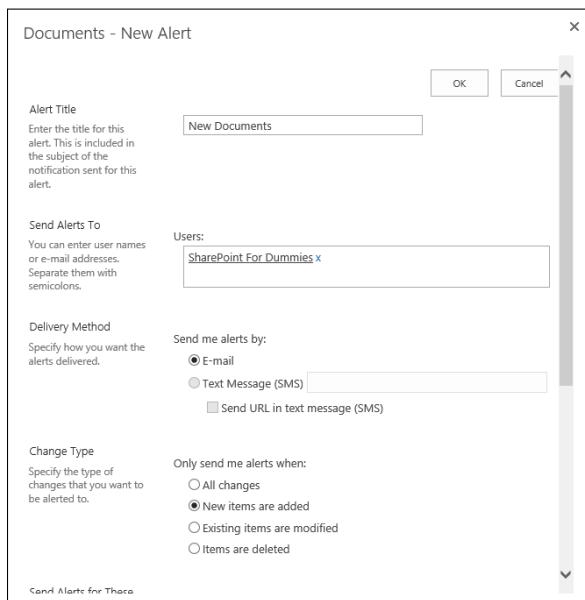


**8. In the When to Send Alerts section, choose the frequency of your alert delivery.**

You can receive them immediately, once a day, or once a week. I like to receive a daily summary; otherwise, I get too many e-mails.

**9. Click OK to create your alert.**

Figure 16-11 shows an example of an alert.



**Figure 16-11:**  
Receive  
an e-mail  
when a list  
changes.



Any time users say they need a workflow to receive notification, try an alert first. You'd be surprised at how often alerts provide the options that are needed.



If your app has a personal or public view that includes a filter, you can subscribe to changes to just that view. For example, say you want to be notified via text message when an item in an Issue Tracking app has its priority set to High. You would create a view that filters the app for high-priority issues. Select the filtered view in the Send Alerts for These Changes section when you create your alert, and you will receive alerts when items meet the filter criteria.

You must have an e-mail address configured in your SharePoint profile in order to receive alerts. If your SharePoint server is located in your network, that's usually not an issue. However, Office 365 may not be integrated with your network and e-mail information. In those situations, your administrator can either manually configure your e-mail address or grant you permission to do so.

You can manage all your alerts from a single page instead of navigating to each list. To manage all the alerts you have on a given site and modify or delete them, follow these steps:

- 1. Browse to an app where you currently subscribe to an alert.**
- 2. On the List tab of the Ribbon, in the Share & Track section, choose Alert Me→Manage My Alerts.**
- 3. Select the proper alert name link.**

The Manage My Alerts on this Site page appears with all the options you viewed when you first created the alert. Change the settings as desired.

Didn't set the alert to begin with? You can still read through the settings and change the choices (see the preceding steps list). Your changes don't affect the Alert settings for others if the alert was created for multiple users at the same time.

- 4. Click OK to modify the alert with your new settings or Delete to delete the alert.**

Deleting an alert that was created for you doesn't delete the alert from other users who are in the group the alert was created for.



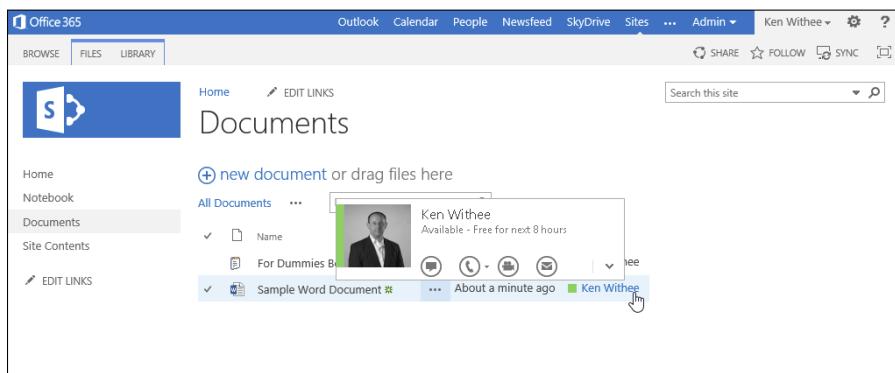
If you're the site administrator, you can manage the alerts of everyone on the site by clicking the User Alerts link on the Site Administration section of the Site Settings page.

When the event occurs that matches your alert — for example, the time or location of a calendar event change — you receive an e-mail in your inbox. The e-mail notification you receive is based on a template. These templates can be modified by your administrator, so they can provide for more detail.

## Staying in Sync with Lync

Microsoft Lync is an application that instantly connects with others in your organization. When Lync is integrated with SharePoint, you have access to a user just by hovering the mouse cursor over his or her name in SharePoint, as shown in Figure 16-12.

**Figure 16-12:**  
Hovering  
over a  
user in  
SharePoint  
provides a  
Lync pop-up  
window.



Lync shows the status of the person and if he or she is available. For example, if a user is available, a green bar appears next to the user's picture. Using Lync, you can send an e-mail, chat, call, schedule a meeting, or view the person's profile.



**TIP**  
Lync is included with Office 365; however, if you're using SharePoint On Premise, then it is only available if the IT team configured it when setting up SharePoint.



## **Chapter 17**

---

# **Taking SharePoint Mobile**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Understanding how SharePoint works with mobile devices
  - ▶ Making views mobile in a SharePoint app
  - ▶ Viewing Microsoft Office documents on a mobile device
- 

**M**obile devices quickly took the world by storm. I have grown so attached to my smartphone that I can barely remember what it was to not have it with me. I check e-mail, text, browse the web, view status updates, and generally stay connected whenever and wherever I choose. I no longer get that nagging feeling that I need to remember to do something when I get back to the office. When something comes up, I deal with it and then carry on with what I was doing. And of course, there are always those times when I choose to just turn off my smartphone and revert to the past.

In this chapter, you explore the mobile aspects of SharePoint. SharePoint 2013 has been particularly designed to work with mobile devices such as smartphones and tablets. You see how to create special views in your apps for mobile devices and how to target channels toward specific devices such as a tablet or smartphone. This chapter also shows you how to push content to devices and set items in lists with location information. Finally, you see how you can view Office documents such as Word, Excel, and PowerPoint on your mobile device.

## ***Viewing SharePoint on a Mobile Device***

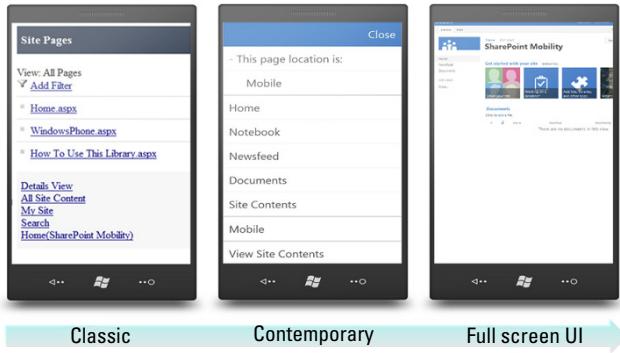
Every SharePoint site has the ability to be viewed by a mobile device. A SharePoint feature called Mobile Browser View makes it possible. When you

activate the feature, three different site views become available to mobile devices:

- ✓ **Classic** view shows the site with HTML links to the different navigation components.
- ✓ **Contemporary** view shows the navigation components of the site using tiles that you click on to navigate.
- ✓ **Full Screen UI** is the same view of SharePoint you would see on a regular desktop computer, only rendered in your smaller mobile browser.

The three different mobile browser views are represented in Figure 17-1, which is published on Microsoft's TechNet site.

**Figure 17-1:**  
Three  
mobile  
browser  
views.



*Image courtesy of Microsoft's TechNet site:  
<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/fp161351.aspx>*

## *Creating Views for Small Screens*

When you create a view for your app data, you select whether it should be available on a mobile device. You can even select if the view should be the default view for a mobile device. Chapter 9 walks you through creating a new view and discusses the Mobile section on the Create View page.

The bottom of the app settings page (such as List Settings or Library Settings) shows the views available for the app. A column shows whether the view is available for mobile devices and if it is the default view. Figure 17-2 shows these columns on the List Settings page for an app.

**Figure 17-2:**  
The views  
available for  
a list-based  
app.

Views			
A view of a list allows you to see a particular selection of items or to see the items sorted in a particular order. Views currently configured for this list:	Default View	Mobile View	Default Mobile View
All contacts	✓	✓	✓
By Company		✓	
Datasheet View			
» <a href="#">Create view</a>			

## Targeting Devices Using Channels

If you have a complex SharePoint site, you might want to render it depending on the device being used to view it. You can do this using the Device Channels functionality of SharePoint. Using Device Channels, you can dictate that certain devices should use certain master pages and style sheets. When a particular device, such as an iPad or Windows Phone, browses the site, it displays in a customized way for that type of device.



Creating custom master pages and style sheets is a very technical task and should be done by experienced web developers.

**Note:** Device Channels are only available for sites with the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature activated.

Click the Device Channels link in the Look and Feel section of the Site Settings page to create and configure channels. When you create a new channel, you provide a name, an alias for reference in website design code, a description, and inclusion rules. A web designer can then build the SharePoint master page to display differently based on the channels available. Developing master pages and referencing Device Channels in code is beyond the scope of this book, but you should know that the option is available when you need to customize SharePoint. The result is that SharePoint displays differently, depending on different channels of devices.

## Pushing Content to a Windows Phone

Push technology was made famous by the addictive Blackberry devices of the early 2000s. When an e-mail was sent, it would push the message to the mobile Blackberry device. Push technology has become standard and is available with the Microsoft Exchange e-mail server.

SharePoint 2013 brings push technology to the next level by pushing alerts to your Windows Phone from a SharePoint site. For example, after you register a Windows Phone with a SharePoint site, you can receive instant updates on your phone when events occur. For example, SharePoint can push a notification e-mail to your smartphone when a new item is added to an app.

## *Keeping Track of Locations*

SharePoint 2013 adds a new column type specifically designed for keeping track of a geographic location. Have you ever browsed a mapping service such as Bing Maps or Google Maps and seen the pushpins marking specific locations? This is exactly the type of data the new column type is designed to store.

A scenario where this would be valuable would be when a field worker needs to track location information along with other data. For my graduate thesis (more than a decade ago), I developed a field biology application that collected data using a handheld GPS. At the time, SharePoint was not yet available, so we uploaded the data to an Excel spreadsheet. That same application today could store the data directly, and instantly, to a SharePoint list using a mobile device. (On one field trip with a biologist in the San Francisco wetlands, I nearly lost my leg to a muddy sinkhole and remember dipping the device underwater. Having saved my leg, I didn't really care much about the data until we made it back to campus.)

I spent months developing my application to collect data and store it. SharePoint, along with modern cellular technology and powerful smartphones, makes a similar scenario available right out of the box.

## *Viewing Office Documents on Your Phone or Tablet*

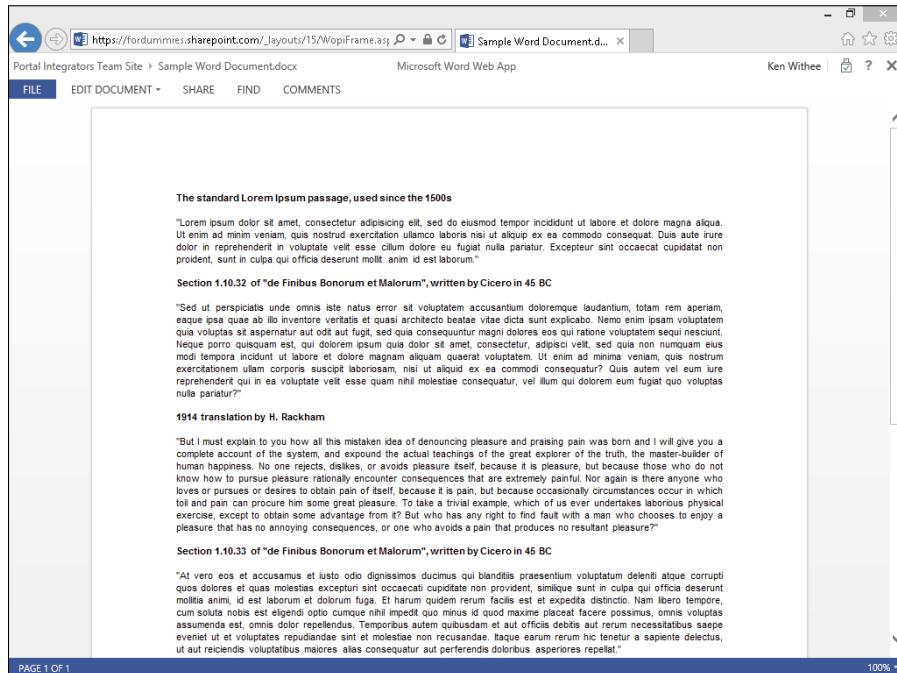
Opening an Office document on my mobile phone is still an amazing feature for me. I met with a colleague the other day who had a question about a Word document I had been working on. I wasn't anywhere near my work computer and didn't have a laptop with me, so I pulled out my Windows

Phone and was able to open the device directly from our SharePoint 2013 site. As long as you have a device that is capable of contacting the Internet, you can view documents right in the browser.

This goes for laptop and desktop computers, too. If you happen to be at a computer that doesn't have Office installed on it, you can still open and edit Office documents right in the web browser. This capability is made possible through Office Web Apps Server, which can be configured to provide this capability to SharePoint 2013 sites.

Viewing a Word document in the web browser is shown in Figure 17-3.

The important thing to remember about SharePoint 2013 and mobile devices is that there isn't a lot to remember. You can access and work with your SharePoint content using a mobile device in much the same way you would from your desktop. The experience is different, but your content is the same.



**Figure 17-3:**  
Viewing  
a Word  
document  
in the web  
browser.



# Part V

# Managing Enterprise Content

The screenshot shows a SharePoint page titled "For Dummies Records Center". The top navigation bar includes links for Newsfeed, SkyDrive, Sites, and a user profile for Ken Withee. A search bar is also present. The main content area features a large "Welcome to the Records Center" heading with a sub-instruction: "Use this web part to teach visitors to the Records Center about records management and organizational compliance." Below this, two sections are listed: "Add information about records management topics, such as:" and "Add links to other organizational compliance sites, such as:". Each section contains a bulleted list of items. To the right, there is a "My Records Pending Submission" section which states, "There are no items to show in this view of the 'Drop Off Library' document library. To add a new item, click 'Add document'." A "Submit a Record" button is located in the top right corner of the main content area.



Visit [www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013](http://www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013) for great Dummies content online.

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Import, share, manage, and approve documents.
- ✓ Find out how search works in SharePoint, refine search results, and create your own Search Center site.
- ✓ Explore the records management in SharePoint, define terms, create information management policies, set up a Records Center site, and use the Content Organizer tool.
- ✓ Develop workflows in SharePoint to create an approval system for documents.

## Chapter 18

# Sharing and Approving Content

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Understanding what document libraries are and why they’re superior to file shares
- ▶ Discovering lots of ways to get your documents into document libraries
- ▶ Working with (and deleting) your documents
- ▶ Retrieving a document after it has been deleted
- ▶ Choosing between moderation (approval) options
- ▶ Enabling content approval

**Y**

ou may remember Bill Gates proclaiming that “content is king” back in the mid-1990s. Nearly two decades since, it still couldn’t be more true. The rate at which modern organizations are generating digital content is staggering. One of SharePoint’s sweet spots is managing content, which is why many organizations adopt the platform in the first place.

In this chapter, you delve into dealing with documents in SharePoint. You find out how to get documents into SharePoint and share them with others. You discover SharePoint apps based on libraries and how they are used to manage documents. Finally, you see how to approve and publish content that you want to display on web pages.

## *Sharing Your Documents*

You’re probably familiar with *network file shares*: the file systems that enable people to upload files to a shared network drive so that other people can access and use them. File shares, when they were invented, revolutionized the ability of organizations to keep files in relatively secure locations and manage who had access. But SharePoint has done the file sharing one (okay, a whole bunch) better.

SharePoint apps based on libraries let you store and share files securely, and they also add features that help you manage things such as *document workflow* (the processes that let people edit, comment on, and approve documents) and *version histories* (what happened to a file, and who did what). And although file

shares give you one path through folders to your document, SharePoint library apps give you other paths to expose content. You can access documents directly through the browser, you can display them up in Web Parts, and you can sort and filter them with their metadata and content types. And with library apps, you can expose files by their title, not just their filename.

Library apps give you multiple choices about how the documents get into them, too. You can save a document to a Library app using a Microsoft Office client such as Word or Excel, or you can e-mail documents to Library apps or drag and drop from Windows Explorer. And you can create documents directly in the app.

No matter how you get your documents into SharePoint's Library apps, just get them there — it's so much easier to share documents with your coworkers in an app than it is to use file shares or e-mail attachments.



SharePoint apps can be confusing. An app based on a list is designed to store data in columns. An app based on a library is designed to store documents and data about those documents in columns. SharePoint 2013 tries to simplify the whole discussion of list and library and just calls everything an app. When you create the app, you give it a name and choose an app template. From that point on, you just call your app by its name. For example, you might create the Sales Pitch app. The app is designed to hold sales pitch documents. Because the app holds documents, it uses the Document Library app template. After your app is created, you wouldn't call it the "Sales Pitch app based on the Document Library App template." That would be a mouthful! If you're a seasoned SharePoint user, this new app stuff might take you a while to get your head around. It did me! But when you realize that most users don't think in terms of lists and libraries, and instead think about what a list or library does, it really is much easier to just call everything an app.



An app can also be built from scratch by a web developer as a standalone app, so such an app isn't based on a list or a library.

## *Getting Your Documents into an App*

SharePoint 2013 gives you many ways to get your files into an app. In this section, I show you how to upload your documents. You can upload them one at a time or a whole bunch in one swoop. You can drag and drop them right into the web browser window or save them to an app directly from your Office applications. You can even upload documents using the familiar Windows Explorer window. With all these options, you have no excuse to keep your files on your hard drive!



A Library app isn't restricted to only Microsoft Word files. Library apps can contain many file types, including Excel, PDF, and Visio files. Even web pages are stored in Library apps.

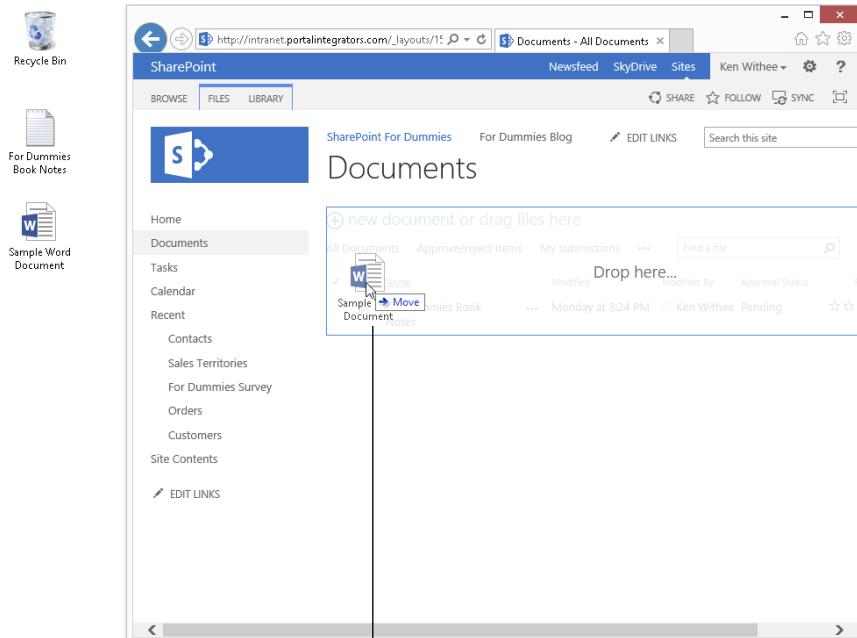
## Uploading a single document

When you have a single document to upload to an app, you can do so easily through the browser. The easiest way is to simply drag the file onto the app and drop it, as shown in Figure 18-1.



Drag and drop doesn't work with all browsers. In a cruel twist of fate, I have seen drag and drop work well with Google's Chrome browser but not work at all with the Internet Explorer 64-bit browser. When you have the app open, you should see the text + New Document or Drag Files Here. If your browser doesn't have the ability to drag and drop files, you see only the + New Document link.

In addition to dragging and dropping files into an app, you can also click the Upload Document button on the Files tab or click the + New Document link at the top of the app.



**Figure 18-1:**  
Drag and drop a document into an app.

Drag and drop a file into an app.



You can also send documents to an app via e-mail. If your SharePoint farm administrator has configured SharePoint 2013 to accept incoming e-mail, individual apps can be given their own e-mail address. When someone sends a document as an attachment to that e-mail address, it's uploaded to the app. This approach works well when you need to allow people outside your organization to place documents in an app. I recommend creating a workflow to move the incoming documents out of the Collection app and into an Approved Documents app after they have been approved and to delete them if they are rejected. This creates a process for ensuring the apps your users see have been reviewed and are acceptable.

## ***Uploading multiple documents***

There may be times when you have multiple documents to upload. You can drag and drop multiple documents into an app in the same way as a single document. To select multiple documents, hold down the Ctrl key as you click documents to select as many as you want.



Uploading multiple documents saves you time getting the documents into your app, but you still need to go into the properties for each document and set it for that particular document. Unfortunately, you can't batch-upload for properties.

### ***Uploading files using Windows Explorer***

If you use Internet Explorer, you can also upload documents to your app using Windows Explorer. (Windows Explorer is the familiar window that you open whenever you work with documents on your Windows computer.)



The reason you need Internet Explorer is because it provides special technology called ActiveX that allows interaction with Windows Explorer. If you have an issue with dragging and dropping files directly into the browser (which I have experienced with the 64-bit version of Internet Explorer), then you can try using the Windows Explorer method. As long as you are using Internet Explorer, that is. If you don't use Internet Explorer, the link to upload using Windows Explorer won't appear. However, when I tried dragging and dropping files directly into the browser using non-Microsoft browsers, I haven't had any problems and didn't feel sad that the Windows Explorer method was not available. Welcome to the wonderful world of SharePoint!

To upload multiple documents to an app using Windows Explorer, follow these steps:

#### **1. Browse to the app where you want to upload your files.**

For example, click the Documents link on the Quick Launch to go to the Documents app.

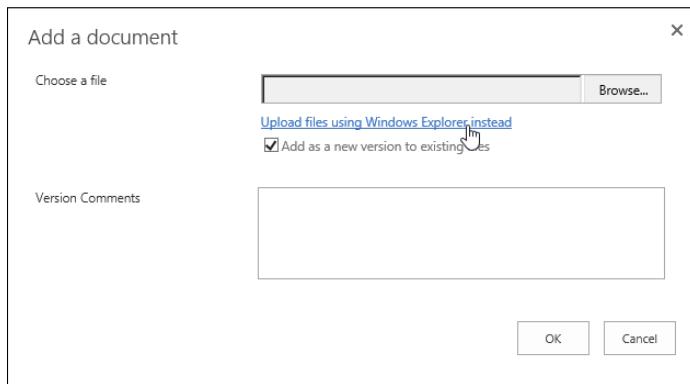
**2. Click the Files tab in the Ribbon and click the Upload Document button.**

The Add a Document window appears.

**3. Click the Upload Files Using Windows Explorer Instead link, as shown in Figure 18-2.**

A Windows Explorer window appears with a network path to the SharePoint app.

Alternatively, click the Browse button to browse for a single file on your computer.



**Figure 18-2:**  
The Add a  
Document  
dialog box.

**4. Drag documents into the app just like you would drag documents into a shared folder.**

The documents are uploaded to your app in SharePoint. You can now browse the documents in the web interface and set the properties for each document. If you already have the app open, then simply refresh the browser window to see the documents.



SharePoint 2013 uses a number of protocols to allow you to access libraries as folders with Windows Explorer. In my experience, this feature either works or it doesn't. If it doesn't, most organizations aren't willing to spend any energy to figure out why.

A green icon appears in the app next to the name of each of the files you just uploaded, letting you know it is a new document. By default, this icon appears on all newly uploaded files for a period of three days.



Your SharePoint farm administrator can block certain file types, such as executable (.exe) files. The reason is to prevent a malicious person from uploading a virus to SharePoint, because any user that clicked the virus file would run the virus. If you try to upload a blocked file type, you see a message letting you know that the file has been blocked from uploading by the administrator.

### **Updating document properties using Quick Edit view**

You may have noticed that SharePoint didn't prompt you to enter the properties for the files that you uploaded. When you upload a single document using the Browse button, you're prompted to enter the properties for the document. When you perform a multiple upload or drag and drop files, you aren't prompted to enter the properties for the documents. This is true even for properties that are required. The result is that you have documents in your SharePoint app, but you still need to go and set the properties for each document.

You can update properties quickly using the Quick Edit view. To edit properties for multiple documents using the Quick Edit functionality, follow these steps:

**1. Click the Library tab on the Ribbon and click the Quick Edit button.**

The app reloads and shows the documents in an editable grid format, as shown in Figure 18-3.

**Figure 18-3:**  
Editing  
documents  
in an app  
using  
Quick Edit.

Name	Modified	Modified By	Approval Status	Rating (0-5)	Notes
For Dummies Book Notes	Monday at 3:24 PM	Ken Withee	Pending	☆☆☆☆☆ 0	A Note..
Sample Word Document	About a minute ago	Ken Withee	Pending	☆☆☆☆☆ 0	

**2. Place your cursor in the field you want to update and make the changes.**

You can also add new columns on the fly by clicking the + button in the right-most column.

**3. Move your cursor off the cell you updated, and your changes are saved.**

See Chapter 9 for more details on working with Quick Edit.

## Moving documents in and around SharePoint

Just because you uploaded your document into one app doesn't mean it's stuck there forever. Sometimes you want to move documents to a different app. You can use the Open with Explorer button located on the Library tab of the Ribbon to quickly move documents from one app into another. But unfortunately, Windows Explorer moves the files only, and not any associated metadata. So for that reason, investigate the Save Document Library as Template link on the Library Settings page and the copy and move function of the Site Content and Structure tool. The Site Content and Structure tool is located under the Site Administration section of the Site Settings page. However, the tool is only available if the SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature is activated for the site collection.

Windows Explorer is great if you need to upload a lot of documents into an app. But resist the urge to take all the files from your shared drives and to copy them into apps with Windows Explorer. That's usually a recipe for disaster because most people store files in folders and re-creating that folder structure in a SharePoint app makes it very hard to find files. (Although folders have some uses in SharePoint, navigation isn't one of them.) Instead, consider putting many files at the top level of an app and creating views based on metadata. The views can be added to different pages so that different people or groups of people see the app in a different way, but the documents are all in the same location.

## *Uploading documents into a folder*

You can use folders within your apps as a means to organize your documents. I show you how to create a folder and upload files into it, but I urge you to first read the sidebar, "Why folders in SharePoint are evil."

Perhaps you have an app and you have a subset of files that only supervisors should see. You could put those files in a separate app and set the permissions on it. But say you already have one app set up the way you like and it seems silly to create another one. Instead, you can use a folder to separate the restricted files from the rest of the files in the app.

To create a folder within an app:

- 1. Browse to the app where you want to create the folder.**
- 2. Click the Files tab in the Ribbon and click the New Folder button.**

The Create a New Folder dialog box appears. If you don't see the New Folder button, folders are disabled for the library. Use the Advanced

Settings option in Library Settings to enable or disable folders in your app.

**3. Type the name of the folder in the Name text box and click the Save button.**

The folder appears in the app.

To upload files into the folder, follow these steps:

**1. Click the folder name to navigate inside it and click the Upload Document button on the Files tab of the Ribbon.**

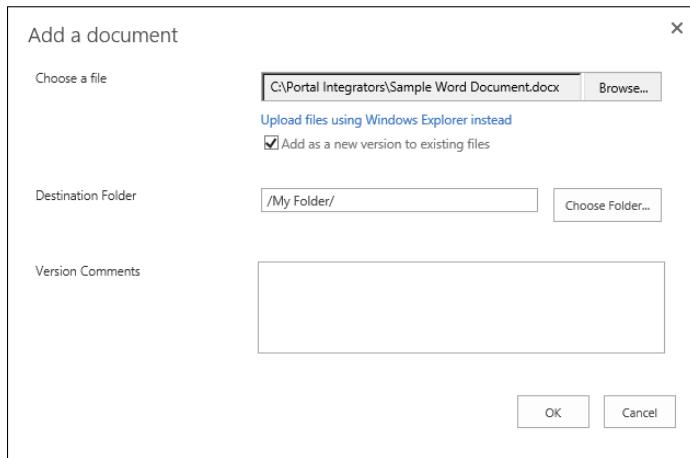
The Upload Document window appears.

**2. Browse to the document you want to upload to the folder.**

**3. Make sure the Destination Folder text box lists the folder where you want to upload the document, as shown in Figure 18-4.**

If the folder is incorrect, click the Choose Folder button to select the right folder.

**Figure 18-4:**  
Uploading a  
document to  
a folder  
in an app.



**4. Click OK to upload your document to the folder.**



You can work with folders the same way as you work with documents. That is, the rules about working with properties and the Ribbon also apply to folders.



## Why folders in SharePoint are evil

Resist the urge to use folders in your apps; this file share paradigm generally causes nothing but problems. One reason to use SharePoint instead of a file share to begin with is so that you can add properties to describe your documents. Properties allow you to view your documents in different ways. If you dump your files in folders just like they were arranged on the file share, ignoring properties, you probably won't be very satisfied with your SharePoint experience.

As well, nested folders in SharePoint are just as hard to navigate as nested folders in file shares (and nested URLs in folders inside apps get

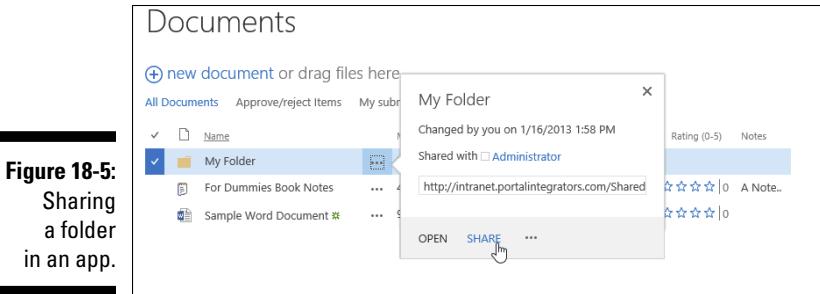
unwieldy quickly). Instead of replicating your file structure in SharePoint, I recommend that you flatten the folder hierarchies by replacing them with views. If you decide to use folders and find yourself going more than two layers deep, stop and ask yourself if you should create another app instead.

The only reason to use a folder in an app is to separate a group of documents to give them separate permissions. For pretty much everything else, I recommend that you use properties to organize your documents.

Follow these steps to restrict access to your folder so that only certain groups can access it:

1. Click the ellipsis next to the folder and choose Share, as shown in Figure 18-5.

The Permissions page appears.



**Figure 18-5:**  
Sharing  
a folder  
in an app.

2. Enter the names of the people you want to share the folder with in the **Invite People** text box.
3. Click the **Error** drop-down list to set whether they can only view or can also edit the documents.
4. Click the **Share** button to share the folder.

I discuss permissions management in detail in Chapter 14.

## Working with Documents

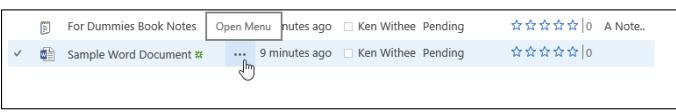
After you upload your documents to an app, you need to be able to work with them. This includes adding descriptive properties and letting other teammates know where the documents are stored.

SharePoint 2013 provides two methods for working with documents. Each document has a set of actions contained in the Ribbon that can be targeted to the document. In addition, you can click the ellipsis next to the document to see a menu of actions for the document. For example, you can check out a document, edit it, and check it back in.

### Using the ellipsis

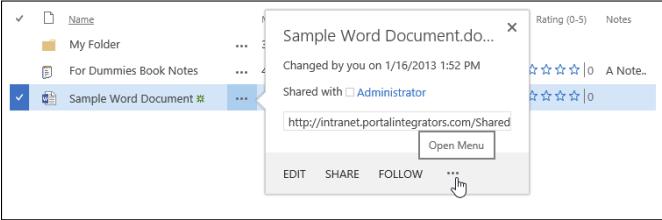
Accessing the menu for a specific document is accomplished by clicking the ellipsis next to the document, as shown in Figure 18-6.

**Figure 18-6:**  
The local  
menu for a  
document.



With the ellipsis menu, you can see key information about the document, such as who it is shared with and the URL. You can also open the document to edit it, share it with others, or follow that particular document. You can use another ellipsis to open the Edit menu for the document. The second ellipsis is shown in Figure 18-7.

**Figure 18-7:**  
The second  
ellipsis  
contains  
the Edit  
menu for the  
document.



Using the Edit menu (second ellipsis), you can view and edit properties, check out the file, view compliance details, manage workflows, download a copy, view the sharing information, manage versioning, and delete the document. Some options in the Edit menu depend on how your app has been configured. For example, if versioning is enabled for the app, you see a Version History option in the Edit menu. If versioning is not enabled, then you won't see the Version History option. All items and documents in apps follow this same paradigm. The actual options depend on the type of app you're using and how you configured it.



Your organization can add custom menu items to the menus, so don't be surprised if your menus look different than the one shown in Figure 18-7. The point is that you can use the ellipsis menus to access a list of actions that you can take on the selected document.

## *Editing a document's properties*

You can use a document ellipsis menu or the Ribbon to view and edit a document's properties. By default, SharePoint 2013 asks only for these two properties:

- ✓ **Name:** The filename. For example, if you upload a `myspreadsheet.xlsx` file, that's the value you see as the filename.
- ✓ **Title:** A caption that describes the document. If a title already exists in the document, SharePoint uses that. Otherwise, you can enter your own descriptive title.

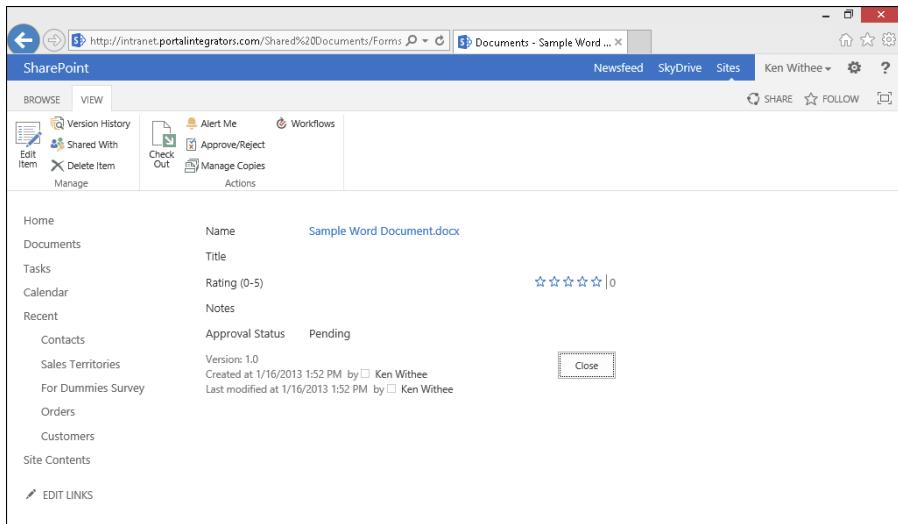
The app owner can add more properties to describe the document. For example, the owner might add a Category property that allows you to apply a category to the document. Properties are actually just new columns that you add to your app. I describe the process of adding new columns in Chapter 8.

The easiest way to view a document's properties is to use the Ribbon:

- 1. Click the document in the app so it's highlighted.**
- 2. Click the View Properties button on the Files tab of the Ribbon.**

The document's properties are displayed.

Figure 18-8 shows the properties page for a document. This window includes its own View tab on the Ribbon. The View tab includes buttons for managing the document and actions for working with the document.



**Figure 18-8:**  
The properties page for a document.

## Checking documents in and out

The Ribbon displays many of the same document actions as the ellipsis menu. One of the advantages of using the Ribbon is that you can use it to take actions on multiple documents at the same time. For example, say you want to check out three documents at one time. Here's how you can do it with the Ribbon:

1. In your app, select the check box (left most column) next to each document that you want to check out.
2. Click the Files tab of the Ribbon and click the Check Out button.
3. Click OK at the confirmation prompt.

The documents are checked out, and a small green checked-out arrow appears on the document icons.



Alternatively, you can use a document's ellipsis menu to access the Check Out menu command.

You may be thinking, “That’s great, but why would I want to check out a document?” To me, checking out — and its counterpart, checking in — is just good document editing etiquette. What better way to let others know that you’re making changes to a document than by checking it out? Checking

out a document sets the Checked Out flag to Yes and stores the name of the person who checked out the document. Of course, always remember to check in documents when your edits are complete.



An app can be configured to force a person to check out a document before it can be edited. This is achieved on the Versioning Settings page located in the Library Settings.

When you check out a single document at a time, SharePoint 2013 prompts you to save the document in your local Drafts folder. Don't believe me? Follow these steps to see for yourself:

- 1. In an app, click the ellipsis next to a document, and then click the ellipsis that appears on the new window to display the Edit menu.**
- 2. Click the Check Out option to check out the document, as shown in Figure 18-9.**

SharePoint returns to the listing of documents, and a green check-out icon is displayed next to the document to let everyone know you have checked it out.

The screenshot shows a SharePoint 2013 interface with the following details:

- Header:** SharePoint, http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/\_layouts/15/start.aspx#/Share, Documents - All Documents, Newsfeed, SkyDrive, Sites, Ken Withee, Sync.
- Top Navigation:** BROWSE, FILES, LIBRARY, SharePoint, SharePoint For Dummies, For Dummies Blog, EDIT LINKS, Search this site.
- Left Sidebar:** Home, Documents, Tasks, Calendar, Recent, Contacts, Sales Territories, For Dummies Survey, Orders, Customers, Site Contents, EDIT LINKS.
- Main Content Area:** Documents library. It shows two items: "For Dummies Book Notes" (checked out by Ken Withee on 1/16/2013) and "Sample Word Document".
- Context Menu (Open in New Window):**
  - For Dummies Book Notes.txt
  - Rating (0-5) Notes
  - Changed by you on 1/16/2013 1:57 PM
  - Shared with Administrator
  - http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/Shared
  - View Properties
  - Edit** (highlighted)
  - Check Out** (highlighted with a cursor)
  - Version History
  - Approve/Reject
  - Compliance Details
  - Workflows
  - Download a Copy
  - Shared With
  - Delete

**Figure 18-9:**  
Check out  
a doc-  
ment using  
local drafts  
folder.

### 3. Select the Use My Local Drafts Folder check box and click OK.

The document is checked out and downloaded to your local hard drive.

Unless your administrator has changed the location, your local drafts folder can be found at C:\users\username\documents\sharepoint drafts.

To open the document you just checked out and downloaded, browse to your local Drafts folder with Windows Explorer and open the file. Because most people don't want to bother with this extra step, I don't think very many people bother with using this option.

When you check out a document, if it's in some Windows-compatible application (such as Word), you receive a message letting you specify whether to check out the document to your local Drafts folder. Generally, you want to select the Use My Local Drafts Folder option because it creates a temporary file on your hard drive and will let you edit the checked-out file even when you're offline.



If you choose not to use your local Drafts folder, the file opens from the SharePoint server. This can cause your system to hang and appear unresponsive because it has to wait for your changes to travel back and forth across the network to the server. If you lose your network connection, you could lose changes to your document. I always recommend downloading a local copy of the file when making changes. You can use your local Drafts folder as I describe in the preceding steps, or you could manually download the file and upload it again when you're done making changes. If SharePoint has Office Web Applications installed and configured, you can also edit the file right in your web browser and avoid the hassle of opening the document on your local computer all together.

Documents that are checked out show an arrow in the document type icon. As shown in Figure 18-10, the bottom item is checked out, whereas the top two aren't.

**Figure 18-10:**  
The bottom  
document  
is checked  
out.

Name	Modified	Modified By	Approval Status	Rating (0-5)
For Dummies Book Notes	19 minutes ago	Ken Withee	Pending	☆☆☆☆ 0
Portal Integrators Sales	About a minute ago	Ken Withee	Pending	☆☆☆☆ 0
Sample Word Document	23 minutes ago	Ken Withee	Pending	☆☆☆☆ 0



If you want to see who has a document checked out, you have to look at the Checked Out To column in the app view. This column is displayed by default. You can customize views and rearrange columns. (I discuss working with views in Chapter 9.)

To check in a document after you're done making your changes, you can repeat the steps you followed earlier in this section to check out the document, only in Step 2, choose the Check In option from the menu. You are asked to provide a comment and choose if you want to retain the check out after you check in the document. This is because you might want to check in a document as you are working on it and pass a milestone. Think of a check-in as a snapshot of the document at that state. You can use the Files tab of the Ribbon to check in documents as well.

If you change your mind and want to pretend that the check-out never happened, you can click the Discard Check Out button instead of checking in the document. This can be useful if you accidentally checked out the wrong document or made changes that you wish you wouldn't have made. When you discard the check out, the document reverts back to the state it was in before you checked it out.

## *Sending a link to your document*

To share your document with others, they must know where to find the document. One way to do so is to send them the web address of the team site or the app. You can also send them a link directly to the document itself.

To obtain the URL to a document, follow these steps:

- 1. Click ellipsis next to the document to view the pop-up window.**  
The document information is displayed, including the URL.
- 2. Highlight the URL and press Ctrl+C to copy it.**
- 3. Paste the URL by pressing Ctrl+P.**

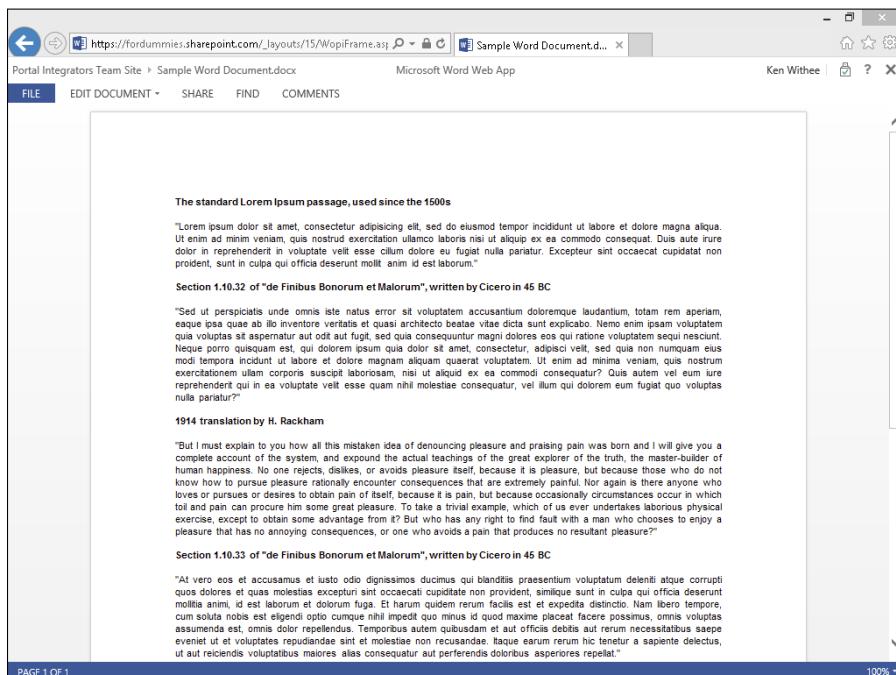
Alternatively, if you want to e-mail a link, you can click the inner ellipsis and then choose Shared With. The dialog box shows you who has access to the document. From here, you can choose to e-mail a link to the people that have access to the document.

As long as your team members have network access and permissions to the document, they can click the link and open the file.

## *Viewing documents in the browser*

Office Web Applications is a sister product to SharePoint that enables you to view and edit documents in the browser. Office Web Applications is installed separately from SharePoint, and then configured to provide the in-browser document capability to SharePoint. Office Web Applications is available with Office 365 and is already configured to work with SharePoint Online (because Microsoft engineers did this for you).

If Office Web Applications is installed and properly activated in your team site, Microsoft Office documents such Word and PowerPoint files open in the browser. The experience happens automatically, so you just have to click the filename in the app to open the file. Figure 18-11 shows a Word document displayed using the Microsoft Word Web Application.



**Figure 18-11:**  
Office  
Web Apps  
displays  
Office  
files in the  
browser.

Office Web Applications is especially useful when you don't want to install the Office 2013 client on the desktop. It also makes quickly browsing document contents a breeze because the file opens right in the browser.

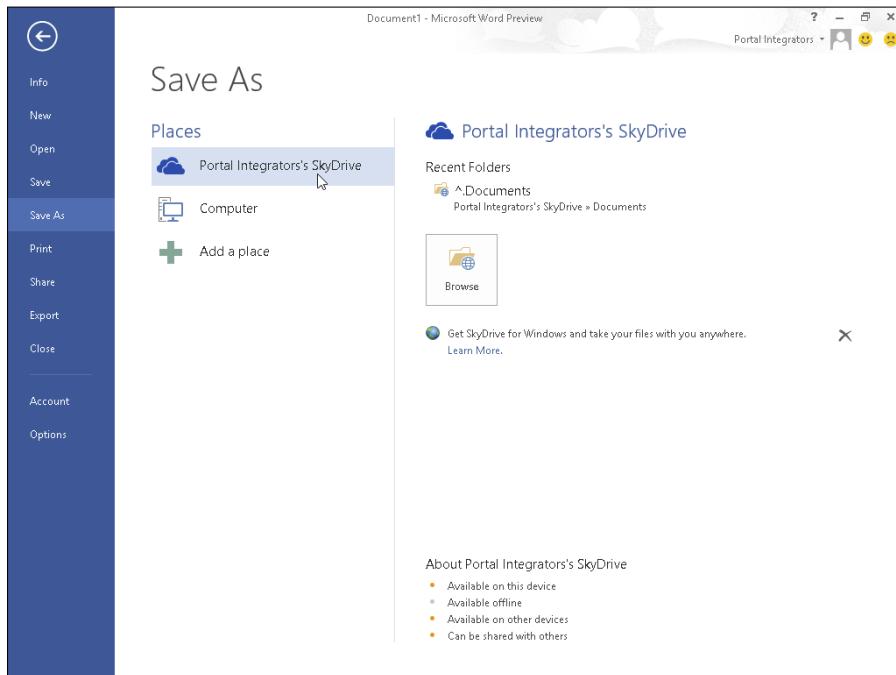


Office Web Applications is also available in the consumer version of SkyDrive. Using SkyDrive, you can open your Office documents right in the browser. And the consumer version is free!

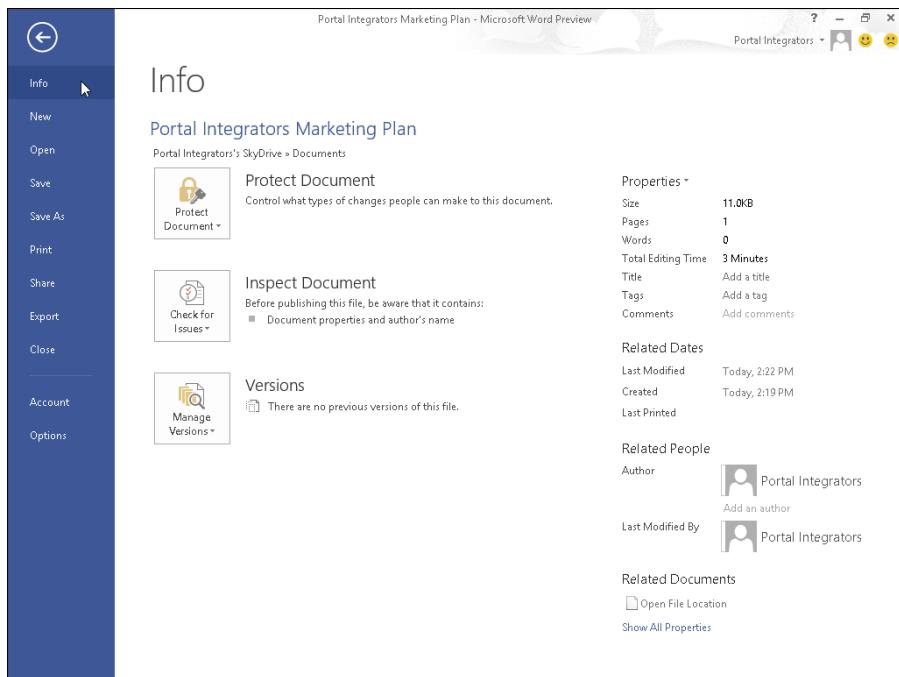
## Using Office 2013

You can access many of the commands mentioned in this chapter directly within Office 2013 clients, such as Word and Excel. For example, if you click the File Ribbon in any Office 2013 application and click Save & Send, you see the Save to SharePoint option, as Figure 18-12 shows.

The Info tab in Office 2013 clients, shown in Figure 18-13, provides a wealth of information regarding the file's status, properties, and history in SharePoint.



**Figure 18-12:**  
Save documents to SharePoint using Office 2013.



**Figure 18-13:**  
Use the Info tab to view properties.

## Recovering Deleted Documents

It is often said that SharePoint delivers on the promise of making people more productive through software. Although that's not always true, one feature of SharePoint that truly delivers is the Recycle Bin. When you delete a document from an app, it isn't gone forever. Nope. The document just moves to a holding place in your site — the Recycle Bin.

Go ahead and try it. Go to an app and delete a document. You can use the ellipsis menu or the Manage group on the Ribbon to access the Delete command. Either way, you're prompted to confirm the deletion, and then your document appears in the Recycle Bin.



The Recycle Bin works for items in apps that use the Custom List app template as well.

Follow these steps to restore a document from the Recycle Bin to its original location:

**1. Go to the Recycle Bin by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Contents.**

The Site Contents page is displayed.

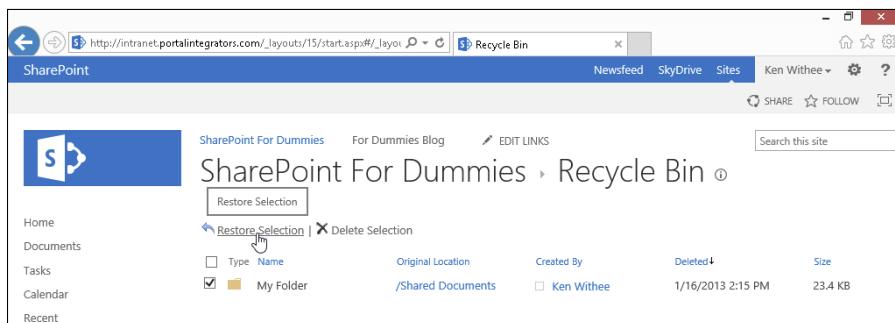
**2. Click the Recycle Bin button in the upper-right corner to display the Recycle Bin.**

**3. Selected the deleted document, and then click the Restore Selection link, as shown in Figure 18-14.**

The file is restored to the app.

You can click the Delete Selection link in the Recycle Bin to remove the file from your Recycle Bin. Doing so, however, doesn't permanently delete the file. Instead, the file is moved to another Recycle Bin that can be accessed by the site collection administrator.

**Figure 18-14:**  
Restoring a  
document  
from the  
Recycle Bin.



If you're the site collection administrator, you can follow these steps to access the administrator's Recycle Bin:

**1. Log in to the site as the site collection administrator.**

Your SharePoint administrator in IT can look up this account information.

**2. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings.**

The Site Settings page appears.

3. In the Site Collection Administration section, click the Recycle Bin link.
4. In the Recycle Bin's left navigation pane, click the Deleted from End User Recycle Bin link.
5. Click the items you want to restore and click Restore Selection.

The items are restored.

Files remain in the site collection Recycle Bin for a period of 30 days or until they're deleted by the administrator, whichever comes first. When removed from the Recycle Bin, the fate of your documents depends on your company's business continuity management plan. That's a fancy way to say, how does your IT team back up data? SharePoint stores your documents in databases. An administrator can connect to a backed-up copy of the database and select individual documents to restore.



A second stage recycle bin is at the site collection level. If a user deletes a document or item and goes directly into the Recycle Bin and also deletes it from there, all is not completely lost. A site collection administrator can go to the second stage recycle bin and retrieve the deleted item. The second stage recycle bin is located in the Site Collection Administration section of the Site Settings page.

## Configuring Content Approval

Trust, but verify: Sometimes you want to let folks add a document or create an item in an app but you don't want those items unleashed on an unsuspecting world before someone approves them. SharePoint has a few ways to help you enact and enforce content governance policies to define what gets published and under what conditions, how many revisions are retained, and how they're secured and tracked. Depending on the complexity of your approval process, you can use the standard content approval option, or you can create a more sophisticated — and custom — approval workflow. Using workflow to approve documents and items is discussed in Chapter 21.

Content approval is approval-light; it's a publishing function that you turn on or off at the app level, and it has just a handful of configuration settings. Content approval — also called *moderation* — doesn't include item routing or notifications, and it doesn't facilitate reviews and commenting. Content approval just ensures that drafts and new uploaded content don't get published to your app until someone with some authority says it's okay. The content approval process controls who can see those documents until they're approved.

Content approval also can specify (in the case of documents) whether items must be checked out before they can be edited. And content approval can hide draft documents from everyone except the item author and those users with approve permissions on the app. (Contrast this with draft item security on apps without content approval enabled in which you can limit views only to users with app-level Read permissions or users with app-level Edit permissions.)

This is a subtle distinction, but specifying that only the item author and users with approve permissions can view items means that the author can check in an item without exposing it to the view of other readers or editors until it's formally published and approved. I find this useful in cases when I have multiple authorized contributors to an app and I want to keep them from seeing each others' work until someone (the approver) says it's okay. This also gives me a way to let authors work on drafts without readers looking over their shoulders (few things are more frustrating than editorial feedback on something you're still working on!).

## Turning on content approval

By default, content approval is turned off and (usually) any user with Read access can see Draft items in most apps. Sites created with the publishing site template, however, already have content approval turned on in the Pages app.

To turn on and configure content approval, follow these steps:

1. **Navigate to your app's Settings Page (Library Settings or List Settings) and click the Versioning Settings link.**

The Versioning Settings page appears.

2. **Select the Yes radio button below Require Content Approval for Submitted Items.**

You see options to retain versions, specify who can see drafts, and in library-based apps — document check-out options.

Notice that the options below Who Should See Draft Items in This Document Library become available as soon as you select the Yes radio button to require content approval for submitted items, as shown in Figure 18-15.

You need to decide whether readers, editors, or only authors and approvers can see drafts. I usually enable content approval partly because I don't want to expose items to just anyone before they meet some level of credibility or *done-ness*. So I select the Only Users Who Can Approve Items (And the Author of the Item) option.

**Figure 18-15:**  
The Draft Item Security settings become available after you select Yes under Require Content Approval for Submitted Items.

The screenshot shows the SharePoint Settings page with the URL [http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/\\_layouts/15/ListSettings.aspx?listId=...](http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/_layouts/15/ListSettings.aspx?listId=...). The left navigation menu includes Home, Documents, Tasks, Calendar, Recent, Contacts, Sales Territories, For Dummies Survey, Orders, Customers, Site Contents, and EDIT LINKS. The main content area is titled 'Versioning Settings' under 'Settings'. It contains three sections: 'Content Approval', 'Document Version History', and 'Draft Item Security'. In 'Content Approval', there is a note about requiring approval and a radio button for 'No'. In 'Document Version History', there are three options: 'No versioning' (radio button), 'Create major versions' (radio button selected), and 'Create major and minor (draft) versions' (radio button). Below these are fields for 'Keep the following number of major versions:' and 'Keep drafts for the following number of major versions:'. In 'Draft Item Security', there is a note about viewing drafts and a radio button for 'Only users who can approve items (and'.

### 3. Verify the Document Version History settings in the Document Version History section.

You can specify versions *without* turning on content approval. A major version is created when you publish a document and a minor version is created when you save a document. You can configure which level of detail you want to set in versioning by choosing None, Major, or Major and Minor.

### 4. Click a Draft Item Security option in the Draft Item Security section.

The security referred to by draft item security — Read, Edit, and Approve — maps to SharePoint's Visitors, Members, and Approvers groups. (See Chapter 14 for details on managing security groups.)

### 5. Click a check-out option in the Require Check Out section.

### 6. Click OK to save your changes.

You return to the Library or List Settings page from whence you came. The items created in (or changed in) the app are subject to approval (unless you disable content approval later).





If content approval is active, when users add an item to the app, they see a note that items require content approval in the item properties window. After the item is added, it appears in Pending status in the app view until it is approved.

## *Identifying approvers*

You need to specify who the approvers include, generally by adding users to the created Approvers group. (See Chapter 14 for information about groups and permissions.)

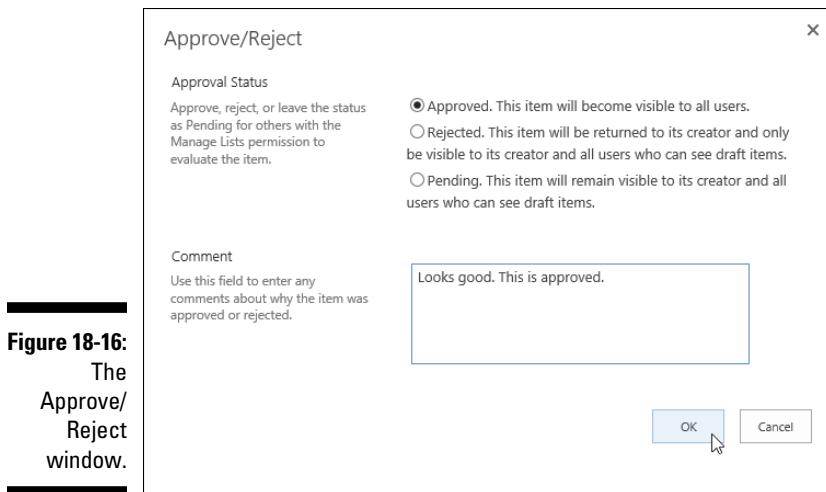
Oh, and by the way, content approval isn't just about Big Brother checking someone else's work. You may want to ensure that documents can be checked in and versioned, but that they aren't displayed to readers until they're formally approved. In these cases, you set the same person or people both to create and to approve items. That way, all people in the group can see the item's current version, but the rest of the organization can't see it until it has been approved by someone in the group.

## *Casting an approving eye*

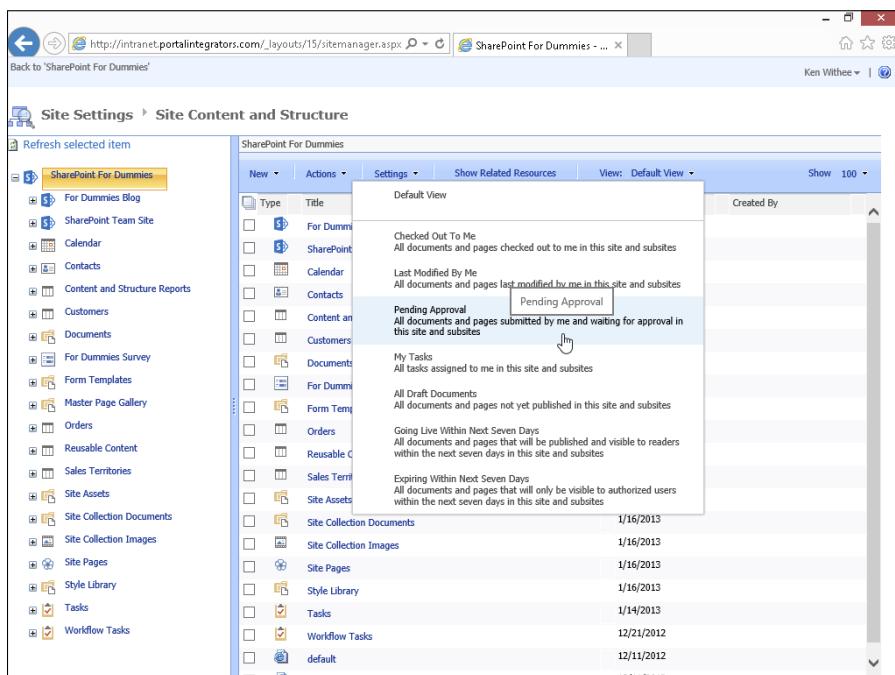
In an app that has approval turned on, when a new document is created and a major version is published, the approval status is marked Pending and designated approvers can approve, pend, or reject the item either from the List view by choosing Files→Approve/Reject or by using the View Properties window. In either case, when you select Approve/Reject, you're presented with the aptly named Approve/Reject page, as shown in Figure 18-16, with the Pending option selected by default. At this point, you can leave a comment in the Comment text box but leave the item as Pending or you can select the Approved or the Rejected option to approve or reject the item with or without comment. (Rejecting without comment is pretty poor form, though.) The action, name of the person who took the action, and timestamp are recorded in the item's version history.



You can get a quick view of all your items that are in a pending status using the Site Content and Structure tool. You access the tool from the Site Administration section of the Site Settings page. When in the tool, click the View: Default View drop-down list in the upper-right corner and select Pending Approval, as shown in Figure 18-17.



**Figure 18-16:**  
The  
Approve/  
Reject  
window.



**Figure 18-17:**  
View documents with  
Pending Approval  
in the Site  
Content report.

Unless alerts are enabled on the app or the item itself, the item originator won't know you've taken an action until the next time that person is in the app and checks the approval status on the item. I recommend using alerts with content approval unless you have some alternative process where approvers make it part of their daily routine to check for pending items.

## ***Disapproving: Not just for stern parents***

Everyone wants approval, but sometimes you don't get it. Sometimes an approver rejects an item. When this happens, the item is changed to Rejected status, and then it's visible only to the author and anyone with permission to manage the app.



When you first enable content approval on an app, all existing items are approved automatically.

## ***Getting alerts on approval/rejection status***

When an item is marked Pending with content approval turned on (and no associated approval workflow), that item just sits there, marinating in its own pending status until someone notices and either approves or rejects it. When the app I'm managing sees a lot of traffic, I rely on the approvers to check for pending items because they're working in the app all the time anyway. But another way to make sure approvers get the heads-up is to set alerts (see Chapter 16). In addition to alerts, you can create a workflow that periodically e-mails a person or group until an item is approved. I have found this constant nagging type behavior is actually very effective, and people appreciate it because they don't have to remember to do something. (Approving content with a workflow is covered in Chapter 21.)



If you turn off content approval, be aware that pending and rejected items, which were hidden from public view, are now viewable. I recommend resolving all draft, pending, and rejected items before disabling content approval; it's a dirty trick to reveal someone's draft to the world when he isn't expecting it!



## Chapter 19

# Finding What You Need with Search

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Searching for content in SharePoint
- ▶ Refining results to narrow down content
- ▶ Customizing SharePoint search capabilities
- ▶ Creating your own Search Center site

**S**harePoint search provides a powerful and intuitive mechanism for finding content. Right out of the box, SharePoint lets users search for content and narrow down results. SharePoint search can be configured and fine-tuned to meet the needs of your organization. In this manner, you can think of search as a platform instead of a feature that is either on or off.

In this chapter, I walk you through how search works in SharePoint. You find out how to search for content and refine results. You then explore some of the configuration options available for search and discover how to create your own Search Center site.

## *Understanding How SharePoint Search Works*

Search is an often misunderstood feature in SharePoint. Many users simply think that search is either on or off. In fact, search can be configured and is very robust. For example, the results of a SharePoint search can be tweaked using query rules in order to provide the best possible results for users. Maybe a user searches for *marketing*, but what she is really looking for is the Marketing app, which contains all the official marketing documents for the organization. Using query rules, you can make the Marketing app show up at the top of the search results.

One of the biggest improvements in search in SharePoint 2013 is the integration of FAST search. FAST was an Oslo, Norway-based company that Microsoft acquired. In SharePoint 2010, FAST search was a separate product. In SharePoint 2013, the FAST technology is baked right into SharePoint. So when you search in SharePoint, you're using FAST technology even if you don't realize it.

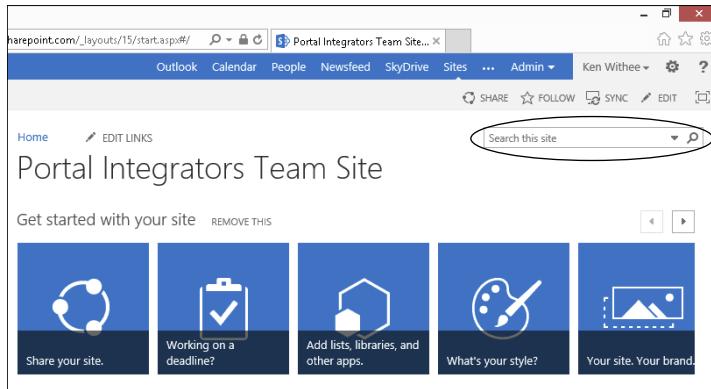
Under the covers, SharePoint search is provided through the Search Service application. The Search Service application crawls through content and creates an index. The index is then used to provide results for a search query. (Service applications are administered in Central Administration.)

When a user types a term in the Search text box and presses Enter, the Search Service application consults the index and returns the results in a web page.

If you add a new document or item but can't find it in a search result, then the search service has not yet crawled and indexed the content. The frequency of crawling is set by a farm administrator in Central Administration.

## Searching for Content

Searching for content in SharePoint is straightforward. Every site contains a Search text box in the upper-right corner, as shown in Figure 19-1.



**Figure 19-1:**  
The Search  
text box on a  
SharePoint  
site.

To search for content, you simply type your term in the text box and click the magnifying glass to the right of the Search text box. The SharePoint search engine performs a query using your terms and displays the results.

Aside from simply typing in search terms, you can instruct the search engine to do special things in a number of ways when it performs the query. For example, you can use special characters and limit the search results based on properties in SharePoint.

## Searching for a string using quotation marks

When you enter multiple terms in the Search text box, the SharePoint search engine looks through the content and returns instances that contain any of those words. If you want a phrase of two or more words (called a *string*), then you need to surround the phrase in quotation marks. For example, the following search query returns any content that contains either the word *Annual* or the word *Report*.

```
Annual Report
```

If you're looking for content where the words are found together, then you would type the search string in quotation marks.

```
"Annual Report"
```

The search engine takes anything within the quotation marks and looks for that entire string in the content.

## Wildcard searches

The asterisk character (\*) can be used to represent a wildcard in a search. For example, maybe you need to find a document that you know begins with *Quarter*, but you can't remember if it is *Quarters* or *Quarterly*. You could use the wildcard character to search for everything that begins with the word *Quarter* as follows:

```
Quarter*
```

This search would return everything that begins with the term *Quarter*, including *Quarterly* and *Quarters*.

Along the same lines, you might know that the first word is *Quarterly*, but you don't know if the second word is *Reports* or *Results*. You would then use the quotation marks along with the wildcard character to tell the search engine that you want all content that contains the word *Quarterly* followed by any word that starts with the letter *R*. The query would be as follows:

```
"Quarterly R*"
```

The wildcard character is a very powerful way to expand your search results when you know only a piece of the puzzle instead of an exact term.

## Including and excluding terms

You can instruct the search engine to only return results that include a certain word by using the + symbol. For example, you could write your search as:

```
Annual Reports +Marketing
```

The plus symbol says that any content that is returned must have the word *Marketing* in it, in addition to either the word *Annual* or the word *Reports*.

One problem with search is that you often get many more results than you can sift through. You can also exclude specific words to trim your search results. For example, you might be searching for product marketing content, but want to exclude any content that contains the word *internal*. You could write your search as follows:

```
"Product Marketing" -internal
```

The search engine then returns all content that contains either the words *Product* or *Marketing* and removes any content that also contains the word *internal*.

## Building compound search queries using Boolean operators

Building compound search queries involves multiple search expressions. You use the Boolean operators to string expression together into compound queries.

The Boolean operators consist of the following:

- ✓ **AND:** Only returns content when both statements are true.
- ✓ **NOT:** Only returns content where the statement is not true. This is the same thing as using the minus sign, as described in the previous section.
- ✓ **OR:** Returns content when one or more of the statements are true.



Typing two words in the Search text box is the same thing as typing the first word followed by OR and then typing the second word. Where Boolean operators become valuable is when they are used with parentheses. Boolean operators are often used in combination with parentheses in order to let the search engine know how to group the query statements, as described in the next section.

## Getting fancy with the parentheses

The parentheses characters, ( and ), are used to build compound search queries that use multiple expressions. For example, you might want to search for two key words and narrow the results down by one type of property or another. How would you write all this together in a search term? Wouldn't the search engine get confused? Well, you use parentheses to tell the search engine exactly what you want it to do and when. For example, say you want to search for any content that has the string *For Dummies* and also contains the word *Reports*. You would write this query as:

```
"For Dummies" OR Reports
```

Now say you also want the query to also only show content where the location property of the content is *Pacific Northwest* or the author is *Ken Withee*. You use parentheses to combine these two aspects:

```
( "For Dummies" OR Reports ) AND (location:"Pacific  
Northwest" OR author:"Ken Withee")
```



Note that what you actually type a long query, it will all be on one line in the Search text box. (The margins in this book required a line break.) When you enter a query into the Search text box, don't press Enter until you're ready to execute your search. Hitting the Enter key is the same as clicking the magnifying glass.

## Finding terms in proximity

You sometimes may need to find content where you know two words are near each other but not necessarily right next to each other. For example, take a look at the following sentence:

The sales figures for China are excellent.

This sentence contains the words *sales* and *China* in close proximity. If you were just to type *sales China* in the Search text box, you would surely get this content, but you also might get a ton of other, irrelevant content. You could find the result you're looking for using the NEAR operator as follows:

```
"sales" NEAR(5) "China"
```

The number in the parentheses lets the NEAR operator know that you want to only turn results where the words are within five words of each other. The number is not required, however. You could just as easily write the query:

```
"sales" NEAR "China"
```

When you do not specify the number of words, the search engine uses eight words as a default. That is, the words are considered near if they are within eight words of each other.

You might come across a scenario where it isn't enough if two terms are near each other, but they should also appear in a particular order. For example, you might want to only return results where the word *sales* is followed by the word *China* within a certain number of words. The Boolean operator that makes this possible is ONEAR.

The ONEAR operator works just like the NEAR operator; however, it assumes an order. The following query tells the search engine to only return content where the word *sales* is followed by the word *China* within five words.

```
"sales" ONEAR (5) "China"
```

## ***Same meaning, different terms***

Did you watch the TV, tele, or television? Did you go to the theater or theatre? Well, you could watch or attend either and it would all mean the same thing. Synonyms are easy for humans to understand. So easy, in fact, that we don't pay many of the blatant ones much thought. Have you ever heard someone answer the question by saying he doesn't watch television but watches TV? If only computers could be so smart.

The WORDS operator is used to let the search engine know when two words mean the same thing. For example, if you're looking for all content that references *California*, you could write the query as follows:

```
WORDS (CA, California)
```

The result is that the search engine knows *CA* and *California* mean the same thing and returns the results accordingly. This begs the question, why not just type the two words in the Search text box? The answer is in the ranking of the results. If the search engine knows these words mean the same thing, then it will return results accordingly. If it doesn't know this, then it might return content that contains both terms *California* and *CA* at the top of the list but have more relevant content that only contains the word *CA* farther down the list. If you use the WORDS operator, the search engine knows that these words mean the same and will provide you the best matches in the results.

## Viewing and Refining Search Results

After a query is run, you are presented with the results page, as shown in Figure 19-2.

The results page has a lot going on, but it's mostly intuitive. When you hover the mouse cursor over a search result, you see a preview of the content and relevant information about the type of content. In Figure 19-2, you can see that the result is a SharePoint site, while in Figure 19-3 the result is an Office Word document.

The left side of the page includes refiners for narrowing down the results. You can click a particular type of content, click a particular author, or narrow the results based on the date the content was modified.

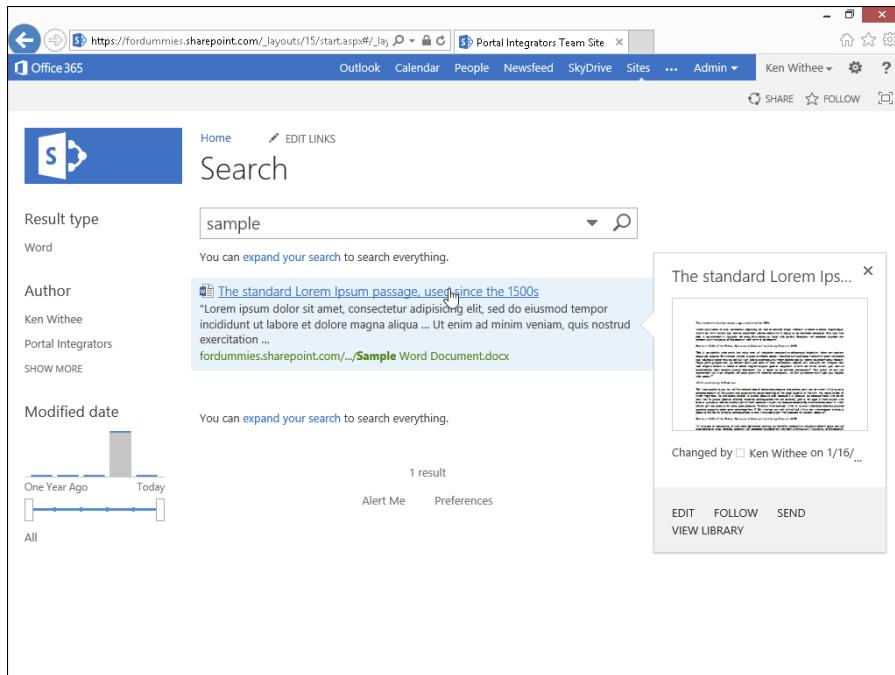


I find narrowing down content based on the last modified date to be an extremely useful feature because stale content can be a real problem in search results.

The screenshot shows a SharePoint search results page with the following details:

- Search Bar:** The search term "sharepoint" is entered.
- Result Type Refiner:** Options include "SharePoint Site", "Team Site", "Web page", and "Word".
- Author Refiner:** Options include "System Account" and "Ken Withee".
- Modified Date Refiner:** Options include "One Year Ago", "Today", and "All".
- Search Results:**
  - Portal Integrators Team Site - Form Templates:** Type Name Form Name Form Description ... There are no items to show in this view of the "Form Templates" document library ... <fordummies.sharepoint.com/FormServerTemplates/.../All Forms.aspx>
  - Portal Integrators Team Site - Site Assets:** Team Site Notebook 11/19/2012 11:44 PM System Account ... Use this library to store files which are included on pages within this site, such as images on Wiki pages ... <fordummies.sharepoint.com/SiteAssets/Forms/AllItems.aspx>
  - How To Use This Library:** How to use this wiki library You ... information about using Microsoft SharePoint Foundation-based wiki libraries, click Help on any Microsoft SharePoint Foundation page.false,1 ... <fordummies.sharepoint.com/SitePages/How To Use This Library.aspx>
  - Get started with your site:** <fordummies.sharepoint.com/GettingStarted.aspx>
  - Get started with your site:** <fordummies.sharepoint.com/sites/.../GettingStarted.aspx>
- Preview and Details:** A preview of the "Get started with your site" result is shown, along with a "Get started with your site" link and its URL.
- Actions:** Buttons for "OPEN", "FOLLOW", and "SEND" are visible at the bottom right.

**Figure 19-2:**  
The search  
results  
page.



**Figure 19-3:**  
An Office  
Word  
document in  
the search  
results  
page.

## Making Search Your Users' Best Friend

Finding the right content can be an exercise in frustration. Companies like Google were founded on the basis of indexing the Internet and providing access through search. Before Google, the Internet was organized into pockets of content on services such as AOL. After Google roared onto the scene, you could just browse to [www.google.com](http://www.google.com) and type in what you were looking for in the Search text box, and presto, it was usually right there in the first few pages of results. How did Google do it? It used specialized algorithms to index all the content on the Internet.

Search has come a long way since the early days of Google (though Google still dominates). SharePoint search is a platform designed to let your users find content in, and outside, of your SharePoint environment. Right out of the box, SharePoint indexes content in your SharePoint sites and returns the results. Many organizations don't take search any further than the out-of-box experience, but they should.

As a site administrator, you can tweak the SharePoint search results based on the nuances of your company. For example, maybe you have a site for call center representatives. You know they're always searching for product

documentation, so you don't want the official product documentation sites to appear mixed down in with the rest of the content that just happens to mention the products. You can configure SharePoint search to promote the official pages above other pages. You can even create related searches that will show up right next to the search results that users see. All of this is made possible using query rules.

A *query rule* is a rule that SharePoint search uses when processing a search query. Well, that seems fairly obvious by the name. In other words, a query rule allows you, as a site administrator, the ability to instruct the search engine how to respond to certain queries.



The search query functionality provides the same result as the Best Bets functionality of SharePoint 2010. The Best Bets functionality has been extended to include related search blocks and result ranking. The entire feature set is now made possible in search queries.

Here's an example to help you understand how a query rule works. This example consists of two parts. The first is that you want a Marketing app to show up whenever someone searches for the words *marketing* or *sales*. In this example, the Marketing app is a library that contains all the sanctioned sales and marketing material of the organization. The second part is that you want a result block added to the results whenever someone searches for *marketing* or *sales*. A *results block* is just a parallel query of your choosing that will show up in the search results.

To promote the Marketing app whenever a person searches for the words *marketing* or *sales*, follow these steps:

- 1. Navigate to the Site Settings page by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Settings.**

The Site Settings page appears.

- 2. In the Search section, click the Query Rules link.**

The Manage Query Rules page appears.

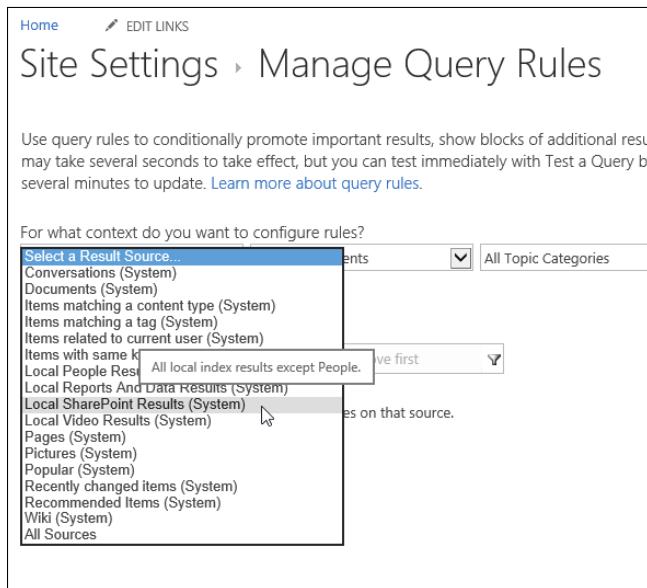
If you're a site collection administrator, you also see the Search Query Rules link in the Site Collection Administration section of the Site Settings page. The difference between these two Query Rules settings is that one affects only the site, and the other affects every site in the entire site collection. Because in this example, you only want to build the query for your particular site, click the Query Rules link in the Search section of the Site Settings page.

- 3. Click the Result Source drop-down list and select Local SharePoint Results (System), as shown in Figure 19-4.**

The Query Rules load for the Local SharePoint Results source.

The Result Source drop-down list enables you to set the context of the query rule you're creating. Notice that there are many different result source options. These allow you to create finely tuned query rules. For example, you might want to create a rule for people search or conversations. In this example, you want only results for the local SharePoint site, so you choose Local SharePoint Results (System).

**Figure 19-4:**  
Selecting  
Local  
SharePoint  
Results from  
the Manage  
Query Rules  
page.



**4. Click the New Query Rule button.**

The Add Query Rule page is displayed.

**5. Enter a name for the rule in the Name text box, and then provide the search terms *marketing* and *sales* with a semicolon as a separator in the Search Term text box.**

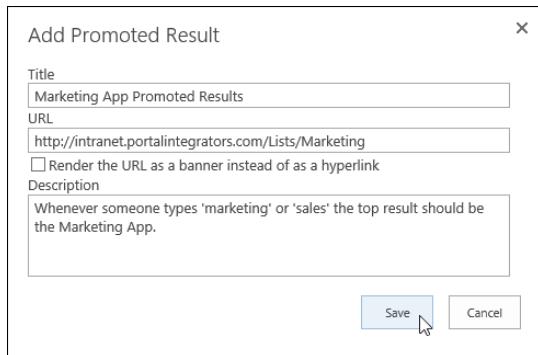
The exact text you should type is

marketing; sales

**6. Click the Add Promoted Result link.**

The Add Promoted Result dialog box is displayed, as shown in Figure 19-5.

A *promoted result* is the same as a Best Bet in SharePoint 2010. When someone searches for the exact words *marketing* or *sales*, the promoted result appears at the top of the results page.



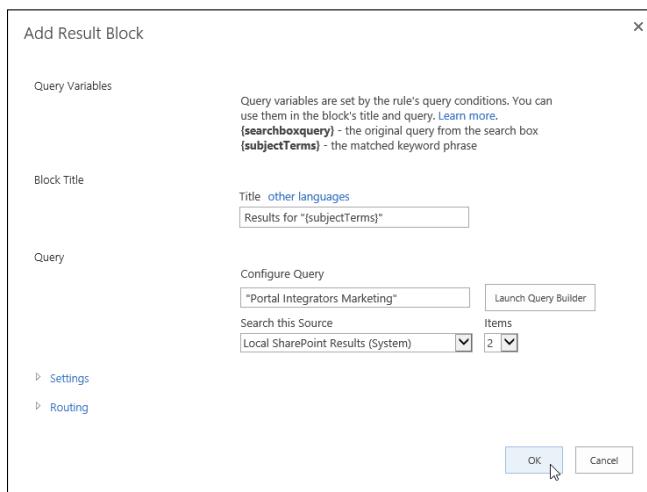
**Figure 19-5:**  
The Add Promoted Result dialog box.

7. Enter a title for your promoted result in the Title text box, provide the URL to the desired content in the URL text box, and type a description of the promoted result in the Description text box.

In this example, I typed Marketing App Promoted Result in the Title text box. The Marketing app is an app created from the Document Library App template with the name Marketing.

8. Click Save to save the promoted result to the query rule.
9. Click the Add Result Block link to add a related search to the results of a search that uses the specified words (*marketing* or *sales* in this example).

The Add Result Block is displayed, as shown in Figure 19-6.



**Figure 19-6:**  
The Add Result Block dialog box.

**10. In the Title text box, enter the title for the result block.**

The default is to show the search terms that were used for the result block.

**11. In Configure Query text box, enter the search terms you want to use for the result block.**

Think of these terms as if you were searching the SharePoint site and wanted to include this second search in a search for *marketing* or *sales*. In this example, I use the search query *Portal Integrators Marketing*, which will return all content with this exact string.

**12. Click OK to save the result block, and then click Save to save the query rule.**

Now when a user types the search term *marketing* or *sales* into the Search text box for the site, he sees a promoted Marketing app at the top of the page and the result block for a parallel search with the words “*Portal Integrators Marketing*.” Figure 19-7 shows the result.

The screenshot shows a SharePoint search results page. At the top, there's a blue header bar with the SharePoint logo, the URL https://fordummies.sharepoint.com/\_layouts/15/start.aspx#/j8, and a search bar containing "Portal Integrators Team Site". Below the header, the page title is "Search". On the left, there are filters for "Result type" (Excel, PowerPoint, Web page, Word), "Author" (Ken Withee, Portal Integrators), and "Modified date" (One Year Ago, Today, All). The main search results area has a search bar with "marketing" and a magnifying glass icon. Below it, a link to the "Marketing App" is shown. A callout box highlights the "Marketing App" link with the URL "fordummies.sharepoint.com/Marketing/". Further down, a results block for "Portal Integrators Marketing" is displayed, showing a link to "Portal Integrators Team Site - Marketing" with the URL "fordummies.sharepoint.com/Marketing/Campaign...". Another callout box highlights this link. At the bottom, there's a snippet of text from a document titled "The standard Lorem Ipsum passage, used since the 1500s" with the URL "fordummies.sharepoint.com/.../Portal Integrators Marketing Guidelin...".

**Figure 19-7:**  
The search results page with a marketing/ sales query rule.



The example only covers a small portion of the possibilities with query rules. I recommend playing around with them and tweaking them to provide just the right results for your users. As users begin to search on the site, you can see what terms they type in the Search text box and adapt the query rules to suit their needs. From your users' perspectives, the search will get better and better as time progresses, even if you're the wizard behind the curtain pulling the strings to make it happen.

## *Removing Content from Search Results*

By default, items and documents in apps appear in search results. You may not want these items to appear in search results. To keep items and document in apps out of search results, follow these steps:

1. **Navigate to the app that you want to remove from search by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Contents.**

You see a list of all apps.

2. **Open the app settings page by clicking the List or Library tab of the Ribbon and then clicking List Settings or Library Settings.**

The app settings page appears.

3. **Click the Advanced Settings link in the General Settings section.**

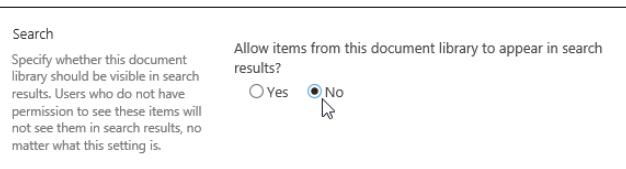
The Advanced Settings page appears.

4. **In the Search section, select the No radio button, as shown in Figure 19-8.**

5. **Click OK to save the settings.**

The content of the app will not be indexed the next time the search engine indexes content.

**Figure 19-8:**  
Removing  
the con-  
tents of an  
app from  
SharePoint  
search  
results.



You can view which properties are searched by clicking the Schema link in the Search section of the Site Settings page. The Search column shows whether the property is used in building the search index.



The Search Service Application administrator can also remove specific results from the search index or results. This is accomplished in the Search Service Application Management page. Click the Crawl Log, find the result to remove, click the ellipsis button for the item, and choose Remove the Item from the Index. Likewise, a URL can be removed from the results by clicking the Search Result Removal page in the Queries and Results section of the Search Service Application management page in Central Administration and entering the URL that should be removed from the search result.

## Reviewing Search Analytics

SharePoint provides a number of usage reports for search. These include reports such as Number of Queries, Top Queries, Abandoned Queries, No Result Queries, and Query Rule Usage. The good news is that the reports are based in Excel, so you can download them, open them in Excel, and use the data to present in nice graphs for executives. The reports can be found in the Search Service Application in Central Administration. Click the Usage Reports link in the Diagnostics section.

**Note:** You must have access to Central Administration and be a Search Service Application administrator to access these search usage reports.

In addition to the search usage reports, you can also check out the view usage for content in SharePoint to help you refine your search queries. You access the view usage statistics by clicking the Most Popular Items button on the List or Library tab of an app.

## Adding a Search Center Site

You can configure search for your site and settings at the site collection level and point results to a specific Search Center site. A *Search Center site* is a SharePoint site that has been created using a search template. By creating a Search Center site, you have the ability to customize it for your particular needs.

SharePoint 2013 provides two site templates that are built for delivering search results. You can use these templates to create a branded search experience or to customize how results appear. The Search Center site templates are:

- ✓ **Basic Search Center:** This template delivers a stripped-down search experience in one page. This site template uses Web Part pages and is essentially a team site specialized for search.
- ✓ **Enterprise Search Center:** This template provides multiple pages for displaying search results. This site template uses publishing pages, which makes it easier to brand and customize than a page based on the Basic Search Center template.

Follow the steps in Chapter 4 to create a new site using one of the Search Center templates.

To configure your site collection to use your Search Center site:

**1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings.**

The Site Settings page appears.

**2. In the Site Collection Administration section, click the Search Settings link.**

The Search Settings page appears, as shown in Figure 19-9.

The screenshot shows the 'Search Settings' page under 'Site Collection Administration'. At the top, there's a note about configuring search behavior for the site collection. Below that, the 'Enter a Search Center URL:' field is empty. A placeholder example is provided: '/SearchCenter/Pages' or 'http://server/sites/SearchCenter/Pages'. There are two radio button options for 'Which search results page should queries be sent to?': 'Use the same results page settings as my parent.' (selected) and 'Send queries to a custom results page URL.' Below this, a 'Results page URL:' field is empty, with a placeholder example: '/SearchCenter/Pages/results.aspx' or 'http://server/sites/SearchCenter/Pages/results.aspx'. Another radio button option is 'Turn on the drop-down menu inside the search box, and use the first Search Navigation node as the destination results page.' Under 'Configure Search Navigation', it says 'Search Navigation allows users to move quickly between search experiences listed in the Navigation.' A 'Quick Launch' control is mentioned. Below this, a table shows navigation items: 'Move Up', 'Move Down', 'Edit...', 'Delete', and 'Add Link...'. The table displays 'No items found.' and 'Selected Item' (empty). The status bar at the bottom says 'No item currently selected.'

**Figure 19-9:**  
Configure  
search  
settings.

**3. Enter the URL of the Search Center site in the Search Center URL text box.**

Your search center doesn't have to be in the same site collection as the sites that are using it for search. You can create a new site collection using one of the Search Center templates and configure multiple site collections to use that same search center.

**4. Click OK to save the settings.**

After making the change, you need to wait up to 30 minutes before the change is reflected in search.

After the Search Center site is in place and configured in Search Settings, all results are directed to the search site. It takes some time for the changes to take effect, however, because a SharePoint scheduled process has to update the configuration for the site. If you don't see your changes right away, check back an hour later. You can then develop the search site to meet the specific needs of your organization.



The settings I describe in this section set the default experience for all Search text boxes in your site. Individual Search text boxes found on the master page, in page layouts, or placed directly on web pages can be configured to use the default settings or have their own custom settings.

You aren't restricted to using the Search Web Parts in the search center. You can create your own search results page and add the Search Web Parts to the page.

## Chapter 20

# Archiving Documents and Records

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Creating information management policies
- ▶ Setting up a records center and content organizer rules
- ▶ Enabling in-place record declaration
- ▶ Discovering and placing records on hold

1

In SharePoint 2013, the Records Center is a useful and powerful tool for declaring holds and managing records. First, it's *metadata-driven*, which means that all policies for automatic declaration, retention, and disposition can be based on metadata. Second, it's capable of *hierarchical archiving*, meaning that each level or folder where documents are routed, based on their metadata, can inherit from its parent or have separate policies. Third, you can manage the entire lifecycle of the document in a single policy, from declaration through disposition. Fourth, administrators can allow users to declare records outside of the official Records Center, allowing records to be kept where they are actively being accessed and updated.

In this chapter, you explore the records management functionality in SharePoint 2013. You discover how to define terms, create information management policies, and set up a site based on the Records Center template. Finally, this chapter covers some of the finer points of records management, such as using the Content Organizer tool and placing holds on content.

## *Defining the Terms*

SharePoint 2013 provides many records management features, including the Managed Metadata Service, Content Types, Content Organizer, Policies, Document Sets, and Records Management. The following list is a quick guide to these terms and what functionality they provide:

- ✓ **Managed Metadata** ensures a common vocabulary and a central place for terminology used in your company, which can be managed centrally or by departments.

- ✓ **Content Types** scale across the enterprise with SharePoint 2013 and are not limited to each site collection. This means you have a much more scalable way of controlling and managing the types of content people can create, the metadata on those content types, and the information policies associated with them.
- ✓ **Content Organizer** enables you to take routing documents and content beyond content types. You can create rules based on one or more pieces of metadata on the content. Essentially, this simplifies routing from the user's perspective, and content gets routed to the right place without too much forethought.
- ✓ **Information Management Policies** can be applied to the content type or the location of the content, which can become part of the policy. You can expire record and non-record content in the same policy.

With these features, declaring records, holds, and policies is scalable and powerful in SharePoint 2013.

## *Creating Information Management Policies*

Here are four different types of policies that you can set up in a single information management policy:

- ✓ A **Retention** policy enables you to manage how items, documents, team mailboxes, and sites are stored on the server and what happens to them after the retention stage expires. A simple example of this would be that if a document has not been modified in one year, its version history is deleted.
- ✓ An **Auditing** policy enables you to track what happens to an item at particular stages as an item is being moved or copied, opened, downloaded, viewed, checked in and out, and deleted and restored, so you have a full history of who has done what to an item.
- ✓ A **Barcodes** policy assigns a barcode to each item, allowing you to incorporate the barcode into your tracking of the item. You can optionally specify that you want users to insert a barcode before saving or printing.
- ✓ A **Labels** policy allows you to insert important and contextual information about the document when it is printed.

As shown in Figure 20-1, all these policies can be part of a single information management policy.

To create a new information management policy, you can start from an app or content type. Content type retention policies are the most powerful because they scale across the farm, but for the purposes of this example, I

stick to a retention policy in a Library app. (If you want to follow along with a content type, simply browse to that content type in the site collection's Site Content Types gallery.)

The screenshot shows the 'Information Management Policy Settings' page for a document library. It includes sections for Retention, Auditing, Barcodes, and Labels, each with an 'Enable' checkbox. A note about overriding content type policies with folder-based retention is also present.

Setting	Action
Retention	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Retention
Auditing	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Auditing
Barcodes	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Barcodes
Labels	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Labels

**Note:** If the Library and Folder Based Retention feature is active, list administrators can override content type policies with their own retention schedules. To prevent this, deactivate the feature on the site collection.

**Figure 20-1:**  
Creating  
a new  
information  
management  
policy.



Site collection administrators can turn off this feature of allowing app-based retention policies.

Follow these steps to create a new information management policy:

1. From the app settings page (Library Settings or List Settings), or from the content type's properties, click the Information Management Policy Settings link.
2. Click either the item or the folder; if you're on the content type, you don't have to do anything.

For Document Library apps, you can have the policy inherit from the content type, or you can choose to create a new policy just for the app.



These policy pages look a bit different if you're using a list-based app or a list content type because you don't have as much to manage, but they have the same essential functionality.

3. After you're on the policy settings page (refer to Figure 20-1), give the policy a description and a statement by typing in the Administrative Description and Policy Statement text boxes, respectively, and then click Enable Retention.

I just talk about retention here because it's the most interesting, and the other policy settings are straightforward.

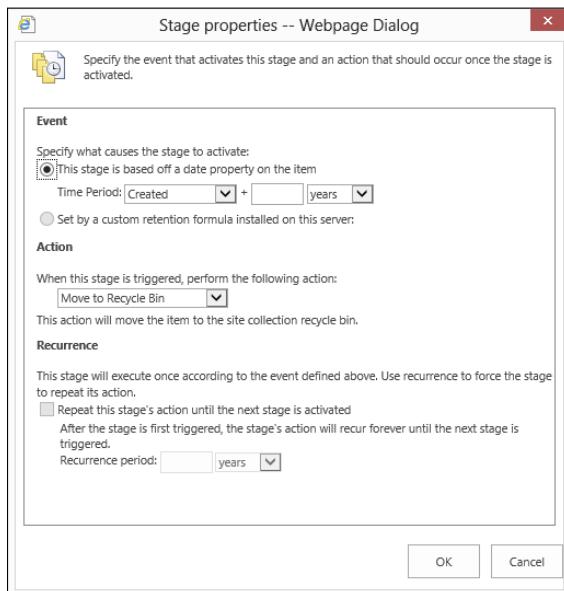


After you click on Enable Retention, you see some extra information, a link, and some options. For Document Library apps, you can treat non-records and records the same way if you choose, or different stages for handling records. Whichever you choose, you should define at least one retention stage for either records, non-records, or both.

If you don't define a stage, the retention policy will not do anything.

4. Click the Add a Retention Stage link in the new section that appears after you enable retention.

A dialog box appears, shown in Figure 20-2, that has a couple of different options.



**Figure 20-2:**  
Adding a  
retention  
stage.

5. Choose the Event that triggers the retention by selecting the This Stage Is Based Off a Date Property on the Item radio button, select an option from the Time Period drop-down list, and enter a number and select Years, Months, or Days from the drop-down list.

From the Time Period drop-down list, you can select Created, Modified, or Declared Record. This determines the amount of time the stage lasts.

**6. In the Action section, select an option from the When This Stage Is Triggered, Perform the Following Action drop-down list.**

You can choose from a variety of actions:

- Move to Recycle Bin
- Permanently Delete
- Transfer to Another Location
- Start a Workflow
- Skip to the Next Stage
- Declare Record
- Delete Previous Drafts
- Delete all Previous Versions

You can also set the action to recur, but this depends on the action you've specified previously. You can't, for example, keep deleting the same document over and over again, but you can keep purging previous drafts or all previous versions until the next stage is active.

**7. Click OK to close the dialog box, and then click OK again to save the policy.**

So what does this all have to do with archiving and records management, you may wonder? Retention policies (and the other types of information management policies you can create in SharePoint) provide a direct way of managing records and non-records alike and give you a lot more control over the who, what, when, why, and how of documents, items, and content types stored in your SharePoint site. In fact, one of those retention policy actions is Transfer to Another Location, and that location can be a Records Center.

## *Setting Up a Records Center*

A *Records Center* is a special type of SharePoint site template. Using a site based on the Records Center template, you can

- ✓ Have more than one Records Center in your farm
- ✓ Move a document to the Records Center instead of creating a copy, and put a link in the old location that points to the new location in the Records Center
- ✓ Route more intelligently based on content or item properties

- ✓ Have better control over the naming of the folders when items are routed to the Records Center.
- ✓ Allow users to create records in place and not have to use the Records Center at all

With all these improvements, it's time to create a Records Center and start setting it up. Because a Records Center is a site template, you simply create a new site based on that template. (Refer to Chapter 4 for more information on how to create a new site.)

After you have created a Records Center, your home page looks like Figure 20-3.

Click the Settings gear icon and choose Manage Records Center. On this new page, you see a lot of information to help you set up your Records Center. Read the steps about tasks and file plans because those are much like standard SharePoint functionality, such as creating Library apps, looking at and/or creating content types, and designing the home page. I talk about Content Organizer rules in the next section.



You can set up Send To links in Central Administration for users to send documents to a Records Center. In the Action section of the Stage Properties dialog box, you specify three options: Copy, Move, and Move and Leave a Link.

**Figure 20-3:**  
The Records Center home page.

## Using the Content Organizer

The Content Organizer, and specifically the rules that it manages, is where all the intelligence happens in the Records Center. Rules allow you to control where records go after they are submitted to the Records Center and what properties those items have. The absolute best thing about the Content Organizer is that it allows users not to have to think about their own content — they just declare it a record and their job is done.

Figure 20-4 shows a new, blank Content Organizer rule. You get to this page by clicking the Add Item link in the Content Organizer Rules list. (You navigate to this page by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Manage Records Center.)

A rule has five different categories — Rule Name, Rule Status and Priority, Submission’s Content Type, Conditions, and Target Location (the last two are shown in Figure 20-5). Rule Name and Rule Status and Priority are self-explanatory, so I focus on explaining the other categories.

The screenshot shows a SharePoint page titled 'Content Organizer Rules: New Rule'. On the left, there's a navigation bar with 'Libraries', 'Recent', 'Drop Off Library', and 'Site Contents'. The main content area has several sections:

- Rule Name \***: A text input field labeled 'Name:' with a placeholder 'Type a name'.
- Status:** Radio buttons for 'Active' (selected) and 'Inactive (will not run on incoming content)'.
- Priority:** A dropdown menu set to '5 (Medium)'.
- Submission's Content Type \***: A section with 'Group' (set to 'Business Intelligence') and 'Type' (a dropdown menu set to 'Select a content type...'). It also includes 'Alternate names:' and a checkbox for 'This content type has alternate names in other sites'.

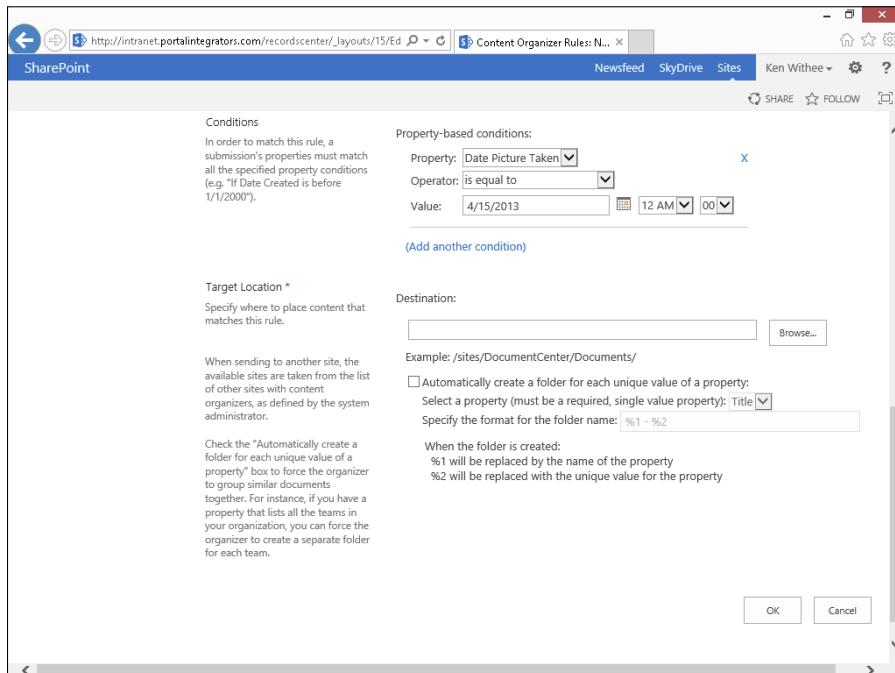
At the bottom, there's a note: 'Note: Adding this rule will affect documents of various content types to be archived.'

**Figure 20-4:**  
Creating a  
new Content  
Organizer  
rule.

Submission's Content Type may seem simple, but it has the ability to make matches across multiple content type names, so you can check the This Content Type Has Alternate Names in Other Sites check box and add those names to the list. What's really powerful here is that you can specify the catch-all asterisk (\*) and sweep up all the content types based on the base content type for this rule. For example, you might want to include the rule for all legal-based content types that might have multiple names. You might have content types called Legal Documents, Briefs, and Cases. All of these are legal-based content types and should be included.

Conditions allow you to devise some logic based on the properties of the item submitted. Take the Picture content type, for example. As shown in Figure 20-5, you can choose from one of the properties of the content type, such as Date Picture Taken, and set the condition to a date at the end of last year, so all pictures can be moved to a location based on when they were taken.

Also notice in Figure 20-5 that you can have multiple conditions by clicking the Add Another Condition link. So you could have a rule that routes pictures taken during the 2011 or 2010 calendar year.



**Figure 20-5:**  
Adding a  
condition  
based on  
a property  
value.

Target Location, the last item for your new rule, is where you want to send these items. Remember that these rules are run on items that are submitted to the Records Center. So items are held in the Drop Off Library until the Content Organizer has a chance to evaluate the content based on the rules set up for the Records Center. That's a long-winded way of asking, where do you want these documents to go?

You can specify another site that has a Content Organizer configured, or you can route the items that meet the conditions to a Library app in the Records Center itself. You can also have the Content Organizer group items with the same properties together in the same folder, and you have control over the name of that folder. Based on a property of the content type, the folder name includes, by default, the name of the property and its value. So if, for example, you had a custom picture content type that included the employee's department name, and the column on the content type was called Dept, your folder would be named Dept -Claims Adjusters if the user worked in the Claims Adjusters department.

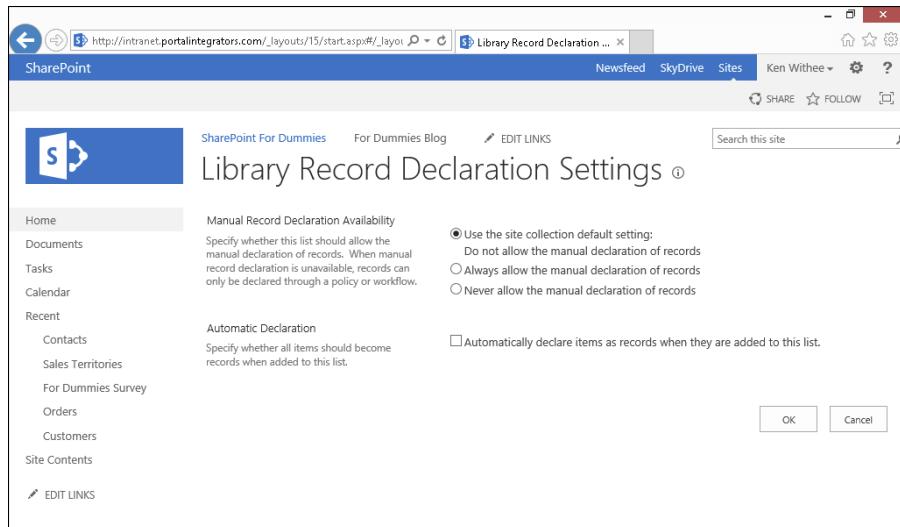


Having (or creating) the right columns on the content types that you want to manage is critical for getting the rules to function the way you need them to. So spend some extra effort to identify and get the right content types in place for your important documents and files. Not only will it help you maintain some sort of control over how content is created, but it also helps you establish good policies for organizing your records.

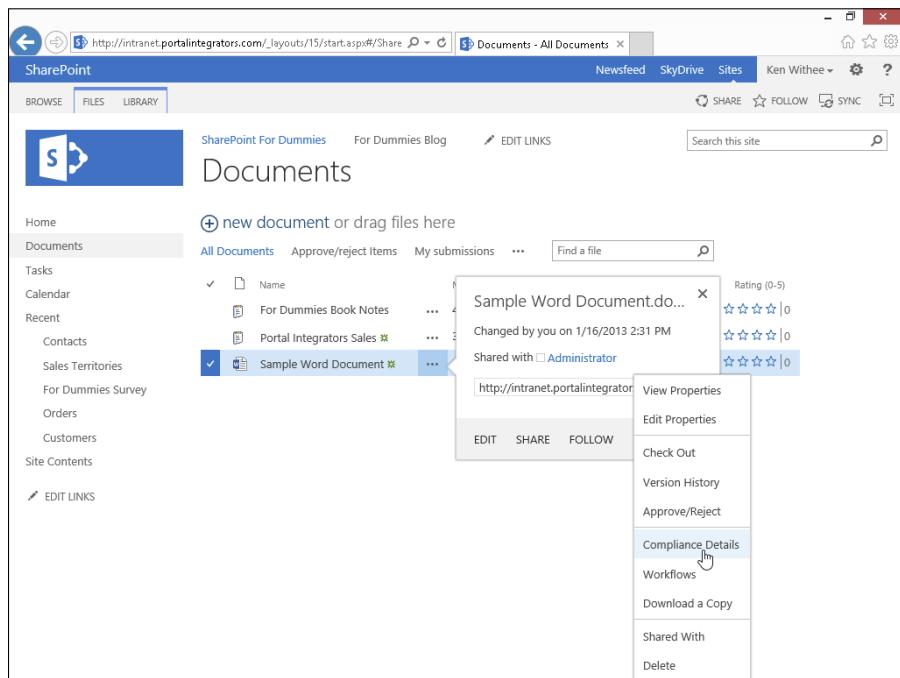
## Managing Records in Place

In the effort to make records management more flexible, SharePoint 2013 supports managing records outside the Records Center, on any document and on any site. The In Place Records Management feature must be activated at the site collection level. After it is, each list-based or library-based app gets a Record Declaration Settings link on the app settings page. As shown in Figure 20-6, the settings on this page enable you to control whether and how records are declared, and you can even declare records automatically as items are added to the Document Library app (not that it is used very often).

If records are allowed to be declared in the Library app, you click the ellipsis for the document and select Compliance Details, as shown in Figure 20-7. The Compliance Details dialog box includes a link to declare the document as a record if records are allowed to be declared in the app. Clicking it shows a warning about locking down the item for editing. After you click OK, it makes it a record. Users can revert a record to a document from this same dialog box, and if anyone tries to edit the document while it's a record, they receive an error message saying that it's checked out by the system account.



**Figure 20-6:**  
Controlling  
in-place  
records  
declaration.



**Figure 20-7:**  
Declaring a  
record  
in-place.



The powerful feature of in-place records management is that it keeps the documents available for users to reference without taking them out of the context of the app and site where they were originally created. But the record still shows up on records reports and can be managed centrally.

## Placing Records on Litigation Hold

After you have all these retention policies and records being managed based on rules, you may have to temporarily suspend these policies. This is typically due to pending litigation where records matching a certain criteria must be preserved until the litigation or court matter is settled.

The first thing you have to do is create the hold. You can do this in the Records Center, or you can do it at the site collection level. Figure 20-8 shows the Hold section of the Site Settings page for a Records Center site. Holds are easy to create and need a title, description, and an owner. Make sure to create at least one of these for each litigation or court matter that is required.

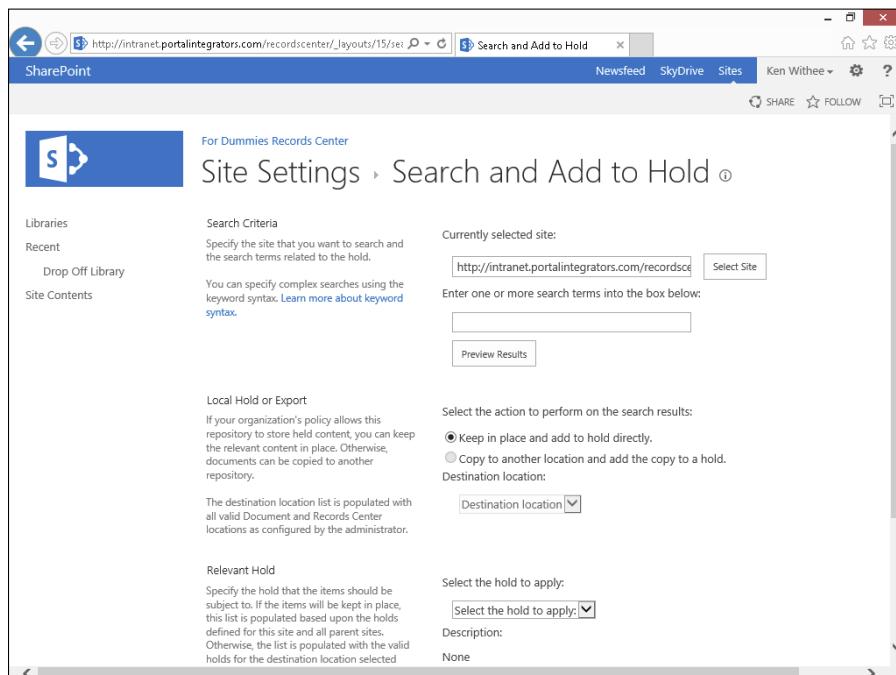
The screenshot shows the SharePoint Site Settings page for a 'For Dummies Records Center' site. The left navigation pane includes links for Libraries, Recent, Drop Off Library, Site Contents, Site Administration, RSS, Sites and workspaces, Workflow settings, Content Organizer Settings, Content Organizer Rules, Site Closure and Deletion, Term store management, Popularity Trends, Content and structure, Manage Records Center, Content and structure logs, and Translation Status. The main content area lists Site Settings categories: Users and Permissions, Site columns, Site content types, Master pages, Composed looks, Look and Feel, Design Manager, Title, description, and logo, Device Channels, Tree view, Change the look, Import Design Package, Navigation, Site Actions, Manage site features, Reset to site definition, Delete this site, and Site Collection Administration (Go to top level site settings). A callout bubble highlights the 'Holds' link under the Site Actions section, which is part of a group labeled 'Hold', 'Discover and hold content', and 'Holds Reports'.

**Figure 20-8:**  
Managing holds and eDiscovery at the site collection level.

The more interesting part is the Discover and Hold Content link. As shown in Figure 20-9, there are a few different parts to discovering content to put on hold. The first one, Search Criteria, allows you to select a site and enter search terms much the same way that you regularly search for content in SharePoint. Click Preview Results after typing in one or more terms to see the results in a new window.

After you have your search terms down, you can choose whether you want the items that come back in the search results to be kept in place and added to a local hold or copied to another location. If you choose another location, most likely that will be the Records Center site, which might be the best way to put items on hold without alerting users.

The last thing you need to specify is the hold that you're going to put the records in. This ensures that the documents do not expire or are otherwise altered due to an information management policy, and it also ensures that users can't "accidentally" delete the items.



**Figure 20-9:**  
Configuring  
eDiscovery  
and placing  
items on  
hold.

## **Chapter 21**

---

# **Gaining Total Control with Workflow**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Getting familiar with SharePoint workflow
  - ▶ Figuring out SharePoint Designer
  - ▶ Understanding how approvals can work with workflow
- 

**A**ny organization is made up of processes. Some processes might be very simple, such as checking an e-mail, responding, and then filing it in a folder. Other processes are more complex and might involve multiple people and computer systems. In any case, processes are at the core of an organization. SharePoint has the capability to manage processes through workflow.

In this chapter, you explore workflow in SharePoint. You discover the two different workflow platforms in SharePoint 2013. You find out how they work and how to develop workflows. Finally, you see firsthand how a workflow can be used as an approval system for documents.

## ***Getting Up to Speed with SharePoint Workflow***

A SharePoint workflow can be used to manage a human-centric process or a computer-centric process. For example, you might have a process that involves five people working partly in parallel and partly in sequence. If these five people are all in the same room and accomplish the process in one sitting, then using a workflow to coordinate their activities wouldn't make much sense. If the people are dispersed in different offices or cubes or the process takes place over a period of time, then a workflow can be used to coordinate and keep the process on track.

In addition, a process might interact with other computer systems. For example, you might have a process that needs to pull customer data from a Customer Relationship Management (CRM) system. The CRM data might then need to be used by multiple people as the processes proceed. SharePoint workflow can handle both types of processes. Many workflows can be developed quickly without writing code, but other more advanced workflows require programmers.



The reason SharePoint workflow is so adaptable is that it is built on the Windows Workflow Foundation portion of the Microsoft .NET platform. What this means is that the possibilities are limitless because you can always have a programmer write workflow code to do just about anything you can imagine and interact with any system.

The primary tool used to develop a SharePoint workflow is called SharePoint Designer (SPD). SharePoint Designer includes a no-code interface for developing workflows using components such as actions, tasks, steps, loops, and goto statements. When you need more advanced capabilities, you use a tool called Visual Studio to extend workflows beyond what SharePoint Designer can handle.

SharePoint Designer 2013 has changed course dramatically from previous versions of the tool. Previous versions of SPD included functionality for visual design of Web Parts and conditional formatting. Those portions of SPD have been removed, and the tool has moved into a workflow development tool. For example, you can now build a workflow visually using the Visual Designer interface. The Visual Designer interface leverages Office Visio and allows you to drag and drop workflow shapes in order to create the workflow.



In order to use the Visual Designer, you must have Office Visio Professional 2013 installed on the same computer as SharePoint Designer 2013. The Visual Designer is known as a *light-up feature*, which means that it only lights up (becomes available) when Visio is installed.

In addition to SPD, you can also use a tool called Visual Studio to develop a SharePoint workflow. Visual Studio is an Integrated Development Environment (IDE), and it's primarily used by programmers. Using Visual Studio, you can make a workflow do anything you can imagine. Be warned though, it isn't a tool for the faint of heart. You need a solid understanding of .NET programming to develop your own custom SharePoint workflow using Visual Studio.

## ***Understanding Workflow in SharePoint 2013***

As the march to the cloud continues, technologies are changing to accommodate this march; workflow is a prime example. SharePoint 2013 introduces

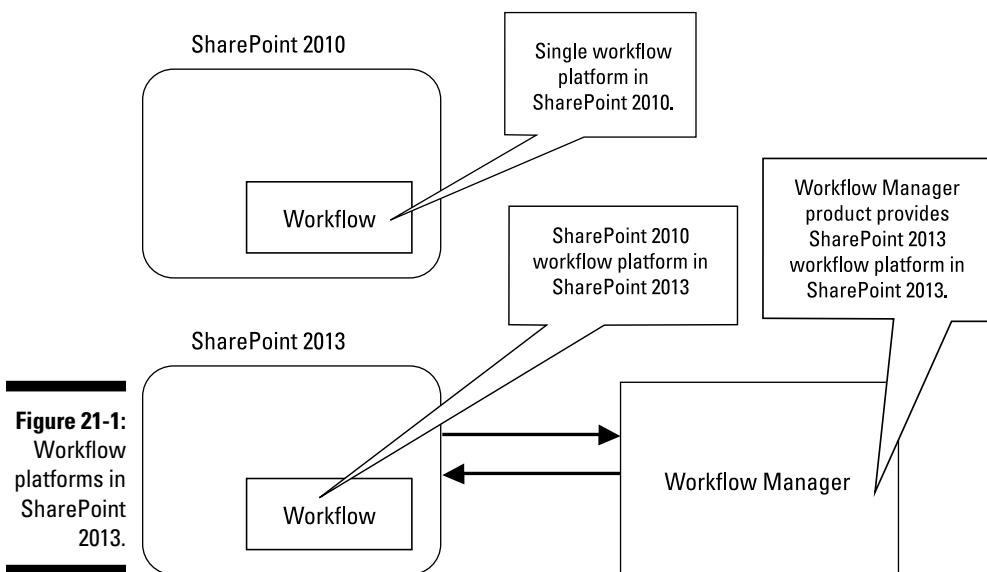
a new workflow platform named, aptly enough, SharePoint 2013 Workflow Platform. The new workflow platform is a separate (but free!) product from SharePoint and requires its own download, installation, and configuration. The workflow product is called Workflow Manager, and when it's configured to work with a SharePoint 2013 farm, it provides the SharePoint 2013 Workflow Platform.

In addition to the new workflow platform is a legacy workflow platform. The legacy workflow platform is the same workflow that shipped with SharePoint 2010, the SharePoint 2010 Workflow Platform. The legacy platform continues to install in the same manner it did in the previous version of SharePoint. That is, when you install SharePoint, you are also installing the legacy workflow platform.

Confused by these two platforms? Just remember that SharePoint 2013 has two workflow platforms. A new platform called SharePoint 2013 Workflow and a legacy platform called SharePoint 2010 Workflow. The 2013 platform is made available by a product called Workflow Manager. The 2010 platform installs when you install SharePoint 2013, just like previous editions of SharePoint. Figure 21-1 outlines the two platforms.



If you install SharePoint 2013, install SharePoint Designer 2013, and go to create a workflow, you only see the SharePoint 2010 Workflow Platform as an option in the platform drop-down list. After you install Workflow Manager and configure it to work with the SharePoint farm, you then see another option called SharePoint 2013 Workflow Platform. If you don't see the 2013 platform, then Workflow Manager has not been configured to work with your SharePoint 2013 farm.



**Figure 21-1:**  
Workflow  
platforms in  
SharePoint  
2013.

## Understanding the differences between workflow platforms

The SharePoint 2010 platform is built on the Windows Workflow Foundation components of the .NET 3.5 framework. The SharePoint 2013 platform is built on the Windows Workflow Foundation components of the .NET 4.5 framework. The 2013 platform is built as a Windows service and is designed to handle massive workloads from multiple SharePoint environments. What this means is that it was designed specifically to work with the cloud.

In addition, because Workflow Manager (the service that provides workflow) is separate from SharePoint, it can sit at the center of an organization's ecosystem and provide workflow service to many different applications. In this sense, SharePoint is a customer of Workflow Manager, but it doesn't have to be the only customer. An organization might have third-party applications or in-house applications that also utilize the workflow capabilities of Workflow Manager.

## Getting Up to Speed on SharePoint Designer

SharePoint Designer is a client application that you use to connect to your SharePoint site and build workflows (among other things). When you open a SharePoint site, you first open your web browser, and your web browser connects to the SharePoint site located on a server. SharePoint Designer works in the same manner. You download it, install it, and then open and connect it to a site.

You can download SharePoint Designer from the Microsoft Download Center located at [www.microsoft.com/download](http://www.microsoft.com/download). Make sure to search for *SharePoint Designer 2013* and download the latest version (and any relevant updates).

Microsoft has guidance on installing SharePoint Designer here: <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/jj554671.aspx>.

## Connecting to a SharePoint site

After you have SharePoint Designer 2013 installed on your computer, you're ready to connect it to a SharePoint site. To connect SharePoint Designer to a SharePoint site, follow these steps:

### 1. Open SharePoint Designer 2013.

The SharePoint Designer 2013 application opens on your computer.

**2. Click the Open Site button.**

The Open Site dialog box opens.

**3. Type the URL to your SharePoint 2013 site in the Site Name text box.**

Make sure to include `http://` in the URL of the site. For example, `http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/sites/site1` would be what you would type for a site called site1.

The dialog box refreshes and shows you all the contents of the site. This includes any subsites. This is useful if you can't remember the subsite URL. You could type the parent site, such as **http://intranet.portalintegrators.com**, and then browse to the subsite named site1.



After you have connected to a site once, you see the Site URL as a button to automatically connect again below the Open Site button in SharePoint Designer. You don't need to type the URL each time you want to connect.

**4. Click Open to open the site in SharePoint Designer.**

When you connect to a SharePoint site, you see the navigational components along the left side, as shown in Figure 21-2.

The screenshot shows the SharePoint Designer 2013 interface. On the left, the Navigation pane lists site objects like SharePoint For Dummies, Lists and Libraries, Workflows, Site Pages, Site Assets, Content Types, Site Columns, External Content Types, Data Sources, Master Pages, Site Groups, Subsites, and All Files. The main workspace displays several sections: Site Information (Title: SharePoint For Dummies, Description: <click to enter text>, Web Address: http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/), Permissions (listing users like administrator, approvers, Designers, etc., with their respective permissions), and Subsites (listing subsites such as For Dummies Blog, For Dummies Records Center, and SharePoint Team Site with their URLs). The top ribbon has FILE, SITE, and various toolbars for creating and managing SharePoint components.

**Figure 21-2:**  
The navigational section of SharePoint Designer 2013.

## Creating a workflow

You can create three types of workflows in SharePoint:

- ✓ A **List workflow** is attached to an app and works with only that app. For example, you might create a List workflow for a Documents app that is used for approval. Or you might create a List workflow for a Contacts app that e-mails you whenever a new contact is added.
- ✓ A **Reusable workflow** is not associated with a single app but can be used by many apps.
- ✓ A **Site workflow** is not associated with any app at all but is used by the website in general.

The most commonly scenario is using a List workflow for a particular app.



An app can be based on a SharePoint list or library. When you create an app, you choose the template it should use. A List workflow is tied to a specific app that has already been created.

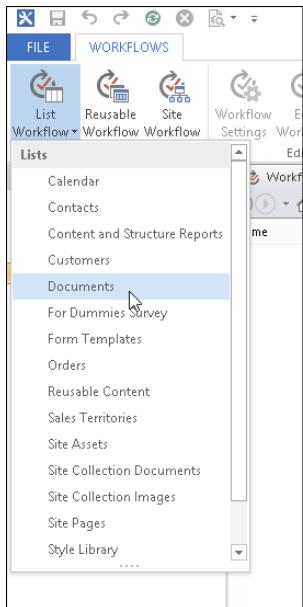
The term *List workflow* might cause some confusion. SharePoint 2013 uses the term *app* instead of *list*. (This workflow type should really be called App workflow to come in line with SharePoint 2013 naming conventions.)

To create a List workflow for a Documents app, follow these steps:

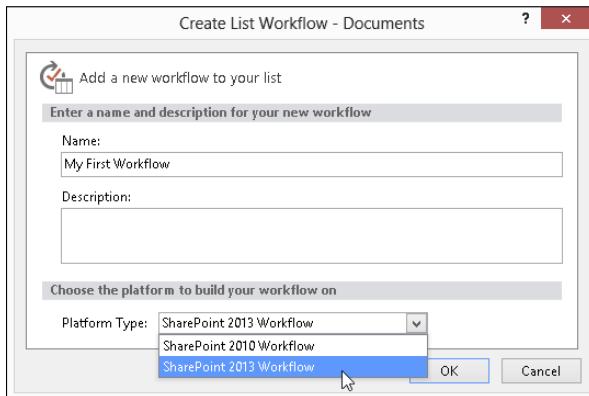
1. **Click Workflows in the left navigation of SharePoint Designer 2013.**  
The current workflows in the site are displayed.
2. **In the New section of the Workflows tab, click the List Workflow drop-down list and choose the app that you want to associate with the workflow.**  
In this example, I build a workflow for the Documents app, so I select Documents from the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 21-3.
3. **In the Name and Description text boxes, type the workflow name and description.**
4. **Select SharePoint 2013 Workflow from the Platform Type drop-down list, as shown in Figure 21-4.**

The workflow opens in SharePoint Designer.

At this point, you're ready to add actions, conditions, steps, stages, and loops to your workflow. There are endless possibilities with workflow scenarios in SharePoint. Covering workflow development is beyond the scope of this book, but if you play around with the actions, you will start to get the hang of it quickly. In addition to building your own workflow from scratch, you can use the out-of-the-box workflows. To find out more about the out-of-the-box workflow for approval, see the later section, "Setting up an approval workflow."



**Figure 21-3:**  
Choosing  
the  
Documents  
app in  
the New  
Workflow  
drop-down  
list.



**Figure 21-4:**  
Creating  
a new  
workflow in  
SharePoint  
Designer  
2013.

Most business processes can be achieved with the out-of-the-box actions, conditions, steps, stages, and loops. Custom actions can also be created by a programmer using Visual Studio.

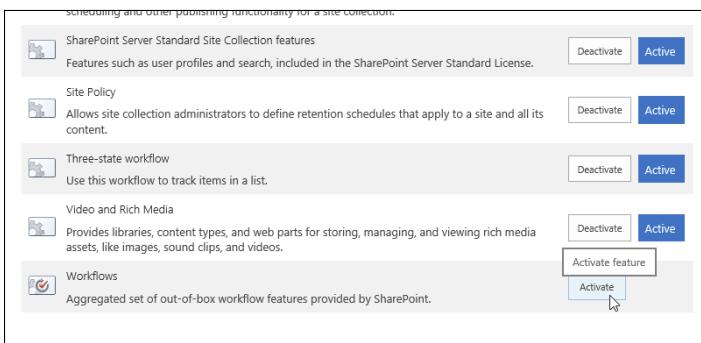


You can find a detailed listing of the actions, conditions, steps, stages, loops, and other aspects of SharePoint Workflow at the Workflow Resource Center on TechNet at <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/sharepoint/jj556245.aspx>.

## *Rediscovering the Out-of-the-Box Approval Workflow*

If you're familiar with the out-of-the-box workflows from SharePoint 2010, then you will be glad to know that they are still included in SharePoint 2013. They are now included as a site collection feature that is deactivated by default. To turn them on, you need to activate the Workflows feature for your site collection, as shown in Figure 21-5.

**Figure 21-5:**  
Activating  
the out-  
of-the-box  
approval  
workflows.



To find out more about activating features in SharePoint, see Chapter 12.

The out-of-the-box approval workflows use the legacy SharePoint 2010 Workflow platform. They are turned off by default for performance reasons.

## *Deciding whether to use content approval or approval workflows*

You might be wondering whether it's better to use the content approval mechanism in SharePoint (discussed in Chapter 18) or to use workflow for approval. Well, as I'm sure you've discovered in SharePoint, the answer is, it depends.

Before you apply content approval or an approval workflow, make a few governance decisions:

- ✓ **Which apps contain (or will contain) content that requires approval?** This isn't the time to turn loose your inner control freak; your goal is to apply the minimum level of content governance necessary to achieve your approval goals.
- ✓ **What kind of approval process do you need?** Is the approval just a thumbs-up or thumbs-down process that approvers can track and

manage? If so, content approval will probably make you happy. Or do you need a way for reviewers to provide feedback and a way to track tasks associated with the reviews? In that case, you need an approval workflow.

- ✓ **Who needs to know about items that need approval?** Do you want approvers to be notified when something needs their approval? If so, you need an approval workflow, with or without content approval.
- ✓ **Do you want the process to start automatically or do you want a manual trigger?** If you want a manual trigger, you need an approval workflow.

## *Configuring the approval workflows*

Approval workflows can layer additional functions on top of content approval, or approval workflows can go it alone.

Approval workflow by itself doesn't affect who can see draft items and, unlike content approval, doesn't control item permissions. The out-of-the-box approval workflow does create a task and an e-mail notification for each approver when the workflow is initiated; for example, it can be useful for getting the attention of people who review documents but who otherwise don't spend a lot of time in the app.

In fact, because the notification and task include a link to the pending item, the out-of-the-box approval workflow is a good way to get the input of users who otherwise won't go to SharePoint. And the approval workflow facilitates an exchange between the approver and the author of the content by allowing the approver to provide feedback on the document (better to have dubbed it review workflow).

There are three components of using the out-of-the-box approval workflow: Configuring the workflow for the app, initiating the workflow for a document or item, and responding to the workflow.

## *Setting up an approval workflow*

Approval workflow is one of several out-of-the-box workflow templates in SharePoint 2013. To set an approval workflow, follow these steps:

1. Access the Library Settings page using the Ribbon in your app.
2. In the Permissions and Management settings options, click the Workflow Settings link.  
You need to activate the Workflows feature for the site collection before you see the out-of-the-box workflows.



**3. Click the Add a Workflow link.**

The Add a Workflow page is displayed, as shown in Figure 21-6.

**4. Click the Approval - SharePoint 2010 option in the Select a Workflow Template list.****5. Enter a name in the Type a Unique Name for This Workflow text box.**

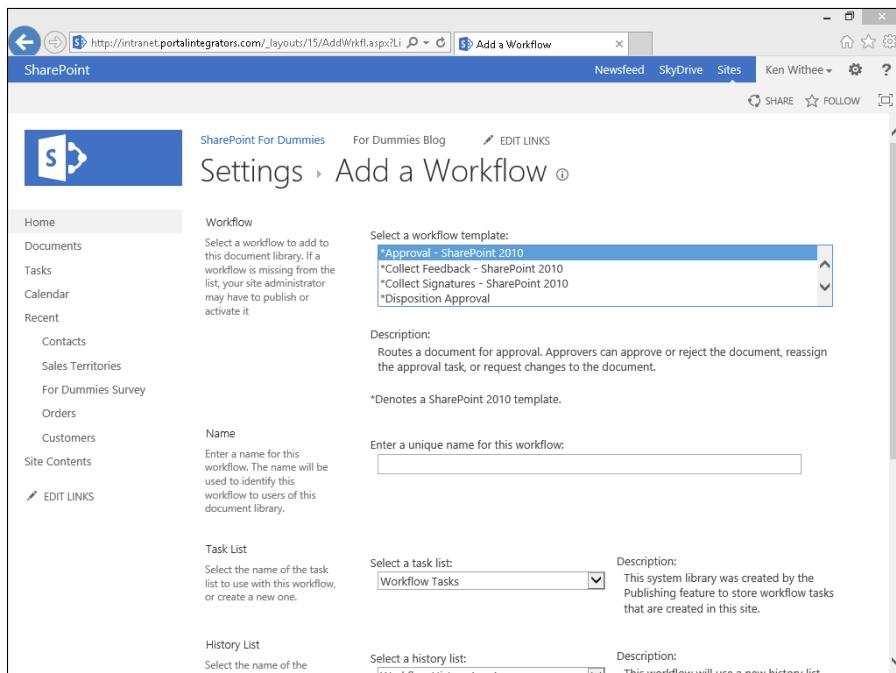
I recommend choosing a name that describes the step in your business process this workflow fulfills. In my experiences, most business processes can have several approval steps, so calling it “The Approval Workflow” isn’t meaningful. For example, if your approval workflow is actually a review workflow, call it the “Author Review Workflow.” If you need to add a second approval workflow, you could call it the “Regulatory Editorial Review Workflow.”

**6. Use the Select a Task List drop-down list to choose a task list.**

I recommend going with the default — Workflow Tasks — unless you have a special reason for wanting to track this workflow in a list by itself.

**7. Use the Select a History List drop-down list to choose a history list.**

Again, I suggest accepting the default, which is Workflow History.



**Figure 21-6:**  
**The Add a**  
**Workflow**  
**page.**

### 8. Select a Start option by selecting the appropriate check box.

Decide how you want the workflow to be triggered. If you want the workflow to start manually, select the Allow This Workflow to Be Manually Started by an Authenticated User with Edit Item Permissions check box.

**Note:** You can have only one workflow that's triggered by publishing in a library.

### 9. Click the Next button.

The Approval page appears, as shown in Figure 21-7. See the options I discuss in the following section, “Approval workflow options,” and then specify the appropriate options.

### 10. Click the Save button.



If you have an alert enabled on an app, and approval is also turned on for that app, you may not receive a notification until a new or changed item is approved and published.

If you just need approvals, the approval workflow may be overkill. Consider turning off workflow and just keeping the approvals functionality discussed in Chapter 18, with or without versioning. Items that require approval will quietly sit there, waiting for someone to take notice.

The screenshot shows the 'Change a Workflow' page for the 'Approval' workflow in SharePoint. The page has a header with the URL http://intranet.portalintegrators.com/\_layouts/15/CstWkfIP.aspx?L=1033, a search bar, and navigation links for Newsfeed, SkyDrive, Sites, and Ken Withee. The main content area shows the 'Settings > Change a Workflow > Approval' path. The configuration form includes fields for 'Approvers' (Assign To: One at a time (serial)), 'Expand Groups' (checkbox checked), 'Request' (text area with placeholder 'This message will be sent to the people assigned tasks.'), 'Due Date for All Tasks' (calendar field), 'Duration Per Task' (text field), 'Duration Units' (dropdown menu), 'CC' (text field with placeholder 'Notify these people when the workflow starts and ends without assigning tasks to them.'), and 'End on First Rejection' (checkbox). The bottom right corner of the form has a note: 'Automatically reject the document if it is rejected by any participant'.

**Figure 21-7:**  
The  
Approval  
page.

## Approval workflow options

Think of a workflow as the orchestrator, and potentially automator (yes, I made that word up), of a business process. Say you have a business process for reviewing and approving real estate contracts. This process may include someone drafting the contract, e-mailing a copy to someone who reviews it, and then e-mailing it to someone else for approval. The out-of-the-box approval workflows in SharePoint provide all these options so you can automate the routing of the document from the person drafting it to the document's reviewers and approvers.

You can select options for how you want the approval workflow to work when you associate the workflow with your app, which I describe how to do in the next section.

The following list describes the options available for approval workflows:



- ✓ **Approvers (Assign To):** Assigns individuals and groups to the approval tasks. If you have multiple approvers, you can also specify the order in which they're assigned the item. The approval status doesn't change from Pending to Approved until all approvers have approved the item. Unless you have the Cancel on Rejection option enabled, if an approver rejects an item, the approval continues to the next approver.
- ✓ **Approvers (Order):** Specifies whether the approvers will be assigned the approval tasks all at once or whether when one person approves, the next person is assigned the task, and so on. Go with the standard — arrange approvers in ascending order of importance so, for example, you don't bother the director until the managers have approved.
- ✓ **Add a New Stage:** Enables you to add a stage to the approval process. Don't get carried away here, because you have to manage all those stages.
- ✓ **Expand Groups:** Assigns an approval task to each individual in each approver group, rather than assigning a single task to the entire group. If you've also specified an order, all approvers in the expanded group are treated as one approver, and they're assigned the approval when the group is.
- ✓ **Notification Message:** Sends a message to each member of each approval group. All approvers get the same notification message. (I recommend saying, "Please.")
- ✓ **Due Date for All Tasks:** Creates a date by which all tasks not completed are considered overdue; this overrides the Duration for Serial Tasks/Duration Units values.
- ✓ **Duration for Serial Tasks:** Determines, with the Duration Units text box, how long each serial task can be active before being marked overdue.

- ✓ **Duration Units:** Determines, with the Duration for Serial Tasks option, how long a serial task can be active before being marked overdue.
- ✓ **CC:** Notifies specified people when the workflow is started but doesn't assign tasks to them (unless they're also in the approvers group).
- ✓ **End on First Rejection:** Cancels the entire workflow if one approver marks the item as rejected. The item moves to rejected status, and the item author is notified.

In any case, if End on First Rejection is selected, when one approver rejects the item, this halts the approval workflow for this round, until the item is resubmitted. I recommend listing the tougher critics as earlier approvers to reduce the number of times you have to request approval from someone who's already given it.

- ✓ **End on Document Change:** Cancels the workflow if the item is changed while the workflow is running.
- If you work in a regulated industry and are requesting approval of regulated items, I highly recommend enabling this option.
- ✓ **Enable Content Approval:** Updates the status of the approval when the workflow has completed. For the most reliable results, configure your approval workflow before turning on content approval.



Need more options? You can create your own workflows or customize the approval workflows provided by SharePoint using SharePoint Designer 2013 or Visual Studio 2012.

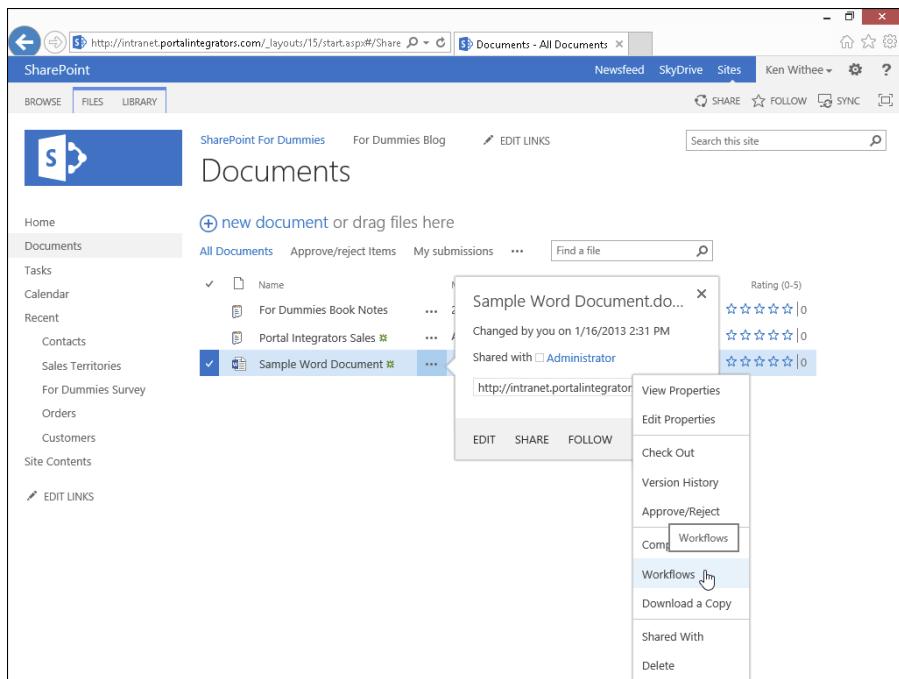
## *Initiating a workflow*

Configuring your app to use a workflow only solves part of the problem. If you don't have your workflow configured to kick off automatically, someone must manually start the workflow.

Manually initiate a workflow by following these steps:

1. **Browse to the item you want approved, click the ellipsis, and then click the inner ellipsis (see Figure 21-8), and choose Workflows.**  
You see the Workflows page for that library or list.
2. **Under Start a New Workflow, select the approval workflow you want to initiate.**  
The form to initiate the workflow displays, populated with the default values specified during the workflow configuration; you can accept the defaults or change them.
3. **Click the Start button.**

**Figure 21-8:**  
Choose  
Workflows  
from the  
menu.



A Workflow task is created in the specified task list app and is assigned to the first approver. If e-mail alerts are enabled, an e-mail is sent to that person with a link to the item, instructions, and a link to the associated task. The requestor also receives an e-mail indicating that the task has been started, as well as a link to the item and the workflow status page.

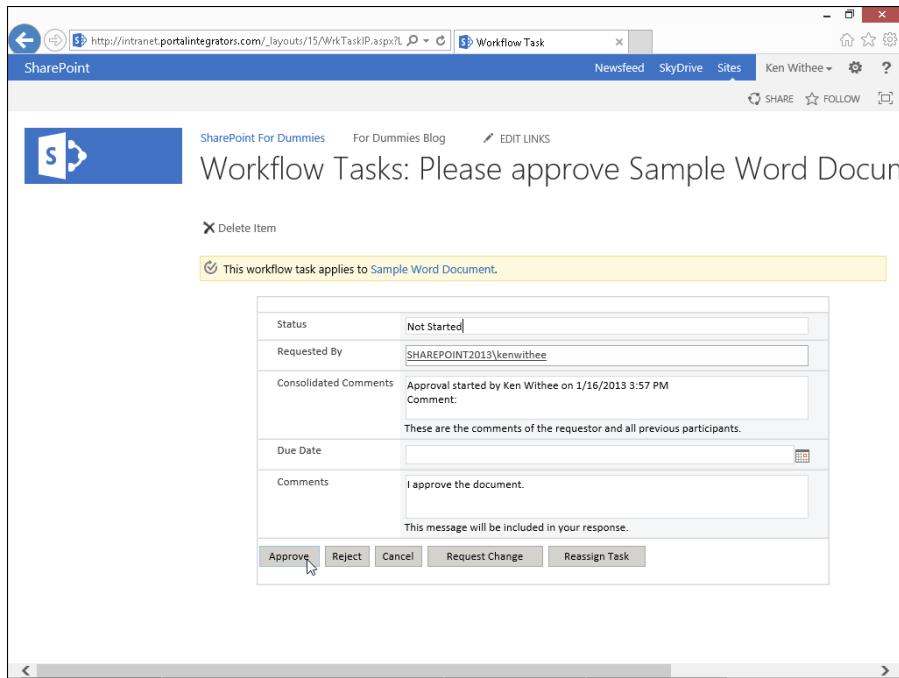
## Approving an item

If you're an approver on an item, follow these steps to respond to an approval request:

1. Review the task by clicking the link in the e-mail request or by accessing the item directly in the task list app.

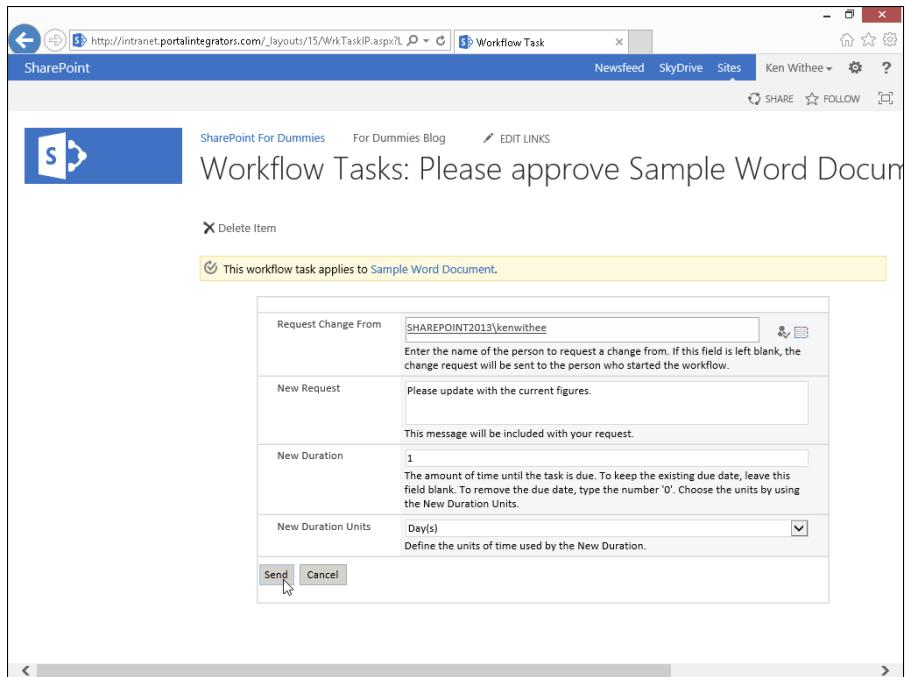
You can review the task by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Contents to go to the Site Content page, and then clicking on the Workflow Tasks app. Click the task that was generated to approve the document.

2. Enter comments in the Your Comments text box.
3. Click a button to indicate what you want to do with this item (see Figure 21-9):



**Figure 21-9:**  
Task details  
for an  
approver.

- Click the *Approve* button to approve the item. If you approve the item and there are no other approvers, the task is marked completed and the outcome is approved. If there are other approvers, the task is assigned to the next approver on the list, if any, and the requestor is notified. The task version history is updated.
- Click the *Reject* button to reject it. If you reject the item, the task is marked completed and the outcome is rejected.
- Click the *Cancel* button to back out of this task.
- Click the *Request Change* button to indicate that further edits are needed. The Workflow Task window displays, as shown in Figure 21-10. Enter the name of the person whom you want to make the change in the Request Change From text box, a description of your request in the Your Request text box, the task duration (if any) in the Duration for Serial Tasks, and select a time unit from the Duration Units drop-down list, and then click the Send button. A new task is created for the person you specified, and your task status is marked completed.
- Click the *Reassign Task* button to ask someone else to approve the item. If you reassign the task, you're prompted to enter the name of the person to whom it should be reassigned. A new task is created, and your task is marked complete but the status is delegated.



**Figure 21-10:**  
Request  
the author  
to make  
changes.

The requestor is notified each time the task is updated.



Don't confuse status with outcome. *Status* merely indicates whether the workflow task is active or complete. *Outcome* is what tells you whether the item really passed muster and was approved. Whether the item was approved or rejected, the task status is marked as complete when the last approver has approved or rejected it. However, the task outcome indicates whether the item was approved or rejected.

You can also respond to an approval request by accessing the items using the Site Content and Structure tool. Use the tool to locate the item in the site hierarchy, and then use the item's context menu to select an approval option. Alternatively, you can also edit the task from Outlook.

## Checking the status of an approval workflow

Requestors and reviewers can check the status of an approval workflow as follows:

1. Navigate to the site for which you want to check the status of one or more approval workflows.
2. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings.
3. In the Site Administration section, click the Content and Structure link.

The Site Content and Structure page appears, as shown in Figure 21-11.



The Site Content and Structure tool is only available if the Publishing Server Infrastructure feature is active for the site collection. If the feature isn't active, the link won't appear in the Site Administration section of Site Settings.

4. To view the status of items specific to you, select an item from the View drop-down list:

- For requestors, choosing Pending Approval displays all items that you've submitted for approval and aren't completed yet.
- For approvers, choosing My Tasks displays all tasks, including approval workflow tasks, assigned to you.

The screenshot shows the SharePoint Site Content and Structure page. The left navigation pane lists various site collections and subsites under 'SharePoint For Dummies'. The main content area displays a list of items with columns for Type, Title, and Created By. A dropdown menu titled 'View' is open, showing options like Default View, Pending Approval, and My Tasks. The 'Pending Approval' option is highlighted. The list includes items such as 'Checked Out To Me', 'Last Modified By Me', 'Pending Approval' (which is currently selected), 'My Tasks', 'All Draft Documents', 'Going Live Within Next Seven Days', 'Expiring Within Next Seven Days', 'Site Assets', 'Site Collection Documents', 'Site Collection Images', 'Site Pages', 'Style Library', 'Tasks', and 'Workflow Tasks'. The 'Pending Approval' section shows two items: 'For Dummies' (1/15/2013) and 'For Dummies' (1/16/2013).

Type	Title	Created By
Document	For Dummies	Ken Withee
Document	For Dummies	Ken Withee
Document	SharePoint	
Calendar		
Contact		
Content and Structure Report		
Customer		
Document	For Dummies	
Form Template		
Order		
Reusable Content		
Sales Territory		
Site Asset		
Site Collection Document		1/15/2013
Site Collection Image		1/16/2013
Site Page		1/16/2013
Style Library		1/16/2013
Task		1/14/2013
Workflow Task		1/16/2013

**Figure 21-11:**  
The Site Content and Structure page.

5. To view all tasks (your own as well as those assigned to other people), click Workflow Tasks in the navigation pane on the left, and then choose All Tasks from the View drop-down list.

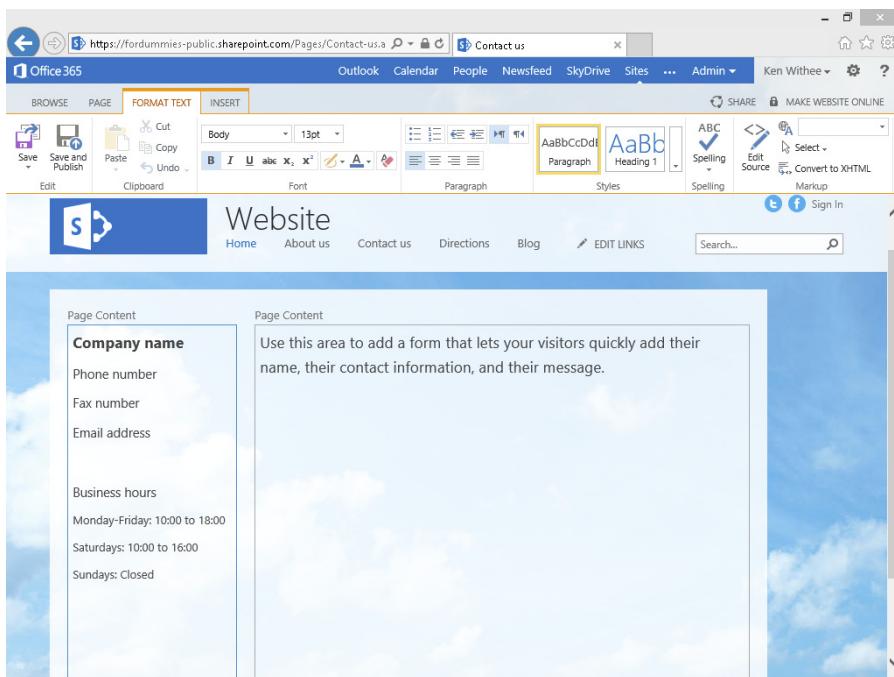
The Workflow Tasks – All Tasks page appears.

6. Click any task to view its details.

A light touch with content approval and approval workflow can help facilitate reviews, support governance policies, and help you track and retain information about whether content has passed the right checkpoints before being formalized. Experiment with them alone or in combination until you hit on the process that works.

# Part VI

# Office 365 and SharePoint Online



Visit [www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013](http://www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013) for great Dummies content online.

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Create a public-facing website in SharePoint.
- ✓ Plan and implement a SharePoint partner portal using SharePoint Online; add and manage users and permissions.

## Chapter 22

# Creating a Public Website in SharePoint Online

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Creating a public website in SharePoint Online
- ▶ Using your own vanity domain name
- ▶ Adding and editing pages
- ▶ Changing the look and feel of your site

**S**harePoint Online allows you to create two different types of site collections — a *private site collection* and a *public website*. A private site collection enables you to create a site in much the same way that you can on your On Premise SharePoint server, whereas a public website is something fairly new and different.

A public website site collection is still SharePoint behind the scenes, but it looks and behaves quite differently than your typical SharePoint site. In an effort to really narrow down the capabilities of SharePoint so that you can easily create that web presence for your company, Microsoft created this experience for SharePoint Online that is not available in the On Premise version of SharePoint.

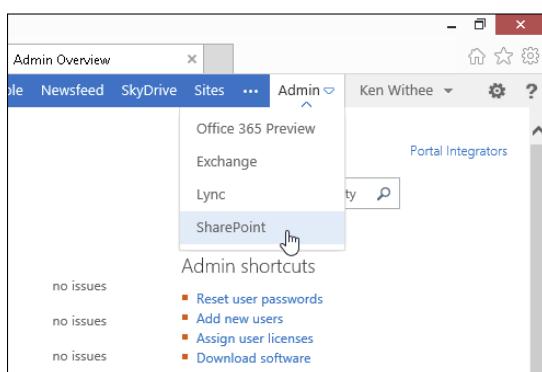
In this chapter, you find out how to create a public-facing website using SharePoint Online.

## *Creating Your New Website*

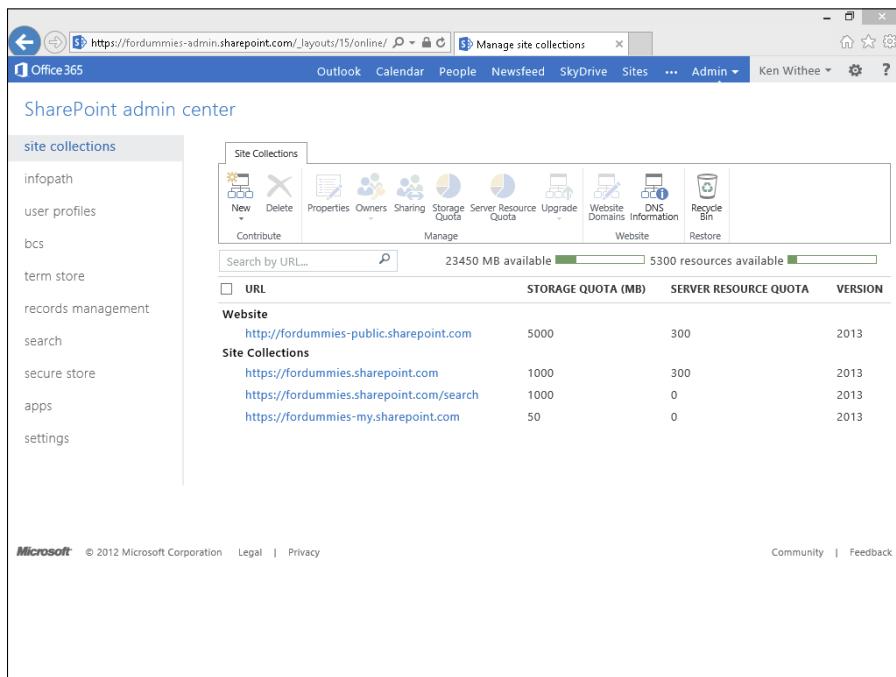
Whether you’re just creating a pilot project to test out SharePoint Online, or you’re ready to take up residence in the cloud, you’ve decided to get a site going that the world can see.

The first thing you need to do is browse to the SharePoint Online Administration Center. You can jump to this page from the main Office 365 Admin page (<http://portal.microsoftonline.com>) by choosing Admin>SharePoint (the Admin menu is in the upper-right corner of the screen), as shown in Figure 22-1. The SharePoint admin center shows a listing of your public and private site collections in the center of the page, as well as links to other management capabilities in the left navigation; see Figure 22-2.

**Figure 22-1:**  
Navigating  
to the  
SharePoint  
Online  
Administra-  
tion Center  
from the  
main Office  
365 portal  
page.



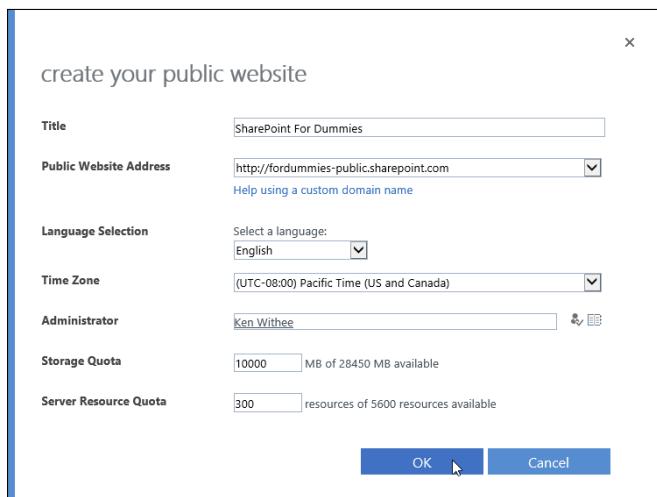
**Figure 22-2:**  
The  
SharePoint  
Online  
Administra-  
tion Center.



The SharePoint admin center page is where you create, edit, delete, and generally manage both your public website and your private site collections.

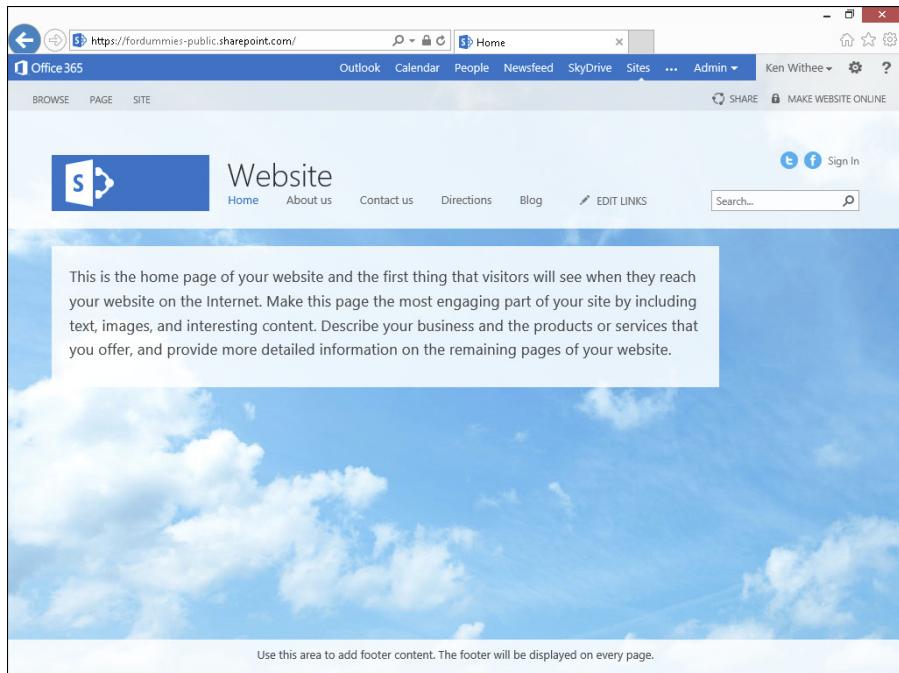
To create a new public website, follow these steps:

- 1. Choose New > Public Website.**
  - 2. A page is displayed, shown in Figure 22-3, that enables you to specify a number of different options.**
- Don't worry about the website address for now. I talk about that in the next section.
- 3. Give your site a title in the Title text box, choose an administrator for the site by typing a name in the Administrator text box, and specify the site's storage quota by entering the size (in megabytes) in the Store Quota text box.**
  - 4. Change any other settings, such as the Language, Time Zone, and Resource Usage Quota, and then click OK to create your site.**



**Figure 22-3:**  
Specifying  
the proper-  
ties of your  
new public  
site.

When your site is created, you can click the link in the Site Collections page to view properties of your public site, and then click the link on this page to actually view the site. As shown in Figure 22-4, the site looks very different from any regular SharePoint site you've seen.



**Figure 22-4:**  
The default  
public  
website for  
SharePoint  
Online.



If you need to delete your public website for any reason, keep in mind that it takes a while for the public name to be removed from DNS. Microsoft says to allow 72 hours, but it usually happens with a day. During that time, you will not be able to create a new public website.

Although mainly aimed at small businesses and individuals to create a place on the web to advertise their services, the public website is a quick and easy way for any sized business to get online.



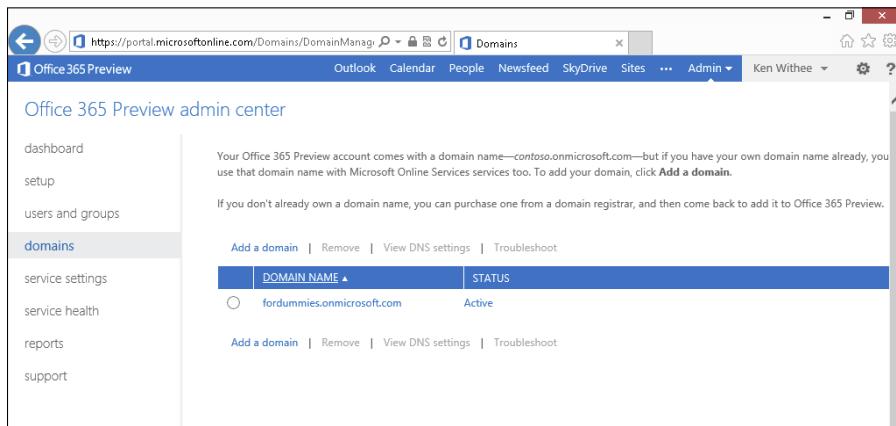
You can only have one public website in your Office 365 subscription because it's meant for your company's online presence, but you can create as many as 3,000 private site collections.

## Using a Vanity Domain Name

If you registered a domain name with a registry such as Go Daddy, 1&1, or another Internet registrar, you can use that name instead of the one Microsoft gives you. You can do this when you create your public site, or you can change the domain name after creating the site, but you first have to register your domain name with Office 365. To do so, follow these steps:

1. **Browse to the Office 365 Admin page (<http://portal.microsoftonline.com>).**
2. **On the left navigation, click the Domains link in the Management section.**  
You see a page similar to Figure 22-5.
3. **Click the Add a Domain link.**
4. **On the Specify Domain page, type the domain name that you registered and want to use as your SharePoint public website, and then click Next.**  
On the Verify domain page, you need to verify that you are the owner of the domain name. Different registrars have different ways of doing this.
5. **Look for your registrar in the Instructions drop-down list and continue with the verification process after you have determined what you need to do.**
6. **When you are finished with Step 5, go back to the SharePoint Online Administration Center and either create your public website or select the one you previously created, and click the Website Domains button in the toolbar.**
7. **In the New URL drop-down list on this page, you should find your new domain name. Select it and click OK.**

If you do not see your new domain name yet, you may need to wait for DNS to switch your record from the previous location to Office 365. This usually happens within a day but can take up to 72 hours.



**Figure 22-5:**  
Managing  
your  
Office 365  
domains.

## *Updating and Adding Web Pages*

If you have some experience with updating and adding pages to a regular SharePoint site, you'll find yourself in familiar — but not exactly the same — territory when doing the same thing in your public website. If you've never done this stuff in SharePoint before, relax: It's pretty easy and straightforward.

### *Reviewing what you get with your new site*

Wondering what you get in your SharePoint Online public website? A number of apps are contained in the default site:

- ✓ Categories
- ✓ Customers
- ✓ Documents
- ✓ Form Templates
- ✓ Pages
- ✓ Photos
- ✓ Posts
- ✓ Reusable Content
- ✓ Site Assets
- ✓ Site Elements
- ✓ Style Library

Most of these apps are empty, but some are pre-populated for the default site (refer to Figure 22-4). The Pages app is where all the web pages for your public site are located. It contains the pages that make up the default website. These are:

- ✓ About Us
- ✓ Archives
- ✓ Blog
- ✓ Contact Us
- ✓ Default
- ✓ Directions

- ✓ PageNotFoundError
- ✓ Post
- ✓ Posts
- ✓ Search Results

Most of these pages are self-explanatory. As you customize your public site, you will add pages to and remove pages from the library. The pages that are there by default are the ones used as an example and make up the default website shown in Figure 22-4.



Your site is not available to the world until you publish it. This gives you time to work on it and perfect it before unleashing it on the world. You will see a Make Website Online link in the upper-right corner of the page. When you click that link, your website will be published for the world to see. When you want to take your website offline, you can click the Make Website Offline link, which appears in the same location.

## Adding a new page

You get to the list of contents for the site by clicking the Settings gear icon and choosing Site Contents. This automatically takes you to the Site Contents page. Here, you can add new apps or click the Pages app and add new pages, as shown in Figure 22-6.

Name	Modified	Modified By	Approval Status
About-us	5 minutes ago	System Account	Approved
Archives	5 minutes ago	System Account	Approved
Blog	5 minutes ago	System Account	Approved
Contact-us	5 minutes ago	System Account	Approved
default	5 minutes ago	System Account	Approved
Directions	5 minutes ago	System Account	Approved
PageNotFoundError	7 minutes ago	System Account	Approved
Post	5 minutes ago	System Account	Approved
Posts	5 minutes ago	System Account	Approved
searchresults	6 minutes ago	System Account	Approved

**Figure 22-6:**  
The Pages app, where all your pages are stored.

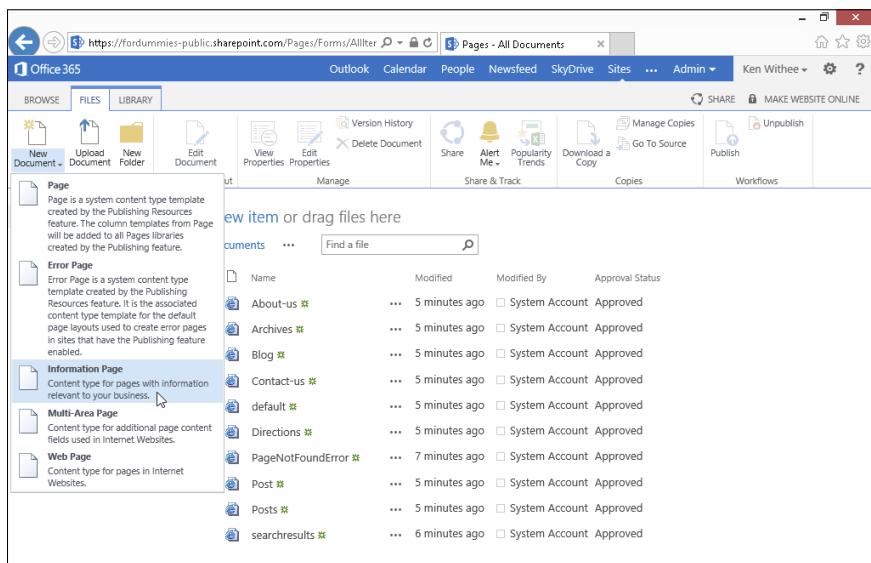
When you are in the Pages app, you can click the New Document drop-down list on the Files tab of the Ribbon. You have the option to add a new page to your site. When you add a new page, you choose a template from the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 22-7.

This is convenient for quickly getting the layout and design right for the purpose of the page. You have the option of choosing from the following page templates (which use SharePoint content types):

- ✓ Page
- ✓ Error Page
- ✓ Information Page
- ✓ Multi-Area Page
- ✓ Web Page

Clicking a new page type in the New Document drop-down list brings up a page where you can specify the title of the new page, the web address, and the page layout. And in case that threw you for a loop, yes, you are using a SharePoint page to create a new SharePoint page. Experiment with a few pages and layouts to figure out how to use the different templates and what the different options mean.

The differences in the page templates are subtle. For example, you might wonder what the difference is between a Page template and a Web Page template. Microsoft makes an attempt to clarify differences by including a description next to each page template type, but it is still fairly unclear.



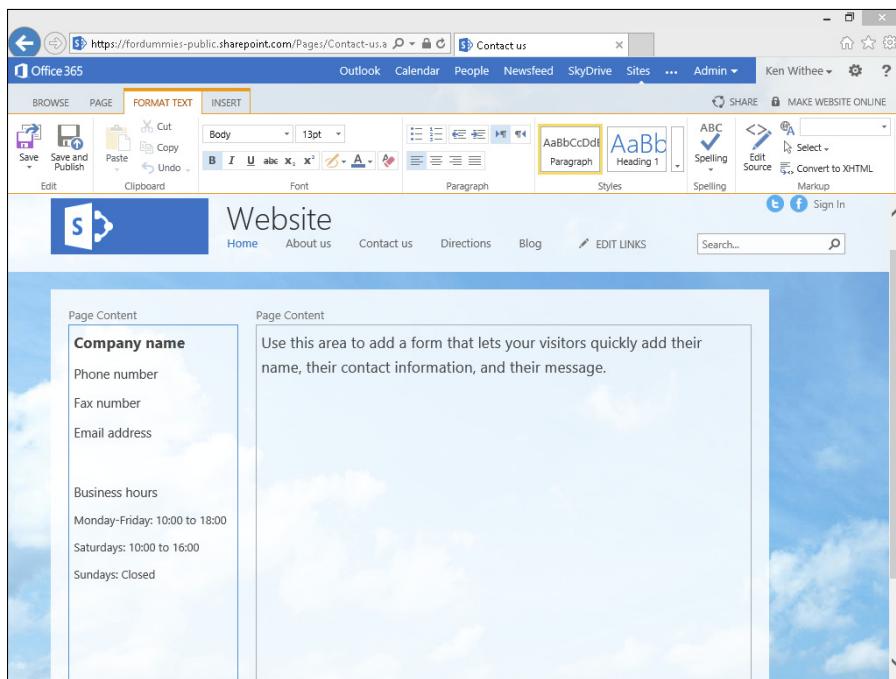
**Figure 22-7:**  
Creating  
a new  
page in the  
Pages app  
of a public  
SharePoint  
Online site.

To understand the differences, you need to understand that these are actually SharePoint content types. A *content type* is a collection of fields. So the difference between a Page template and a Web Page template depends on the fields that are defined in each content type. If you click on the Library tab of the Pages app and click the Library Settings button, you see a section called Content Types. Notice that these are the same options from the New Document drop-down list. If you added a content type to this section, you would have another option on the New Document drop-down list.

You can click a content type to see the fields included in the content type. By clicking the Page content type and then clicking the Web Page content type, you can compare and contrast the differences. (Content types are covered in more detail in Chapter 8.)

## Editing your pages

To edit any existing pages, browse to the Pages app and click a page. This displays your page in the browser. You can edit the page by clicking Page tab of the Ribbon and clicking the Edit button. You can then edit your page and add, modify, and remove content. The Contact Us page in Edit mode is shown in Figure 22-8.



**Figure 22-8:**  
Editing  
a Public  
Website  
page.

You see Page, Format Text, and Insert tabs of the Ribbon. Each Ribbon tab contains buttons that are familiar with any document editing tool, and they work exactly the same. You can format text and choose a different font, size, or color on the Format Text tab. You can insert content on the Insert tab. And you can preview, save, and publish the page on the Page tab.



In the past, SharePoint Online public sites took a fairly drastic turn from what you would expect in SharePoint. The way you designed a public site was unique and different from the rest of SharePoint. As SharePoint Online migrates to SharePoint 2013, the experience with public sites falls in line with the rest of SharePoint.

## Updating page properties

After you're done creating your pages, you may want to change some options for the site pages, such as the content type of the page or the contact for the page. These options are included on the Page Properties page, shown in Figure 22-9, that you can access by selecting the page in the Pages app and clicking the Edit Properties button on the Files tab of the Ribbon.

The screenshot shows the SharePoint Online Page Properties dialog box. At the top, there's a ribbon with tabs like BROWSE and EDIT. Below the ribbon, there are Save, Cancel, Paste, Cut, Copy, and Delete Item buttons. A toolbar below them includes Commit, Clipboard, and Actions. The main area has sections for Content Type (set to Multi-Area Page), Name (Contact-us), Title (Contact us), and Comments. Under the Contact section, there's a dropdown for System Account (selected) with a note about it being a site column for the Publishing feature. There's also a checkbox for Hide physical URLs from search. The Page Image section has a link to insert a picture from SharePoint. The Page Content section contains fields for Company name (Company name) and Phone number (Phone number).

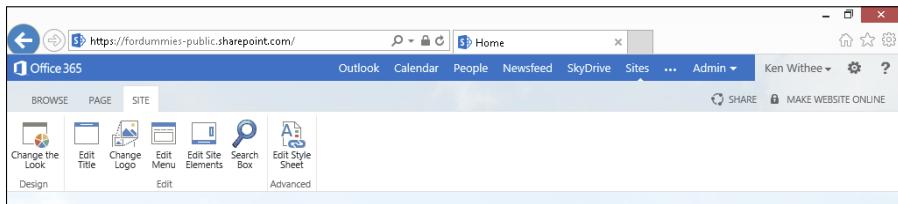
**Figure 22-9:**  
Changing a  
page's  
properties.

## Changing the Site's Look and Feel

An important and unique tab on the Ribbon of a public site is the Site tab, as shown in Figure 22-10. You see the Site tab when looking at any page in your public website (assuming you have permissions, of course).

The Site tab enables you to change the look of your site and edit important components such as the title, logo, menus, and Search text box. You can even edit the style sheet for the site in the Advanced section. If you're not familiar with style sheets, this option is best left unexplored. For you intrepid web developers out there, good luck!

**Figure 22-10:**  
The Site  
tab on the  
Ribbon.





## **Chapter 23**

---

# **Creating a Client Portal in SharePoint Online**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Planning for your cloud-based SharePoint environment
  - ▶ Locking down your portal and managing your users
  - ▶ Launching your SharePoint site
- 

**C**reating and using a SharePoint portal in SharePoint Online is easier than creating an entire environment from scratch (called SharePoint On Premise). SharePoint Online takes away all of the difficulties in setting up the infrastructure (explored in Chapter 2), but you’re still left with working with SharePoint itself. This means figuring out how to create your online users and what permissions to assign them in the SharePoint site.

In this chapter, you plan and implement a SharePoint portal using SharePoint Online. You add and manage users, as well as manage their permissions on the site.

## ***Planning for Your Client Portal***

Planning for SharePoint Online is similar to planning for a regular SharePoint installation in that you have to determine what the site will be used for and the types of activities that need to be supported in that environment. If you haven’t yet read Chapter 2, you should take a look at that while doing your planning. However, a few items are worth noting when planning your Office 365 environment:



- ✓ **The number of resources and the amount of storage space you have available in Office 365 is limited.** Storage is easy to understand, but resources are not on the surface. Basically, a number of physical and virtual resources on the hardware and operating system are monitored daily by SharePoint Online. The types of items measured include counts, seconds, numbers, CPU cycles, bytes, threads, and Windows handles. Each of these items has a hard upper limit based on the hardware that is handling the requests, and so you're granted a set number of resources per Office 365 subscription. You must allocate those resources based on what you think each site collection will need on a daily basis. You can change the allocation at any time, but remember that your total resource (and storage) allocations for your SharePoint subscription remain the same.

The SharePoint Online service administrator can set the storage limits for site collections and sites created by users. The minimum storage allocated to a new site collection is 24MB (megabytes). The maximum storage available for any site collection is up to 100GB (gigabytes). SkyDrive, formerly known as My Sites, are allocated 500MB and they can't be configured. However, they don't count against your allocated space. The current maximum SharePoint Online storage available to a single tenancy is 5TB (terabytes), but keep in mind that there is a charge for increased storage.

SharePoint Online is constantly being updated, and it's entirely possible that the limits will change. Make sure to check the Office 365 website for the latest limits and pricing information.

- ✓ **You don't have control over some of the configuration items in SharePoint Online that you have for SharePoint On Premise.** Most of the differences are at the farm administration level, but it's something to keep in mind. If you're dead set on particular functionality in SharePoint, then you want to make sure it's available in SharePoint Online.

SharePoint Online provides a number of advanced configuration options, but the way they're configured is different than SharePoint On Premise. For example, SharePoint On Premise uses the Central Administration tool. In SharePoint Online, you use the SharePoint Online Administrator Center, as shown in Figure 23-1.

In addition, you should consider a number of things when planning out your SharePoint Online environment. These include

- ✓ Your DNS name, if you need to have a distinct URL to access your public-facing site. (For more information about configuring the DNS name, see Chapter 22.)

- ✓ Whether you will allow external users to browse to your SharePoint Online collaboration site. If you work with people outside your organization on an ongoing basis, and you need to share and collaborate with them, this is a useful option.
- ✓ Whether you will provide the My Sites capability for users and how much space they should be allocated in their quotas.
- ✓ How user profiles and roles will be assigned. From the User Profiles link in the administration center, you have the ability to configure many aspects of how users, audiences, permissions, and policies are configured, not to mention My Sites functionality if you decide to host this in the cloud. As shown in Figure 23-2, the options on this page are divided into People, Organizations, and My Site Settings. Although it's beyond the scope of this book to describe these settings in detail, you will probably need to manage and plan for at least some of these settings when you establish your SharePoint Online presence, especially if you're creating a collaboration space for more than a single organization.

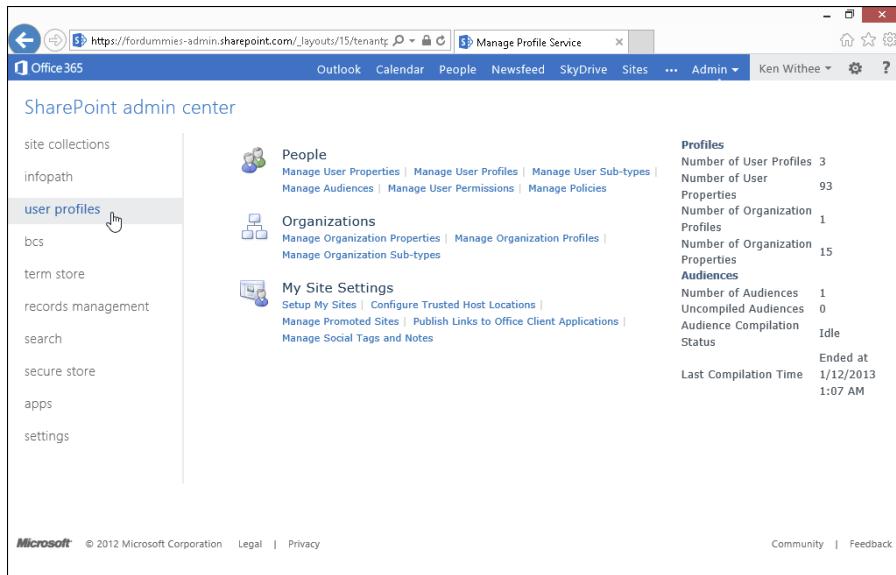
The screenshot shows the SharePoint admin center interface. On the left, there's a navigation pane with links like 'infopath', 'user profiles', 'bcs', 'term store', 'records management', 'search', 'secure store', 'apps', and 'settings'. The main content area is titled 'Site Collections' and contains a toolbar with icons for 'New', 'Delete', 'Contribute', 'Properties', 'Owners', 'Sharing', 'Storage Quota', 'Server Resource Quota', 'Upgrade', 'Website Domains', 'DNS Information', 'Recycle Bin', and 'Manage'. Below the toolbar, there's a search bar and a status bar indicating '18450 MB available' and '5300 resources available'. A table lists websites with their URLs, storage quotas, server resource quotas, and versions. The table has columns for 'URL', 'STORAGE QUOTA (MB)', 'SERVER RESOURCE QUOTA', and 'VERSION'. The data is as follows:

URL	STORAGE QUOTA (MB)	SERVER RESOURCE QUOTA	VERSION
<a href="http://fordummies-public.sharepoint.com">http://fordummies-public.sharepoint.com</a>	10000	300	2013
<a href="https://fordummies.sharepoint.com">https://fordummies.sharepoint.com</a>	1000	300	2013
<a href="https://fordummies.sharepoint.com/search">https://fordummies.sharepoint.com/search</a>	1000	0	2013
<a href="https://fordummies-my.sharepoint.com">https://fordummies-my.sharepoint.com</a>	50	0	2013

At the bottom, there are links for Microsoft, © 2012 Microsoft Corporation, Legal, Privacy, Community, and Feedback.

**Figure 23-1:**  
The main  
SharePoint  
Online  
Administra-  
tion page.

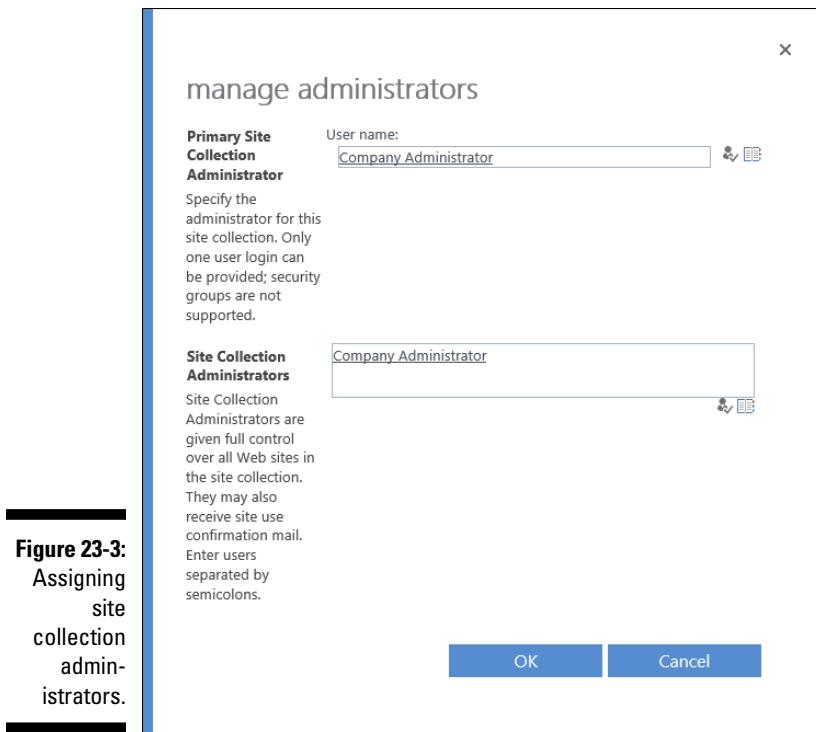
**Figure 23-2:**  
Configuring  
SharePoint  
Online user  
profiles.



## Locking Down the Portal

The first thing that you want to do is determine who your site collection administrators are for each of your SharePoint Online site collections. This could be you or it could be someone else. After you determine who has these duties, assign them either the primary administrator or an additional administrator of the site collection by selecting the site and clicking the Owners button in the Ribbon. This displays the Manage Administrators dialog box, as shown in Figure 23-3.

The biggest hurdle to locking down the portal is figuring out permissions. You need to determine which users have access and what they can do on the site. So you need to understand what SharePoint permissions are and how they are assigned, which is exactly what I cover in the next section. (You can also turn to Chapter 14 for more information on securing your site.)



**Figure 23-3:**  
Assigning  
site  
collection  
admin-  
istrators.

## Managing User Accounts

Depending on how your SharePoint Online/Office 365 environment is configured, you have three options for getting your users into the cloud:

- ✓ You can set up users via Single Sign-On (SSO), which allows you to use all your current users' identities with their same corporate identities on Office 365 and SharePoint Online.
- ✓ You can set up users via Active Directory synchronization, which goes hand-in-hand with SSO.
- ✓ You can set up users with distinct credentials that are applicable only to Office 365/SharePoint Online. This is more burdensome on your users, but less burden on your IT staff. And if you're a small organization with plans to move to Office 365 and SharePoint Online exclusively, these credentials become your main credentials.



For external contacts (to Office 365), keep in mind that you're probably limited to 50 of these type of contacts, but check in Office 365 to make sure. And if you're creating a collaboration portal for users from multiple organizations to use, it's best to be aware of this limit sooner rather than later.

After you decide on how your online user identities are going to be created, you'll manage them much in the same way you manage SharePoint On Premise users, and the best way to do that is through the exclusive use of groups and group membership.

To access your users and groups, follow these steps:



- 1. Click the Settings gear icon and choose Site Settings.**

If you don't see the Site Settings option, you don't have permission to administer the site collection. Check with your administrator to see if she can make you a site collection administrator on your portal.

- 2. Click the People and Groups link in the Users and Permissions section of the Site Settings page.**

The next page that comes up is usually the Members page, but this depends on the site template. The Members page is shown in Figure 23-4.

The Groups links in the left navigation are all the typical groups that are preinstalled with the team site template, such as Members, Viewers, Visitors, and Owners links. Each of these groups is assigned particular permissions. For example, visitors have the View Only permission level, which means they can only view information on the site but can't open and read documents unless the Office Web Applications are available. Site visitors, on the other hand, have the Read permission level and can download and read documents, as well as the other content on the site.

**Figure 23-4:**  
Adding  
groups  
and users  
to groups  
from the  
Members  
page.

### **3. Click the More link in the left navigation.**

On the People and Groups page, you can see and edit the default groups and create and delete groups.

**4. From the New menu, click Group to create a new group.**

As shown in Figure 23-5, there are many aspects to creating a new group, including the name, description, and owner of the group, as well as who can view and edit the group membership, where membership group requests are sent, and the permission level of the group. To understand more about permission levels, see Chapter 14.



Working with users and groups in a SharePoint 2013 site is the same, regardless of whether you use SharePoint On Premise or SharePoint Online. The main difference is in how users are created and managed outside of SharePoint. In other words, what you have to do to make users available to SharePoint. After users are available to SharePoint, the experience within a SharePoint site is identical.

After you realize how easy it is to create a new group, you may want to explore the types of permission levels you can assign to new groups. To edit these permission levels, click the Site Permissions link on the Site Settings page. Clicking the Site Permissions link takes you to a list of the permission levels that are the same as the groups, with the addition of the person who created the site.

[https://fordummies.sharepoint.com/\\_layouts/15/start.aspx#/3](https://fordummies.sharepoint.com/_layouts/15/start.aspx#/3)

Create Group

Office 365      Outlook    Calendar    People    Newsfeed    SkyDrive    Sites    ...    Admin

Ken Withee    SHARE    FOLLOW

**EDIT LINKS**

## People and Groups > Create Group

**Name and About Me Description**  
Type a name and description for the group.

**Name:**

**About Me:**  
  


**Owner**  
The owner can change anything about the group such as adding and removing members or deleting the group. Only one user or group can be the owner.

**Group owner:**

**Who can view the membership of the group?**  
 Group Members       Everyone

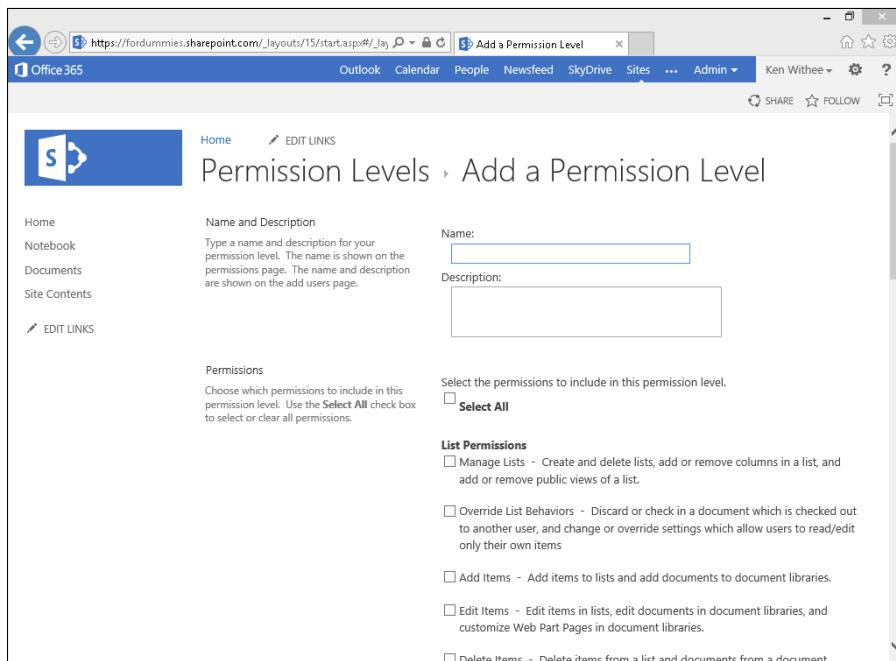
**Who can edit the membership of the group?**  
 Group Owner       Group Members

**Figure 23-5:**  
Creating  
a new  
group in  
SharePoint.

To explore the different permissions, add a new permission level. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Click the Permission Levels button in the Ribbon.
  2. Click the Add a Permission Level button at the top of the page that lists all the built-in permission levels.

The Edit Permission Level page allows you to create a new permission level that can be assigned to your group. See Figure 23-6.



**Figure 23-6:**  
Creating a new permission level.

3. Type a name and description in the Name and Description text boxes.
  4. Select the check boxes for the permissions you want to assign to that level.
  5. Click Submit.

After you create a new permission level, you can use that level to assign your groups the correct permissions. After you do that, it's as easy as adding members to the particular group that gives them the appropriate access to your portal.



In some cases, you simply need to assign one or two people special permissions to the site, and you won't want to create a new permission level and a new group for them, and that's okay. You don't want to burden yourself with the rule that all users should be managed via a group with the right permissions, but you do want to be able to manage users effectively with little ongoing maintenance. A well-planned group and permission level structure will help you in the end.

## Launching Your Portal

The final question about your SharePoint Online portal is: When and how do you go about making it live? This may be a very easy question for you to answer, especially if this is your first foray into the SharePoint world. Or you may be wondering if you can ever actually launch your SharePoint Online portal because of the immense amount of pre-existing documents and information in your network drives or on your local computer.

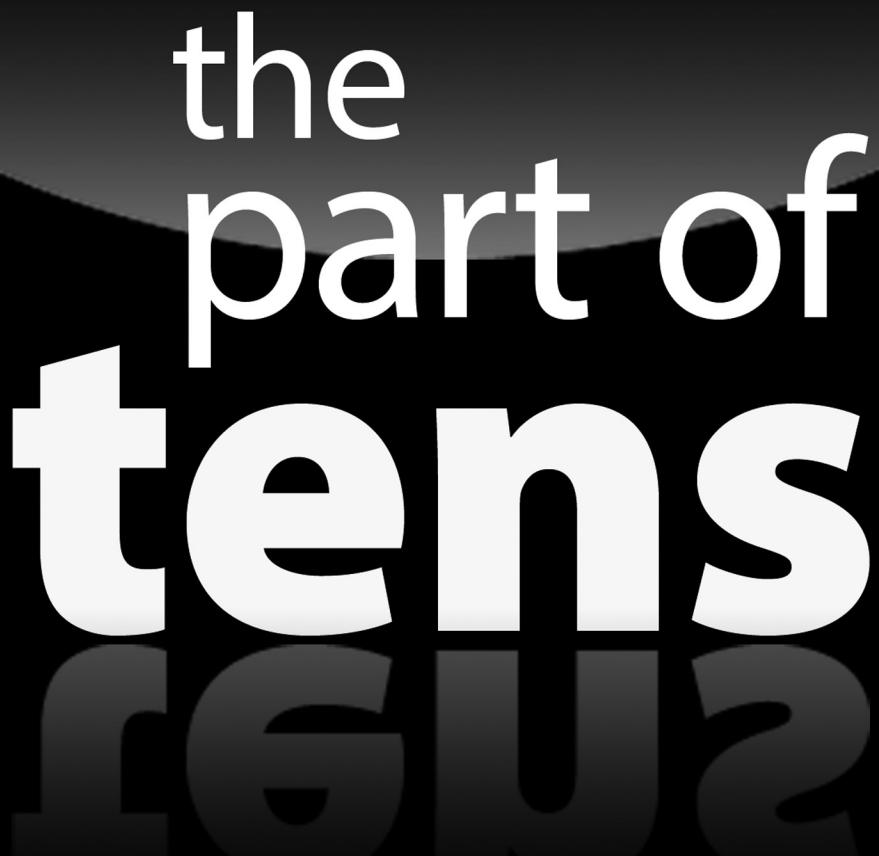
Think of the new portal as a new lease on life for you and the people who use it. If you're starting fresh and are new to SharePoint, there's every reason to launch the portal as soon as you have your users configured and you've locked it down according to your company's policies and culture. If you're not starting fresh, you need to spend more time figuring how you're going to get people switched over to the new SharePoint Online environment. Here are a few approaches you can take:

- ✓ **Have your users do the work.** This is a fairly low maintenance version of migrating content from one SharePoint environment to the next because you put the burden of content on the users' shoulders. The downside is that you run the risk of not getting everyone migrated at the same time, mainly because they won't see the benefit of moving to the new environment. This method requires some forceful tactics such as turning off the old, on-premises server.
- ✓ **Help users devise a plan to migrate their content or at least identify content (and sites) that need to be migrated.** This approach takes a lot more time, but may be the most effective way to get users migrated completely and according to your timeline. It may also require some coercive tactics, such as the threat of turning off existing servers or making their content read-only, but at least it shouldn't be an outright scramble at the end.
- ✓ **Invest in some third-party products that allow you to migrate your content from one site to the other.** The only thing you have to be aware of in this case is whether the product allows you to migrate to SharePoint Online. Some tools allow you to do this. Search the web for *SharePoint Online migration solutions* to get some idea of how these tools work and if they'll work for you.

After you have your users created, permissions assigned, and a plan in place to switch your users over, let them loose on your cloud-based portal.



## Part VII

The logo consists of the words "the part of tens" in white, sans-serif font. Below this, the word "for dummies" is partially visible in a dark gray, bold, sans-serif font. The background is a dark gray gradient.

Enjoy an additional SharePoint 2013 Part of Tens chapter online at [www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013](http://www.dummies.com/extras/sharepoint2013).

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Explore the Microsoft TechNet website for the inside scoop on SharePoint.
- ✓ Maintain control with SharePoint governance.
- ✓ Become a SharePoint guru.

## **Chapter 24**

---

# **Ten Hot SharePoint 2013 Topics on the Microsoft TechNet Website**

---

**M**icrosoft has a website where it posts all of its detailed product information for IT Professionals. The site is called TechNet and the location is <http://technet.microsoft.com>. The TechNet website is the go-to source for Microsoft products. The content is written by Microsoft employees working hand-in-hand with the same developers and managers who create the products. The content is technical, but if you know where to look, there is a wealth of information to be had.

### ***SharePoint for IT Pros***

<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-US/sharepoint>

This URL is the main landing page for all things SharePoint on TechNet. The en-US part means that this site is for English. If you view TechNet in a different language, then that language code would appear instead of en-US.

This main page is a great place to start. It includes quick start tiles for downloading SharePoint, training resources to get you up to speed, and resources to help you plan your deployment.

### ***Recently Published Content***

<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262043.aspx>

One of my favorite pages has always been the Recently Published Content page for SharePoint. Whenever the Microsoft SharePoint teams release content to TechNet, it shows up on this list. I have found this is the best way to stay up to date on the latest happenings with SharePoint.

## Explore SharePoint 2013

<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc261970.aspx>

I have been working with SharePoint for years and years, and I still learn something new almost daily. SharePoint is a product with such depth that I doubt any one person can be a true expert on everything. Maybe there is a SharePoint master out there somewhere that has explored every nook and cranny, but I have yet to meet that person.

When you're ready to dig deeper, the Explore SharePoint website excavates the SharePoint product in depth.

## Plan for SharePoint

<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc261834.aspx>

One of the primary reasons an organization will hire a consulting firm to deploy SharePoint is because of their experience and expertise. Remember the old saying that hindsight is 20/20? Well, it couldn't be truer with SharePoint. I remember my first few implementations back in the mid-2000s. I cringe when I recall how painful those first few installations were. Having worked with SharePoint for years and years at hundreds of organizations, I have finally built up an expertise to get implementing SharePoint right the first time.

Not everyone has the time, or desire, to dedicate so much time to SharePoint. And not everyone wants to hire a consultant. Microsoft has captured much of the knowledge it takes to plan for a SharePoint implementation and posted it to the Plan for SharePoint section of TechNet.

## SharePoint Development

<http://msdn.microsoft.com>

The term *developer* has an ever-changing meaning. In the past, a developer was a hard-core computer programmer. A modern SharePoint developer may have never taken a single computer class. In my book, *SharePoint 2010*

*Development For Dummies* (Wiley), I walk you through how to develop business solutions in SharePoint. Yes, there are times when you need to bring in the coders to work with mind-boggling computer languages, but more often than not you can develop exactly what you need to solve your business problem without writing a single line of code.

This isn't a TechNet site, and at the risk of shamelessly plugging my own book, I would highly recommend *SharePoint 2010 Development For Dummies*. You find out how to develop in SharePoint and solve real-world business problems without writing code. The book does include an intro into SharePoint programming if you feel brave.

In addition, you can go deeper into the coding aspects of SharePoint on the Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN) site.

## Install and Configure SharePoint

<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262957.aspx>

Installing and configuring SharePoint is not for the faint of heart. I have seen implementations that cost up to seven figures (over \$1 million!). Depending on the size of your organization and the resources at your disposal, you may decide it is better to choose SharePoint Online and let Microsoft handle the infrastructure. This choice frees you to focus on the business value SharePoint can provide. With that said, installing SharePoint On Premise might be the right option for you so that your organization has total control over the product and can fit every nuance to your direct needs.

Microsoft does a great job explaining how the installation process of SharePoint works. TechNet includes articles for setting up the domain accounts and installing and configuring the operating systems, database, web server, and SharePoint itself.



SharePoint Online or SharePoint On Premise does not have to be an either/or decision. There is also a hybrid approach, where you have an On Premise installation that works in sync with Online. My only warning with this approach is that you still have to take all the precautions you would with an On Premise-only approach. The difference is that the On Premise portion doesn't need to accommodate the entire organization, which reduces the footprint and the complexity of running SharePoint on your local premises.

## Operate and Maintain

<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc262289.aspx>

Operating and maintaining SharePoint is extremely important and very complex. The SharePoint platform has a number of required technologies, and each of these needs to be operated and maintained as well (see Chapter 1 for an explanation of the technology SharePoint uses).

The TechNet site dedicated to the operation and maintenance of SharePoint includes a wealth of information about farm administration (such as managing services) and solution administration (such as administering site collections).

## Using SharePoint

<http://office.microsoft.com/en-us/sharepoint-help>

Using SharePoint is fairly straightforward. At the base level, it's simply a website that users navigate to using their web browser. In this sense, SharePoint is no different than any other website. A number of resources go deeper into the intricacies of SharePoint from a user level.

## Business Intelligence

<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff877811.aspx>

I hate to always toot my own horn, but . . . if you're interested in Microsoft Business Intelligence, I would highly recommend my book, *Microsoft Business Intelligence For Dummies* (Wiley).

Business intelligence is one of those catch-all phrases that spans many different products. There isn't a "business intelligence" product from Microsoft. Many products perform the duty of business intelligence, such as SQL Server, SharePoint, and even Excel. In other words, business intelligence products provide data and information you can use to run an organization more effectively.

The natural place to display intelligence information is in a centralized web portal such as SharePoint. As a result, business intelligence and SharePoint are often thought of as one and the same (even though the former is a concept and the latter is a product).

In addition to my book, a great resource is the Business Intelligence portion of Microsoft's TechNet site, which includes many scenarios and solutions.

## *Workflow Resource Center*

<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-US/sharepoint/jj556245.aspx>

Within every organization is an amassment of processes. Processes are critical to every organization, whether you realize it or not. Maybe a new account has to be opened. Maybe a new property has to be managed or transitioned. When you get down to it, the amount of processes that happen in and around any organization is staggering. I could produce a binder full of processes in a few hours.

In the SharePoint world, the orchestrator of processes is workflow. Using workflow, you can integrate not only technical processes such as approving documents but also human-based processes such as giving a property tour. Workflow is covered in Chapter 21, but to go further, you can visit the Workflow Resource Center for SharePoint 2013. The Workflow Resource Center is a one-stop workflow shop that contains everything from installing and configuring to developing and using workflow.



## Chapter 25

---

# Ten Ways to Maintain Control with Governance

---

**G**overnance has gotten kind of a bad rap, in part because of its association with the banking scandals of recent years. People hear the word and get all squirrely and anxious, especially when someone proposes governance that affects them. But a well-crafted website governance plan isn't about restricting people; in fact, it contains just enough detail to ensure a certain level of consistency and oversight. Website governance is about the people, policies, and processes that craft your site. *Your* governance helps you figure out how to apply all the best new SharePoint features you can read about in this book.

In this chapter, I show you ten things that influence how you think about your SharePoint governance.

## *Failure Is Not an Option (Neither Is Looking Away and Whistling)*

One of Microsoft's key SharePoint product drivers was the goal to put more control and configuration in the hands of the users; SharePoint was designed to be The Platform of the People.

And people, as you've probably noticed, tend to be unpredictable. So SharePoint + Human Nature = Chaos. Sooner or later, an uncontrolled proliferation of sites and subsites, ways of doing things, ways of tagging and applying metadata, and ways of managing documents will produce a very unwieldy SharePoint installation indeed. Trying to identify and implement governance at that point can be an exercise in frustration.

This is a long way of saying that you'll have to address governance sooner or later. Take my advice: Make SharePoint governance a high priority and start now.

## *Getting Executive Buy-In and Support*

Successful governance plans usually have a high-visibility advocate to support and communicate them. So find an executive to buy in. You won't have too hard a time making the case to leadership; they've already invested in a powerful SharePoint platform, and it's probably supporting functions that are crucial to the success of your organization. Line up executive support and enlist that support to drive the formation of and participation in governance committee activities.

## *Building an Effective Governance Group*

IT commonly dominates governance committees; they have to manage server space, deal with security groups, and implement new functionality. These are ample motivation to formalize much of what they do with SharePoint. But a governance committee comprised entirely or even largely of IT resources won't get you where you need to be.

I recommend that in addition to your executive sponsor, your governance group represent a diverse mix:

- ✓ **Include representatives from the business.** The information workers who use SharePoint all the time often are in the best position to produce realistic governance policies and to identify governance gaps, too.
- ✓ **Include representatives from any compliance areas.** They can advocate for governance that promotes adherence to regulations that affect your business.
- ✓ **Recruit folks from corporate communications and training.** These people are well placed not only to address governance in areas such as branding but also can help craft a plan to publicize governance decisions and provide organizational change management to support those decisions.

## *Finding the Right Level*

Don't try to identify and address everything that someone might do with SharePoint; provide guardrails to steer your users in the appropriate things to do or to avoid. Those things vary by organization; there's no magic list of what to address. (Larger organizations tend to need more governance than smaller organizations.)

Over time, your governance group will uncover areas that need governance, and this will be helped along if you already have a clear process in place to propose, evaluate, and implement governance when and where the need arises.

## *Yours, Mine, Ours: Deciding Who Owns What*

Kick-start a governance effort by thinking about who: Who can do what? Who owns what? For example, you might start with identifying who can provision top-level sites and who can provision subsites. Or who should determine where certain types of documents belong. Or who decides what merits a new content type (and who owns the changes to it).

If you have global navigation, identify who decides what goes there. And so on. The who will suggest the how, so you can consider that next.

One of my favorite governance exercises is to project the home page on the screen for your governance group. Then ask who has the authority to update the page. Because the home page usually links to so many other pages, it naturally leads the discussion into other areas of the portal that need ownership.

## *(Re)Visiting Social Networking Policies*

If you have a social media governance plan in place, it may have been developed to govern external social networking tools; if this is the case, you need to revisit it in the context of SharePoint.

When social media, such as instant messaging, started to become pervasive, a lot of companies responded by locking Internet access to those applications out of fear about what employees would say and how much time they'd

waste using them. Likewise, Internet discussion boards and wikis were treated with suspicion, and all kinds of corporate rules and regulations rose around them, making a lot of corporate intranets more like prisons. Over time, some companies evolved governance around when and how employees used external social networking on company time or using the company name. The goal was to keep everyone focused on documents and data and to minimize interpersonal exchanges.

Eventually, forward-thinking organizations recognized that actively facilitating informal interactions between individuals could benefit the organization by making the exchange of information more efficient, uncovering hidden pools of expertise, and (oh, by the way) recognizing that people are social creatures who need a certain degree of human contact to feel happy at work.

SharePoint 2013 brings components of the social media used in the real world into the workplace. And the ability for employees not only to connect with their peers but also use a corporate-sanctioned tool (SharePoint) to follow coworkers' activities (via live feeds and Twitter-like microblogging status updates), exchange opinions with peers (via social tagging and ratings), and pool information (wikis) represents a significant change from external social media. So if you have a specific governance policy around social media, revisit it in the context of internal communications. You'll probably find that you need a whole new strategy.

## *Design and Branding*

Whether your SharePoint is an internal portal or a public-facing website, the interface should reflect your corporate image, present a certain level of design integrity, and provide users with a consistent navigation scheme that helps them find their way around.

Your governance plan should address look and feel and how things such as global navigation persist across your site. (To find out more about the look and feel capabilities of SharePoint, check out Chapter 13.)

## *Content Management*

Metadata, content types, and taxonomies (oh my!) can help reduce the plague of redundant-but-slightly-different information.

To leverage the content management of your SharePoint installation, encourage consistency around metadata and how things are tagged. Content types are a great way to ensure that a core set of tags are consistently applied to similar content, making the content easier to find, easier to reuse, and easier to filter. So identify key metadata that needs to be formalized via content types and applied across SharePoint sites, and then develop governance around them.

## Reusing Web Parts

One great feature of SharePoint is the fact that someone can create a really useful Web Part and then export and import it for use somewhere else. Plenty of third-party Web Parts are available for download on the web. Unfortunately, some Web Parts contain malicious code that can pose security problems or just simply don't work as advertised. Likewise, even some internally developed Web Parts can present problems if they allow users to configure them. When you're ready to use a third-party Web Part, make sure you look at a reputable company with plenty of SharePoint expertise.

Web Parts need to be subjected to controls before they're added to your SharePoint sites. Develop governance around how they're tested and approved, what the change control process looks like, and how they're released and made available.

## Keeping Things Current: Web Operations Management

*Web Operations Management* is the care and feeding of your SharePoint sites. You may find it's easy to think about SharePoint sites as projects with defined beginnings, middles, and ends. But in reality, they're more organic than that. Web sites are like living entities, which grow and change over time. Like decorative hedges, they require pruning and maintenance or they get out of control pretty fast.

The more traffic your site sees, the more important it is to stay on top of that maintenance. Web Operations Managers wield the pruning shears that shape SharePoint to reflect the strategic vision and technical goals of the company while ensuring that things like verifying that links still work or identifying and deleting irrelevant or outdated content get done. You need to designate someone with a green thumb to prune and water your SharePoint site.



## **Chapter 26**

---

# **Ten Ways to Become a SharePoint Guru**

---

**A**s a SharePoint expert, you can add value to key SharePoint projects and your organization in general. By understanding the capabilities of SharePoint and understanding what is and isn't possible, you can steer a project and achieve efficiencies. By developing an encyclopedic knowledge of SharePoint, you avoid wasting the time of an army of people trying to figure out SharePoint for the first time. You will quickly become the go-to person for SharePoint in your organization. And because SharePoint is central to most processes, you will by default become a valuable asset. Don't believe me? Just put your resume up on a job board after you're a SharePoint expert and see how many organizations come calling.

In this chapter, I share with you some of the resources and approaches that I've used to master SharePoint. Even if your goal isn't mastery, these suggestions help you get up to speed and become a SharePoint expert in no time.

### ***Getting Information from the Horse's Mouth***

If you're an IT professional, chances are you've used Microsoft's TechNet site, which is dedicated to the technical aspects of its products. On TechNet, you find technical libraries and administrator guides for IT administrators for SharePoint (and every other Microsoft product). The library includes loads of information on planning and deploying your SharePoint implementation. You also find dozens of worksheets you can use to assist in your planning. You can use TechNet to find all sorts of satiable information. (See Chapter 24 for the top ten greatest SharePoint content locations on TechNet.)

Microsoft's site dedicated to developers — the Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN) — features portals showcasing development-related articles and resources. You can find a Developer Center for SharePoint along with all the other Microsoft products. The home page for MSDN is <http://msdn.microsoft.com>. You can find the SharePoint Developer Center at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/sharepoint>.



Be sure to check out the latest edition of *MSDN Magazine*, the Microsoft Journal for Developers, while you're on MSDN. You'll find lots of detailed articles explaining how stuff works. Access *MSDN Magazine* at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/magazine>.

Software development kits (SDKs) are excellent resources for finding out how to develop custom SharePoint applications. Even if you never plan on writing one line of code, SDKs provide extensive documentation on product architecture. If you want to get your mind around what makes SharePoint work, poke your head into the SDK.

You can access the SharePoint SDKs online via the Developer Centers on MSDN. You can also find links that download the SDKs on the MSDN Developer Centers. When you download an SDK, it usually includes sample applications to demonstrate developer opportunities. The SharePoint Developer Center is located at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/sharepoint/aa905688.aspx>.

One of the best resources for accessing end-user documentation is Office Online. You'll find walkthroughs of all sorts of tasks and resources for use with SharePoint clients and servers. You can find Office Online at <http://office.microsoft.com/en-us/sharepointserver>. Click the Products tab to see a list of all the products you can peruse on the site.

You can also find Discussion Groups for all the products in the Office 2013 suite, including SharePoint, at [www.microsoft.com/office/community/en-us/default.mspx](http://www.microsoft.com/office/community/en-us/default.mspx).

The Microsoft Download Center is an excellent resource for finding all sorts of downloads. By conducting an advanced search, you can choose SharePoint from a list of products to see all relevant downloads. Sort by release date to see the most recent downloads first. Visit the Download Center at [www.microsoft.com/downloads](http://www.microsoft.com/downloads).



Any time you download a file from Microsoft's website, be sure to scroll to the bottom of the page to see a list of related downloads.

## Reading SharePoint Blogs

Now that SharePoint has been around for a while, you can easily find lots of good resources online. Plenty of websites are dedicated to SharePoint. And the blogosphere is chock-full of people blogging about SharePoint. Generally speaking, most of what you find about SharePoint 2010 still applies to SharePoint 2013. However, I recommend avoiding content related to SharePoint 2003 and 2007.

Microsoft encourages its product teams and employees to blog about the products they're working on. These blogs give you an insider's track on announcements and tutorials that you can't get anywhere else:

- ✓ **SharePoint Team Blog:** This is the official blog of Microsoft's SharePoint Product Group. You can find SharePoint-related announcements at <http://blogs.msdn.com/sharepoint>.
- ✓ **Microsoft Cloud Blog:** Read everything you ever wanted to know about Office 365, including SharePoint Online, at [http://blogs.office.com/b/microsoft\\_office\\_365\\_blog](http://blogs.office.com/b/microsoft_office_365_blog).
- ✓ **Office Team Blogs:** This blog covers all of the latest Microsoft Office products. <http://blogs.office.com>.
- ✓ **Searching MSDN Blogs:** Perhaps the best way to find good articles in blog posts from Microsoft employees is to search their blogosphere at <http://blogs.msdn.com/search>.

## Finding Local User Groups

Most major cities have a user group (or two) dedicated to SharePoint. If your city or town doesn't, look for a .NET or Windows group and ask about SharePoint. User groups are a great place to connect with other SharePoint junkies (or newbies). Groups in larger towns often have SharePoint celebrities visit from time to time.

Many user groups also have an online presence. If you can't find a group in your immediate area, go online and find the one closest to you. These groups often use SharePoint and post articles and content from their meetings. Maybe they'd be willing to use Lync so you can connect online.

I also recommend keeping an eye on the Microsoft Events and Webcasts page ([www.microsoft.com/events](http://www.microsoft.com/events)). You might find an event in your area or one worth traveling to.

## *Building a Virtual Lab*

Sometimes, you just need a place to play. That's the role of a virtual lab. (And not the role of your personal My Site, I might add.) Running a virtual lab is easier than you think.

In the old days, you had to use dedicated hardware to run a lab. Now, you can use software in a virtual machine — a kind of machine inside a machine. I use a dedicated server to host lots of virtual machines, but I also run virtual machines on my laptop all the time.

You don't even have to build your own virtual machine. Here are two ways you can access off-the-shelf virtual labs:

- ✓ **Microsoft Virtual Labs:** Microsoft hosts labs online of all its popular products. Use your browser to access these labs. You can find a list of available labs at <https://msevents.microsoft.com>, and then select Virtual Labs in the tab.
- ✓ **Microsoft Virtual Hard Disks:** Microsoft provides preconfigured virtual hard drives that you can download and use in your own virtual environment. You can find a list of available virtual hard drives at <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/bb738372.aspx>.

Popular virtualization platforms include Microsoft's Hyper-V, VMWare's Workstation, and Oracle Virtual Box. If you use virtual machines on your own hardware, it takes some time to get up to speed. New entries constantly appear in this cloud infrastructure space.

If you want to have a company host your virtual machine in the cloud, you can check out Microsoft's Azure services and Amazon's Web Services. Lately, I have been using Hyper-V in Windows Server 2012 and have been very happy. Windows Server 2012 was designed for Hyper-V, and the experience is very pleasant. (In the old days, I was a big fan of Virtual PC. But then Microsoft went and made SharePoint 2010 require a 64-bit operating system, and Virtual PC didn't support a 64-bit operating system. That caused me to look around, and I became a big fan of VMWare's Workstation product.)

Because I now have a dedicated server running Hyper-V machines, I have been happy with Windows Server 2012. I now use my laptop to connect to my own personal cloud server (just a big server with lots of memory that I access over the Internet). This has really saved strain on my back because I no longer have to lug around a beefy laptop with all my virtual machines stored on external drives. I carry a light laptop and connect to my virtual machines over the Internet.

## Starting with a Good Foundation

If you really want to master SharePoint, you need a good foundation. SharePoint is built on the .NET Framework, which is a good starting place, but it also helps to know these skills:

- ✓ Web developer skills, such as XHTML, CSS, and JavaScript for creating visually interesting user experiences
- ✓ XML, XSLT, and XPath for manipulating content into the format you need to drive great user experiences
- ✓ ASP.NET for understanding how to get the most out of the SharePoint 2013 toolkit
- ✓ HTML5 and .NET development for creating next-generation visual presentation of content and building desktop SharePoint applications

Depending on what you’re trying to master in SharePoint, you may need other domain-specific foundations. For example, knowledge of the Dublin Core and DITA are useful when you use SharePoint for building enterprise content management solutions.

## Borrowing from Others

The code-sharing site CodePlex is a great place to find utilities and add-ons that help you get the most out of SharePoint. Not only can you find useful tools, but you can also download the source code. Even if you aren’t a coder, sometimes just reading through the help text and the code can give you insights as to how things work in SharePoint.

You can find CodePlex online at [www.codeplex.com](http://www.codeplex.com).

## Getting Certified

Microsoft offers two kinds of certification for SharePoint 2013 — an administrative track and a developer track. Pursuing certification is a great way to really dig into any technology; it forces you to get familiar with all the dark corners of the software that you might otherwise ignore.

## *Taking a Peek under the Covers*

One way to really get acquainted with SharePoint is to review the source of the web pages rendered by SharePoint. I like to use Firefox or Internet Explorer because they both color-code the text. You can look at different kinds of pages — publishing pages and Web Part pages — to see the differences. Or you can create a new Web Part page using SharePoint Designer 2013 and then review the code after you methodically add and remove things from the page. Watching the source code change in the browser, you start to see the naming conventions and figure out how things work.

I also like to use a tool such as Firebug with Firefox to view the hierarchical structure of the page, and Internet Explorer's F12 Developer Tools give you lots of good information about whatever site you're viewing.

## *Digging Deeper under the Covers*

When I'm trying to figure out how to do something in SharePoint, I always ask: How did the Microsoft developers do it? All the site templates, pages, and Web Parts that come with SharePoint can be reviewed to see how they're implemented.

All these elements are stored in the 15 Hive, which is located at C:\Program Files\Common Files\microsoft shared\Web Server Extensions\15. Most of what you want to review is in the Templates folder. This is where you find everything from the Publishing Portal template to the templates used to display menus on the web page.



This is a look-but-don't-touch exercise. Don't change these files because they're used by the system. If you want to open them and check them out, make sure to copy them to a location such as your desktop or Documents folder. Never edit the files SharePoint is actually using.

## *Deconstructing a SharePoint Site*

Visual Studio 2012 also provides some great new tools for deconstructing SharePoint sites. With Visual Studio 2012, you can explore a site and copy items, such as columns and content types, for reuse. One of my favorite features is the ability to import a site template into Visual Studio 2012. That means you can create a site with the browser, save it as a site template, and then import the template into Visual Studio 2012. Then you can see the underlying XML that SharePoint uses to define the site.

# Index

---

## • *Symbols and Numerics* •

- \* (catch-all asterisk), 280
- # (hashtag), 188, 212
- () (parentheses), 261
- “ (quotation marks), searching for strings using, 259
- \* (wildcard) searches, 259
- 15 Hive (website), 345

## • A •

- Access view, 109
- accessing
  - administrative access, 167, 180–181
  - administrator’s Recycle Bin, 249–250
  - app settings, 76–78
  - groups, 322–323
  - restricting access to folders, 239
  - SharePoint SDKs, 342
  - Team Sites in Office 365, 44–46
  - users, 322–323
- Active Directory (AD), 197
- Activities feed, 210
- AD (Active Directory), 197
- Ad Hoc views, 119
- Add a Document dialog box, 235
- Add a New Stage option, 296
- Add a Page dialog box, 206
- Add Link dialog box, 145
- Add Promoted Result dialog box, 266–267
- Add Result Block dialog box, 267
- adding
  - apps to Quick Launch, 164
  - apps to your site, 74–75
  - columns to apps, 91–98
  - documents to SkyDrive, 190–191
  - media, 56–58
  - notes, 202
- pages to wikis, 205–206
- RSS feeds with web addresses, 216
- Search Center sites, 270–272
- SharePoint 2013 RSS feeds to Outlook 2013, 214
- tags to wiki pages, 59
- users to groups, 168–170
- web pages, 310–324
- Adding Custom List dialog box, 90–91
- Adding Survey dialog box, 74
- adjusting
  - Advanced settings, 83–86
  - default XSLT (Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations) template, 217
  - description, 79
  - look and feel, 156–160, 315
  - navigation, 79
  - site icons, 154–156
  - site look and logo, 49–50
  - tabs in top link bar, 162–163
  - Team Site navigation, 160–165
  - title, 79
- Versioning settings, 80–81
- views, 113, 121–122
- Web Part properties, 67–69
- administration, 130
- administrative access
  - granting, 180–181
  - managing, 167
- Advanced (Web Parts), 68
- advanced settings, 82–86
- aggregating SharePoint activity with Newsfeed hub, 188–189
- AJAX Options (Web Parts), 68
- Alert Me button, 200
- alerts
  - about, 217–220
  - on approval/rejection status, 255
  - relationship with approval workflows, 295
- Amazon’s Web Services, 344

- AND operator, 260
  - anonymous visitor, as SharePoint user, 13
  - app administrators, 180
  - Appearance (Web Parts), 67
  - applying
    - Advanced settings, 83–86
    - versioning settings, 80–81
  - approval workflows
    - compared with content approval, 292–293
    - configuring, 293
    - options, 296–297
    - setting up, 293–295
  - Approve permission level, 183
  - approvers, 171, 253
  - Approvers (Assign To) option, 296
  - Approvers (Order) option, 296
  - approving items, 298–300
  - apps (applications)
    - about, 33, 73–74
    - accessing settings, 76–78
    - adding columns to, 91–98
    - adding to Quick Launch, 164
    - adding to your site, 74–75
    - assigning permissions to, 167
    - configuring General Settings, 78–87
    - creating alerts to, 218–219
    - creating folders within, 237–238
    - creating permissions for, 175–176
    - custom, creating, 89–106
    - discussion board, 107, 208–210
    - downloading from SharePoint Store, 104–106
    - editing data with Quick Edit, 116
    - filtering with views, 113–114
    - getting documents into, 232–239
    - importing spreadsheets as, 100–101
    - managing data in Datasheet view, 117–119
    - permissions, 175–176, 181
    - planning, 89–90
    - promoting in searches, 265–269
    - removing from Quick Launch, 164
    - reusing columns in, 93
    - securing, 173–179
    - in SharePoint Online public website, 310–311
  - viewing data in, 107–123
  - views of, 107–108
  - Apps Web Part category, 64
  - archiving
    - about, 273
  - Content Organizer, 279–281
  - creating information management policies, 274–277
  - managing records in place, 281–283
  - placing records on litigation hold, 283–284
  - setting up Records Centers, 277–278
  - terminology, 273–274
  - ASP.NET, 147
  - assigning permissions, 167, 325
  - Audience Targeting settings, 87
  - Auditing policy, 274
  - Azure services (Microsoft), 344
- **B** •
- backup, SharePoint Online, 29
  - Barcodes policy, 274
  - Basic Search Center, 271
  - BCS (Business Connectivity Services), 18
  - benefits, of SharePoint Online, 27–29
  - Blog Web Part category, 64
  - blogs
    - about, 194–195, 202–203
    - creating, 203–204
    - posting to, 204–205
    - reading SharePoint, 343
  - Boolean operators, building compound search queries using, 260
  - branding, 18, 160, 338
  - browsers
    - viewing documents in, 246–247
    - viewing Team Sites in, 43–44
  - building
    - Ad Hoc views, 119
    - alerts to apps, 218–219
    - blogs, 203–204
    - calculated columns, 102–103
    - Calendar view, 120
    - client portals in SharePoint Online, 317–326

- 
- compound search queries using Boolean operators, 260
  - custom apps, 89–106
  - discussion board apps, 208–209
  - effective governance groups, 336
  - folders within apps, 237–238
  - information management policies, 274–277
  - List workflows, 290–291
  - new Web Part pages, 60
  - new Wiki Content pages, 55–59
  - permissions for apps and documents, 175–176
  - permissions for subsites, 173–174
  - personal profiles, 196–198
  - personal sites, 193–194
  - public websites in SharePoint Online, 305–315
  - SharePoint sites, 39–41
  - Standard views, 109–112
  - views for small screens, 224–225
  - virtual labs, 344
  - wiki apps, 205
  - workflows, 290–291
  - built-in views, 122
  - business applications, using SharePoint for, 10
  - Business Connectivity Services (BCS), 18
  - Business Data Web Part category, 64
  - business intelligence
    - about, 18–19, 332
    - using SharePoint for, 10
  - C ●
  - Calculated columns, 101–103
  - Calendar view, 109, 120
  - catch-all asterisk (\*), 280
  - categorizing wiki pages, 59
  - CC option, 297
  - certification, 345
  - Change the Look link, 135
  - changing
    - Advanced settings, 83–86
  - default XSLT (Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations)
    - template, 217
  - description, 79
  - look and feel, 156–160, 315
  - navigation, 79
  - site icons, 154–156
  - site look and logo, 49–50
  - tabs in top link bar, 162–163
  - Team Site navigation, 160–165
  - title, 79
  - Versioning settings, 80–81
  - views, 113, 121–122
  - Web Part properties, 67–69
  - channels, targeting devices using, 225
  - checking
    - status of approval workflows, 300–302
    - user permissions, 178–179
  - checking in/out documents, 242–245
  - Choose Connection dialog box, 70
  - choosing
    - columns for views, 112–113
    - display styles, 117
    - between IE, Chrome, and Firefox, 44
  - Web Parts, 63–66
    - between Wiki Content pages and Web Part pages, 53–54
    - wiki pages, 52–53
  - Chrome (Google), 44
  - Classic view (Mobile Browser View feature), 224
  - client portals
    - creating in SharePoint Online, 317–326
    - launching, 325–326
    - locking, 320–321
    - planning for, 317–320
  - Closed Parts, 69
  - cloud, 26–27
  - CodePlex (website), 345
  - code-sharing, 345
  - collaborating, 10, 50
  - columns
    - adding to apps, 91–98
    - choosing for views, 112–113
    - reusing in apps, 93
    - types, 94–96

- comments, on blogs, 205
  - Community Web Part category, 65
  - Comparison operator, 113
  - compliance, 20–21
  - Compliance Details dialog box, 281
  - components, of SharePoint, 15–16
  - Composed Looks link, 132, 160
  - conditions, 280
  - Configuration Export link, 134
  - Configuration Import link, 134
  - configuring
    - approval workflows, 293
    - content approval, 250–255
    - current navigation, 143–144
    - General Settings, 78–87
    - global navigation, 141–143
    - SharePoint 2013, 331
    - site collection, 271–272
    - static navigation, 144–146
  - connecting
    - to SharePoint site, 288–289
    - Web Parts, 69–71
  - Contemporary view (Mobile Browser View feature), 224
  - content
    - about, 22
    - pushing to Windows Phones, 225–226
    - removing from search results, 269–270
    - searching for, 258–262
    - tagging, 201–202
  - content, personal profile and
    - about, 187–188
    - aggregating SharePoint Activity with Newsfeed hub, 188–189
    - blogs, 194–195
    - creating profiles, 196–198
    - My Site hubs, 187–188
    - saving with SkyDrive hub, 189–192
    - tracking favorite sites, 192–194
  - content approval
    - about, 250–251
    - alerts on approval/rejection status, 255
    - approving, 253–255
    - compared with approval workflows, 292–293
    - configuring, 251–253
    - disabling, 255
    - disapproving, 255
    - enabling, 251–253
    - identifying approvers, 253
  - content management, 338–339
  - Content Organizer, 274, 279–281
  - Content Rollup Web Part category, 65
  - Content Types, 274, 313
  - Content Web Part category, 65–66
  - contextual commands, 74
  - contextual menus, displaying, 81
  - contextual navigation, 140. *See also current navigation*
  - Contribute permission level, 183
  - controlling
    - administrative access, 167
    - alerts, 220
    - app data in Datasheet view, 117–119
    - existing views, 121–122
    - permissions, 175, 176–177
    - records in place, 281–283
  - SharePoint Designer access, 184
  - SharePoint group membership, 167, 168–173
  - top link bar, 162
  - user accounts, 321–325
  - wiki pages, 58
- Create a New Folder dialog box, 237
- Create Column dialog box, 102
- creating
  - Ad Hoc views, 119
  - alerts to apps, 218–219
  - blogs, 203–204
  - calculated columns, 102–103
  - Calendar view, 120
  - client portals in SharePoint Online, 317–326
  - compound search queries using Boolean operators, 260
  - custom apps, 89–106
  - discussion board apps, 208–209
  - effective governance groups, 336
  - folders within apps, 237–238
  - information management policies, 274–277
  - List workflows, 290–291
  - new Web Part pages, 60
  - new Wiki Content pages, 55–59

- permissions for apps and documents, 175–176
- permissions for subsites, 173–174
- personal profiles, 196–198
- personal sites, 193–194
- public websites in SharePoint Online, 305–315
- SharePoint sites, 39–41
  - Standard views, 109–112
  - views for small screens, 224–225
  - virtual labs, 344
  - wiki apps, 205
  - workflows, 290–291
- CRM (Customer Relationship Management) system, 286
  - current navigation, 140, 143–144
- Current View (Web Parts), 67
- Custom List app, 90–91
- Custom view in SharePoint Designer, 109
- Customer Relationship Management (CRM) system, 286
  
- **D** ●
- Dashboard Designer, 19, 36
- data
  - editing with Quick Edit in apps, 116
  - managing in Datasheet view, 117–119
  - viewing in apps, 107–123
- data center, SharePoint Online, 27–28
- data cube, 19
- data entry, validating, 96–98
- Datasheet view
  - about, 109
  - managing app data in, 117–119
- deconstructing SharePoint sites, 345
- default XSLT (Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations) template, modifying, 217
- deleting
  - apps from Quick Launch, 164
  - content from search results, 269–270
  - permissions, 174–175
  - public websites, 308
  - tabs in top link bar, 162–163
  - Web Parts, 69
- Delicious (website), 200
- description, changing, 79
- Design Manager tool, 135
- Design permission level, 183
- designing, 171, 338
- developers, 330–331
- Device Channels, 135, 225
- dialog boxes
  - Add a Document, 235
  - Add a Page, 206
  - Add Link, 145
  - Add Promoted Result, 266–267
  - Add Result Block, 267
  - Adding Custom List, 90–91
  - Adding Survey, 74
  - Choose Connection, 70
  - Compliance Details, 281
  - Create a New Folder, 237
  - Create Column, 102
  - Manage Administrators, 320–321
  - modal, 85
  - Navigation Heading, 145
  - New Discussion, 209
  - New RSS Feed, 214
  - Open Site, 289
  - Reply, 210
  - Share, 168–169, 175–176
  - Stage Properties, 278
  - Start a New Site, 194
- disabling
  - content approval, 255
  - features, 150–151
  - Quick Launch, 164–165
- discussion board apps
  - about, 107, 208
  - creating, 208–209
  - posting on, 209
  - replying on, 210
- Discussion Groups (website), 342
- display styles, choosing, 117
- displaying
  - contextual menus, 81
  - RSS feeds, 214–217
  - tasks in Gantt view, 120–121
  - views via Web Parts, 123
- DNS name, 318

Document Sets Web Part category, 65  
document/item administrators, 180  
documents  
about, 47–48  
adding to SkyDrive, 190–191  
checking in/out, 242–245  
creating permissions for, 175–176  
editing properties, 241–242  
following from other sites, 191–192  
getting into apps, 232–239  
moving, 237  
Office, viewing on phones/tablets, 226–227  
recovering deleted, 248–250  
securing, 173–179  
sending links for, 245–246  
sending to apps via e-mail, 234  
sharing, 231–232  
updating properties using Quick Edit view, 236  
uploading, 47–48, 233–234, 234–239  
viewing in browsers, 246–247  
viewing properties, 241  
workflow, 231  
working with, 240–248  
domain names, 308–309  
downloading  
apps from SharePoint Store, 104–106  
SDKs, 342  
Due Date for All Tasks option, 296  
Duration for Serial Tasks option, 296  
Duration Units option, 297

## • E •

ECM (Enterprise Content Management), 10, 22  
eDiscovery (electronic discovery), 19  
Edit permission level, 183  
editing  
app data with Quick Edit, 116  
document properties, 241–242  
web pages, 313–314  
Web Part properties, 68–69  
wiki pages, 206–208  
electronic discovery (eDiscovery), 19

ellipsis, 240–241  
e-mail, sending documents to apps via, 234  
E-Mail a Link button, 200  
embedding YouTube videos, 56–57  
Enable Content Approval option, 297  
enabling  
content approval, 251–253  
features, 150–151  
RSS feeds, 212–213  
End on Document Change option, 297  
End on First Rejection option, 297  
Enterprise Content Management (ECM), 10, 22  
Enterprise Search Center, 271  
enterprise-class software, 23  
Equality operator, 113  
Everyone feed, 210  
Everyone group, 171  
Excel Services Viewers group, 171  
excluding search terms, 260  
executable (.exe) files, 235  
executive buy-in and support, 336  
Expand Groups option, 296  
Explore SharePoint (website), 330  
Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations (XSLT) template, 217  
extranet, 42

## • F •

Facebook, 21  
FAST search, 21, 258  
favorite sites, tracking, 192–194  
features  
about, 149–150  
common, 151–152  
disabling, 150–151  
enabling, 150–151  
extending SharePoint with, 152  
feeds, RSS  
about, 210–211  
adding with web addresses, 216  
displaying, 214–217  
enabling, 212–213  
reading with Outlook, 214  
viewing, 212–214

Feel, Look and (section)  
 about, 134–136, 153–154  
 changing look and feel, 49–50, 156–160,  
 315  
 changing site icons, 154–156  
 changing Team Site navigation, 160–165  
 composed looks, 160  
 fonts, 158–159  
 Quick Launch, 163–165  
 top link bar, 161–163  
 usability, 159–160  
 fields, 90  
 15 Hive (website), 345  
 files, uploading using Windows Explorer,  
 234–235  
 filtering apps with views, 113–114  
 Filters Web Part category, 65  
 finding  
 local user groups, 343  
 Site Settings, 127–129  
 Firebug, 345  
 Firefox (Mozilla), 44  
 folders  
 assigning permissions to, 167  
 creating within apps, 237–238  
 nested, 239  
 restricting access to, 239  
 securing, 173–179  
 uploading documents into, 237–239  
 followed (visited) link color, 159  
 Following feed, 210  
 fonts, 158–159  
 Form settings, 87  
 formats, views, 109  
 Forms Web Part category, 65  
 foundation skills, 345  
 Fpweb.net (website), 25  
 Full Control permission level, 183  
 Full Screen UI (mobile Browser View  
 feature), 224  
 functionality  
 about, 31  
 applications, 33  
 features, 35–36  
 integrating with Office 2013, 36  
 tools, 36

web pages, 33–34  
 Web Parts, 34–35  
 website templates, 17, 31–32

## • G •

Gantt view  
 about, 109  
 displaying tasks in, 120–121  
 General Settings, configuring, 78–87  
 global navigation, 140, 141–143, 337  
 Google, 264  
 Google Chrome, 44  
 governance, maintaining control with,  
 335–339  
 granting administrative access, 180–181  
 green icon, 235  
 grouping results, 114–115  
 groups  
 about, 168  
 accessing, 322–323  
 adding users, 168–170  
 permission structure, 170–171  
 securing site collections, 171–173  
 viewing permissions for, 177–178

## • H •

hardware, SharePoint Online, 27–28  
 hashtag (#), 188, 212  
 header, 44  
 hiding Title column, 99  
 hierarchical archiving, 273  
 Hierarchy Managers, 171  
 How to Use This Wiki Library page, 55  
 Human Resources Solution (Portal  
 Integrators), 152

Hyper-V (Microsoft), 344

## • I •

*IBM Journal*, 18  
 icons  
 explained, 5  
 site, changing, 154–156

IDE (Integrated Developmental Environment), 286  
identifying approvers, 253  
identity management, 19–20  
IIS (Microsoft Internet Information Services), 15  
Image Renditions link, 136  
Import Design Package, 135  
importing spreadsheets as apps, 100–101  
In Place Records Management feature, 281–283  
including search terms, 260  
Information Management Policies, 274–277  
information portals, using SharePoint for, 10  
initiating workflows, 297–298  
inserting  
    Note Boards, 57–58  
    Web Parts, 62–63  
installing  
    SharePoint 2013, 287, 331  
    SharePoint Designer 2013, 287  
Integrated Development Environment (IDE), 286  
integrating with Office 2013, 36  
Internet Explorer (Microsoft)  
    about, 9, 44, 234–235  
    F12 Developer Tools, 345  
Internet resources. *See also* websites  
    CodePlex, 345  
    Delicious, 200  
    Discussion Groups, 342  
    Explore SharePoint, 330  
    15 Hive, 345  
    Fpweb.net, 25  
    Google, 264  
    Microsoft Cloud Blog, 343  
    Microsoft Download Center, 288, 342  
    Microsoft Events and Webcasts, 343  
    Microsoft TechNet, 26, 57, 329–333, 341–342  
    Microsoft Virtual Hard Disks, 344  
    Microsoft Virtual Labs, 344  
    MSDN (Microsoft Developer Network), 342  
    Office 365 portal URL, 44

Office Online, 342  
Office Team Blogs, 343  
Plan for SharePoint, 330  
Search Center, 270–272  
Searching MSDN Blogs, 343  
SharePoint, 16–17  
SharePoint Online Administration Center, 306  
SharePoint Team Blog, 343  
SkyDrive, 190  
TechNet, 291, 329–333, 341–342  
Wikipedia, 202  
Workflow Resource Center, 291, 333  
IT professionals, SharePoint for, 329

• K •

keyword, 201

• L •

Labels policy, 274  
launching client portals, 325–326  
Layout (Web Parts), 68  
layout, wiki, 207–208  
left navigation pane, 44  
Library apps, 231–232, 233  
Library permissions, 181  
Library Settings, 76–78  
light-up feature, 286  
Likes feed, 210  
Limited Access permission level, 183  
links, sending for documents, 245–246  
list column, 93  
List permissions, 181  
List Settings, 76–78  
List Templates link, 131  
List View Web Parts, 62, 67–69  
List workflow, 290–291  
litigation hold, placing records on, 283–284  
local user groups, finding, 343  
locating  
    local user groups, 343  
    Site Settings, 127–129  
locations, tracking, 226

locking client portals, 320–321  
 logo, changing, 49–50  
 Look and Feel section  
   about, 134–136, 153–154  
   changing look and feel, 49–50,  
 156–160, 315  
   changing site icons, 154–156  
   changing Team Site navigation, 160–165  
   composed looks, 160  
   fonts, 158–159  
   Quick Launch, 163–165  
   top link bar, 161–163  
   usability, 159–160  
 Lookup column, 101, 103–104  
 Luhn, H.P. (author), 18  
 Lync (Microsoft), 221

## • M •

maintaining  
   control with governance, 335–339  
   SharePoint, 332  
 Manage Administrators dialog box,  
   320–321  
 Manage Hierarchy permission level, 184  
 Managed Metadata service, 273  
 Managed Navigation, 147  
 managing  
   administrative access, 167  
   alerts, 220  
   app data in Datasheet view, 117–119  
   existing views, 121–122  
   permissions, 175, 176–177  
   records in place, 281–283  
   SharePoint Designer access, 184  
   SharePoint group membership, 167,  
 168–173  
   top link bar, 162  
   user accounts, 321–325  
   wiki pages, 58  
 Master Pages link, 131, 136  
 media, adding, 56–58  
 Media Web Part category, 65–66  
 members, site, 168  
 Mentions feed, 210  
 metadata, 90

metadata-driven, 273  
 microblogs  
   about, 208, 210–211  
   using, 211–212  
 Microsoft  
   about, 11–12, 25  
   Azure services, 344  
   Hyper-V, 344  
*Microsoft Business Intelligence For Dummies*  
   (Withee), 18, 332  
 Microsoft Cloud Blog (website), 343  
 Microsoft Developer Network  
   (MSDN), 331, 342  
 Microsoft Download Center (website),  
   288, 342  
 Microsoft Events and Webcasts  
   (website), 343  
 Microsoft Internet Explorer  
   about, 9, 44, 234–235  
   F12 Developer Tools, 345  
 Microsoft Internet Information Services  
   (IIS), 15  
 Microsoft Lync, 221  
 Microsoft Office 365  
   about, 12  
   accessing Team Sites in, 44–46  
   managing user accounts, 321–325  
 Microsoft Lync, 221  
   public websites, 308  
   registering domain names with, 308–309  
   resources, 318  
   server administrator role, 180  
   storage space, 318  
 Microsoft SharePoint 2010, 116, 288  
 Microsoft SharePoint 2010 Workflow,  
   287. *See also* out-of-the-box approval  
   workflows  
 Microsoft SharePoint 2013. *See also*  
   specific topics  
   about, 9–15  
   accessing SDKs, 342  
   adding RSS feeds to Outlook 2013, 214  
   aggregating activity with Newsfeed hub,  
 188–189  
   casual users, 13  
   compared with social media, 15

- Microsoft SharePoint 2013 (*continued*)
- components, 15–16
  - configuring, 331
  - creating sites, 39–41
  - deconstructing sites, 345
  - features, 35–36
  - installing, 287, 331
  - maintaining, 332
  - managing group membership, 167, 168–173
  - operating, 332
  - platform, 288
  - power user, 14
  - reading blogs, 343
  - requesting sites, 41–42
  - resources, 341–346
  - Team Site, 46–50
  - terminology, 17–22
  - tools, 36
  - topics on Microsoft TechNet website, 329–333
  - using, 332
  - websites, 16–17
  - Workflow, 287
  - workflow in, 286–287
- Microsoft SharePoint Designer (SPD) 2013
- about, 36, 286, 288
  - connecting to SharePoint site, 288–289
  - creating views with, 113
  - creating workflows, 290–291
  - installing, 287
  - managing access, 184
  - modifying views with, 113
- Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2013, 10–11
- Microsoft SharePoint On Premise, 26–27, 318, 331
- Microsoft SharePoint Online
- about, 11, 23–25, 331
  - apps in public websites, 310–311
  - backup, 29
  - benefits of, 27–29
  - compared with SharePoint On Premise, 26–27
  - creating client portals in, 317–326
  - creating public websites in, 305–315
- managing user accounts, 321–325
- popularity of, 25
- Microsoft SharePoint Online
- Administration Center (website), 306
  - Microsoft SharePoint Server 2013, 11
  - Microsoft SharePoint Server Enterprise
  - Site features, 152
- Microsoft SharePoint Server Publishing
- Infrastructure feature, 161, 237
- Microsoft SharePoint Server Standard Site features, 152
- Microsoft SharePoint Store, downloading apps from, 104–106
- Microsoft SharePoint Team Blog (website), 343
- Microsoft SharePoint technical administrator, 14
- Microsoft SharePoint user, 14
- Microsoft SharePoint visitor, 13
- Microsoft SQL Server, 15
- Microsoft TechNet (website), 26, 57, 291, 329–333, 341–342
- Microsoft Virtual Hard Disks (website), 344
- Microsoft Virtual Labs (website), 344
- Microsoft Windows Server operating system, 15
- minimizing Web Parts, 69
- Miscellaneous (Web Parts), 68
- Mobile Browser View feature, 35, 223–224
- Mobile view, 122
- mobility
- about, 20, 223
  - creating views for small screens, 224–225
  - pushing content to Windows Phones, 225–226
- targeting devices using channels, 225
- tracking locations, 226
- viewing Office documents on phones/tablets, 226–227
- viewing SharePoint on mobile devices, 223–224
- modal dialog boxes, 85
- moderation. *See content approval*
- modifying
- Advanced settings, 83–86

default XSLT (Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations)  
 template, 217  
 description, 79  
 look and feel, 156–160, 315  
 navigation, 79  
 site icons, 154–156  
 site look and logo, 49–50  
 tabs in top link bar, 162–163  
 Team Site navigation, 160–165  
 title, 79  
 Versioning settings, 80–81  
 views, 113, 121–122  
 Web Part properties, 67–69  
 moving documents, 237  
 Mozilla Firefox, 44  
 MSDN (Microsoft Developer Network),  
 331, 342  
*MSDN Magazine*, 342  
 My Site, 187–188, 200, 319

**• N •**

Name property, 241  
 navigation  
 about, 136, 139–141  
 changing, 79  
 current, 140, 143–144  
 global, 140, 141–143, 337  
 Managed Navigation, 147  
 static, 144–146  
 using Web Parts, 146–147  
 Navigation Heading dialog box, 145  
 navigation pane, 44  
 NEAR operator, 262  
 nested folders, 239  
 .NET framework, 288, 345  
 .NET programming, 286  
 network file shares, 231  
 Network Operation Center (NOC), 28  
 networking, social  
 about, 199  
 alerts, 217–220  
 blogs, 202–205  
 discussion boards, 208–210  
 feeds, 210–212

microblogs, 210–212  
 Microsoft Lync, 221  
 My Site, 200  
 reviewing policies, 337–338  
 RSS feeds, 210–211, 212–217  
 sharing with Ribbon, 200  
 tagging, 200–202  
 tracking with Ribbon, 200  
 using SharePoint for, 10  
 wikis, 205–208  
 New Discussion dialog box, 209  
 New RSS Feed dialog box, 214  
 Newsfeed hub  
 about, 210–211  
 aggregating SharePoint activity with,  
 188–189  
 blogs, 195  
 Newsfeed tab, 188  
 NOC (Network Operation Center), 28  
 NOT operator, 260  
 Note Boards, 201  
 Note Boards, inserting, 57–58  
 notes, adding, 202  
 Notification Message option, 296

**• O •**

OAuth (Open Authorization), 20  
 obtaining URLs to documents, 245  
 Office 365 (Microsoft)  
 about, 12  
 accessing Team Sites in, 44–46  
 managing user accounts, 321–325  
 Microsoft Lync, 221  
 public websites, 308  
 registering domain names with, 308–309  
 resources, 318  
 server administrator role, 180  
 storage space, 318  
*Office 365 For Dummies* (Reed and Withee),  
 12, 23  
 Office 2013  
 integrating SharePoint with, 36  
 using, 247–248  
 Office documents, viewing on phones/  
 tablets, 226–227

Office Online (website), 342  
Office Team Blogs (website), 343  
Office Web Applications, 246–247  
ONEAR operator, 262  
Open Authorization (OAuth), 20  
Open Site dialog box, 289  
opening Web Part tool pane, 68–69  
operating SharePoint, 332  
OR operator, 260  
Oracle Virtual Box, 344  
organizing sites, 48–49  
outcome, 300  
Outlook, reading RSS feeds with, 214  
out-of-the-box approval workflows  
    about, 292  
    configuring approval workflows, 293  
    content approval compared with  
        approval workflows, 292–293  
    setting up approval workflows, 293–295  
owners, site, 168

## • P •

page content, 44  
Page Layouts link, 131, 136  
pages, web  
    about, 51  
    adding, 310–324  
    choosing between Wiki Content pages  
        and Web Part pages, 53–54  
    choosing Web Part pages, 53  
    choosing wiki pages, 52–53  
    creating new Web Part pages, 60  
    creating new Wiki Content pages, 55–59  
    editing, 313–314  
    functionality, 33–34  
    reviewing, 310–311  
    reviewing sources of, 345  
Ribbon, 51–52  
    updating, 310–324  
    updating properties, 314  
parentheses (), 261  
People and Groups link, 129  
PerformancePoint Web Part category, 66  
permission levels, 181, 183, 324

permissions  
    about, 108  
    apps, 175–176, 181  
    assigning, 167, 325  
    blogs, 203  
    checking for users, 178–179  
    creating for apps and documents,  
        175–176  
    creating for subsites, 173–174  
    managing, 175, 176–177  
    reinheriting, 174  
    removing, 174–175  
    structure of, 170–171  
    viewing for groups, 177–178  
    viewing for sites, 181–184  
permissions inheritance, 168  
Personal permissions, 181  
personal profile and content  
    about, 187–188  
    aggregating SharePoint Activity with  
        Newsfeed hub, 188–189  
blogs, 194–195  
creating profiles, 196–198  
My Site hubs, 187–188  
saving with SkyDrive hub, 189–192  
tracking favorite sites, 192–194  
phones, viewing Office documents on,  
    226–227  
placing records on litigation hold, 283–284  
Plan for SharePoint (website), 330  
planning  
    apps, 89–90  
    for client portals, 317–320  
platforms  
    SharePoint as a, 11  
    workflow, 287–288  
popularity of SharePoint Online, 25  
Pop-Up app, 46–47  
Portal Integrators' Human Resources  
    Solution, 152  
portals, client  
    creating in SharePoint Online, 317–326  
    launching, 325–326  
    locking, 320–321  
    planning for, 317–320

posting  
to blogs, 204–205  
on discussion board apps, 209  
microblog updates, 211  
primary navigation, 140. *See also* global navigation  
private site collection, 305  
product, SharePoint as a, 11  
profile and content, personal  
about, 187–188  
aggregating SharePoint Activity with Newsfeed hub, 188–189  
blogs, 194–195  
creating profiles, 196–198  
My Site hubs, 187–188  
saving with SkyDrive hub, 189–192  
tracking favorite sites, 192–194  
promoting apps in searches, 265–269  
properties  
about, 90  
changing for Web Parts, 67–69  
editing in documents, 241–242  
updating for documents using Quick Edit view, 236  
updating for web pages, 314  
viewing for documents, 241  
protocols, 235  
proximity, terms in, 261–262  
public websites  
creating in SharePoint Online, 305–315  
deleting, 308  
using SharePoint for, 10  
publishing page, 33–34  
Publishing site, 54  
push technology, 225–226  
pushing content to Windows Phones, 225–226

## • Q •

Query Rules link, 133, 265  
query string, 65  
Quick Deploy Users group, 171  
Quick Edit  
editing app data with, 116  
updating document properties using, 236

Quick Launch, 135, 163–165  
quotation marks (“”), searching for strings using, 259

• R •

Rating settings, 87  
Read permission level, 183  
reading  
RSS feeds with Outlook, 214  
SharePoint blogs, 343  
Recently Published Content, 329  
records  
managing in place, 281–283  
placing on litigation hold, 283–284  
Records Center, 277–278  
records management, 20–21  
recovering deleted documents, 248–250  
Recycle Bin, 248–250  
redundancy, of SharePoint Online, 29  
Reed, Jennifer (author)  
*Office 365 For Dummies*, 12, 23  
refining search results, 263–264  
registering domain names with Office 365, 308–309  
reinheriting permissions, 174  
Remember icon, 5  
removing  
apps from Quick Launch, 164  
content from search results, 269–270  
permissions, 174–175  
public websites, 308  
tabs in top link bar, 162–163  
Web Parts, 69  
renaming Title column, 98  
Reply dialog box, 210  
replying on discussion board apps, 210  
Report Builder, 36  
requesting SharePoint sites, 41–42  
resources  
in Office 365, 318  
SharePoint, 341–346  
Restricted Interfaces for Translation permission level, 184  
Restricted Read permission level, 184  
Restricted Readers group, 171

restricting access to folders, 239  
Result Sources link, 133  
Result Types link, 133  
results, grouping, 114–115  
Retention policy, 274  
Reusable workflow, 290  
reusing  
  columns in apps, 93  
  Web Parts, 339  
reviewing  
  search analytics, 270  
  social networking policies, 337–338  
  sources of web pages, 345  
  web pages, 310–311  
Ribbon  
  about, 51–52, 108  
  checking documents in/out, 242–245  
  sharing and tracking with, 200  
  viewing document properties, 241  
roles of SharePoint users, 13–14  
RSS Feed button, 200  
RSS feeds  
  about, 210–211  
  adding with web addresses, 216  
  displaying, 214–217  
  enabling, 212–213  
  reading with Outlook, 214  
  viewing, 212–214  
RSS view, 122  
RSS Viewer Web Part, 217

● S ●

sans-serif, 158  
saving with SkyDrive hub, 189–192  
Schema link, 133  
SDKs (software development kits), 342  
search analytics, reviewing, 270  
Search and Offline Availability link, 134  
Search Center sites, 270–272  
Search section, 133–134  
Search Service application. *See* searching  
Search Service Application  
  administrator, 270  
Search Settings link, 134  
Search Web Part category, 66  
Searchable Columns link, 134

Search-Driven Content Web Part  
  category, 66  
searching  
  about, 21, 257–258  
  adding Search Center sites, 270–272  
  Boolean operators, 260  
  for content, 258–262  
  excluding terms, 260  
  including terms, 260  
  parentheses, 261  
  promoting apps in, 265–269  
  refining results, 263–264  
  removing content from results, 269–270  
  reviewing search analytics, 270  
  for strings using quotation marks, 259  
  terms in proximity, 261–262  
  usability, 264–269  
  viewing results, 263–264  
  wildcard, 259  
  WORDS operator, 262  
Searching MSDN Blogs (website), 343  
security  
  about, 167  
  apps, 173–179  
  documents, 173–179  
  folders, 173–179  
  granting administrative access, 180–181  
  groups, 168–173  
  managing SharePoint Designer  
    access, 184  
  permissions, 173–179, 181–184  
  SharePoint Online, 29  
    viewing site permissions, 181–184  
Segoe UI fonts, 159  
Selected View (Web Parts), 67  
selecting  
  columns for views, 112–113  
  display styles, 117  
  between IE, Chrome, and Firefox, 44  
  Web Parts, 63–66  
  between Wiki Content pages and Web  
    Part pages, 53–54  
  wiki pages, 52–53  
sending  
  documents to apps via e-mail, 234  
  links to documents, 245–246  
  serifs, 158

- server administrators, 180  
 service administrators, 180  
*setting(s). See also Site settings*  
 accessing for apps, 76–78  
 advanced, 82–86  
 Audience Targeting, 87  
 default view, 122  
 Form, 87  
 General, 78–87  
 global navigation, 143  
 Library, 76–78  
 List, 76–78  
 Rating, 87  
 site collection administrators, 180–181  
 validation, 86–87  
 versioning, 79–82  
**setup**  
 approval workflows, 293–295  
 Records Center, 277–278  
 Share dialog box, 168–169, 175–176  
 Share & Track group, 200  
 SharePoint 2010, 116, 288  
*SharePoint 2010 Development For Dummies*  
 (Withee), 330–331  
 SharePoint 2010 Workflow, 287. *See also* out-of-the-box approval workflows  
 SharePoint 2013. *See also specific topics*  
 about, 9–15  
 accessing SDKs, 342  
 adding RSS feeds to Outlook 2013, 214  
 aggregating activity with Newsfeed hub,  
     188–189  
 casual users, 13  
 compared with social media, 15  
 components, 15–16  
 configuring, 331  
 creating sites, 39–41  
 deconstructing sites, 345  
 features, 35–36  
 installing, 287, 331  
 maintaining, 332  
 managing group membership, 167,  
     168–173  
 operating, 332  
 platform, 288  
 power user, 14  
 reading blogs, 343  
 requesting sites, 41–42  
 resources, 341–346  
 Team Site, 46–50  
 terminology, 17–22  
 tools, 36  
 topics on Microsoft TechNet website,  
     329–333  
 using, 332  
 websites, 16–17  
 Workflow, 287  
 workflow in, 286–287  
 SharePoint Designer (SPD) 2013  
 about, 36, 286, 288  
 connecting to SharePoint site, 288–289  
 creating views with, 113  
 creating workflows, 290–291  
 installing, 287  
 managing access, 184  
 modifying views with, 113  
 SharePoint Foundation 2013, 10–11  
 SharePoint On Premise, 26–27, 318, 331  
 SharePoint Online  
 about, 11, 23–25, 331  
 apps in public websites, 310–311  
 backup, 29  
 benefits of, 27–29  
 compared with SharePoint On Premise,  
     26–27  
 creating client portals in, 317–326  
 creating public websites in, 305–315  
 managing user accounts, 321–325  
 popularity of, 25  
 SharePoint Online Administration Center  
 (website), 306  
 SharePoint Server 2013, 11  
 SharePoint Server Enterprise Site  
     features, 152  
 SharePoint Server Publishing  
     Infrastructure feature, 161, 237  
 SharePoint Server Standard Site  
     features, 152  
 SharePoint Store, downloading apps from,  
     104–106  
 SharePoint Team Blog (website), 343  
 SharePoint technical administrator, 14

- SharePoint user, 14  
SharePoint visitor, 13  
sharing  
  about, 231  
  configuring content approval, 250–255  
  documents, 231–232  
  getting documents into apps, 232–239  
  recovering deleted documents, 248–250  
  with Ribbon, 200  
sites, 48  
  working with documents, 240–248  
showing  
  contextual menus, 81  
  RSS feeds, 214–217  
  tasks in Gantt view, 120–121  
  views via Web Parts, 123  
Silverlight applications, 65  
Site Actions section, 136  
Site Administration section, 132  
site administrators, 180  
Site App Permissions link, 129–130  
Site Collection Administration section, 129, 137  
site collection administrators, 180–181  
site collections, securing, 171–173  
Site Columns link, 93, 131  
Site Content Types link, 131  
Site Pages library, 55  
Site Settings  
  about, 127  
  administration, 130  
  finding, 127–129  
  Look and Feel section, 134–136, 154. *See also* Look and Feel section  
  Search section, 133–134  
Site Actions section, 136  
Site Administration section, 132  
Site Collection Administration section, 137  
Users and Permissions section, 129–130  
Web Designer Galleries, 130–132  
Site Templates link, 136  
Site workflow, 290  
sites  
  adding apps to, 74–75  
  assigning permissions to, 167  
  changing icons, 154–156  
  changing look and logo, 49–50  
CodePlex, 345  
Delicious, 200  
Discussion Groups, 342  
Explore SharePoint, 330  
15 Hive, 345  
following documents from other, 191–192  
Fpweb.net, 25  
Google, 264  
hierarchy, 140  
members, 168  
Microsoft Cloud Blog, 343  
Microsoft Download Center, 288, 342  
Microsoft Events and Webcasts, 343  
Microsoft TechNet, 26, 57, 329–333, 341–342  
Microsoft Virtual Hard Disks, 344  
Microsoft Virtual Labs, 344  
MSDN (Microsoft Developer Network), 342  
Office 365 portal URL, 44  
Office Online, 342  
Office Team Blogs, 343  
organizing, 48–49  
owners, 168  
Plan for SharePoint, 330  
public, 10, 305–315  
Search Center, 270–272  
Searching MSDN Blogs, 343  
SharePoint, 16–17  
SharePoint Online Administration Center, 306  
SharePoint Team Blog, 343  
sharing, 48  
SkyDrive, 190  
TechNet, 291, 329–333, 341–342  
technical updates for book, 6  
templates, 17, 31–32  
tracking favorites, 192–194  
viewing permissions, 129, 181–184  
visitors, 168  
Wikipedia, 202  
Workflow Resource Center, 291, 333  
skills, foundation, 345

- SkyDrive  
adding documents to, 190–191  
saving with, 189–192
- smartphones, 20
- social bookmarking, 200
- Social Collaboration Web Part category, 66
- social computing, 21
- social media, compared with SharePoint, 15
- social networking  
about, 199  
alerts, 217–220  
blogs, 202–205  
discussion boards, 208–210  
feeds, 210–212  
microblogs, 210–212  
Microsoft Lync, 221  
My Site, 200  
reviewing policies, 337–338  
RSS feeds, 210–211, 212–217  
sharing with Ribbon, 200  
tagging, 200–202  
tracking with Ribbon, 200  
using SharePoint for, 10  
wikis, 205–208
- software development kits (SDKs), 342
- software platform, SharePoint Online, 29
- Solutions link, 132
- SPD (SharePoint Designer) 2013  
about, 36, 286, 288  
connecting to SharePoint site, 288–289  
creating views with, 113  
creating workflows, 290–291  
installing, 287  
managing access, 184  
modifying views with, 113
- split view, 120
- spreadsheets, importing as apps, 100–101
- SQL Server (Microsoft), 15
- Stage Properties dialog box, 278
- Standard view, 109–112
- Start a New Site dialog box, 194
- static navigation, configuring, 144–146
- status, 300–302
- storage space, in Office 365, 318
- strings, searching for using quotation marks, 259
- Style Resource Readers group, 171
- subsites, creating permissions for, 173–174
- Substring operator, 113
- syncing, 50
- 7 •
- tablets, viewing Office documents on, 226–227
- tagging, 59, 200–202
- targeting devices using channels, 225
- tasks, displaying in Gantt view, 120–121
- Team Site  
about, 39, 46–47  
accessing in Office 365, 44–46  
changing look and logo, 49–50  
changing navigation, 160–165  
choosing between IE, Chrome, and Firefox, 44  
creating SharePoint sites, 39–41  
organizing, 48–49  
requesting SharePoint sites, 41–42  
sharing sites, 48  
syncing and collaborating, 50  
template, 17, 32  
uploading documents, 47–48  
viewing in browsers, 43–44
- TechNet (website), 26, 57, 291, 329–333, 341–342
- Technical Stuff icon, 5
- technology stack, 15
- templates, 17, 31–32
- terminology, SharePoint, 17–22
- terms in proximity, 261–262
- Themes link, 132
- Tip icon, 5
- title, changing, 79
- Title, Description, and Logo link, 135
- Title column, 98–99
- Title property, 241
- Toolbar Type (Web Parts), 67
- toolkit, SharePoint as a, 11
- tools, SharePoint, 36
- Top Link Bar link, 135, 161–163

tracking  
 favorite sites, 192–194  
 locations, 226  
 with Ribbon, 200  
 Tree View, 135, 164–165  
 trending topic, 212  
 Twitter, 211

## • U •

updating  
 document properties using Quick Edit view, 236  
 page properties, 314  
 web pages, 310–324  
 uploading documents, 47–48, 233–234, 234–239  
 URLs, 42, 245  
 usability, 159–160, 264–269  
 user accounts, managing, 321–325  
 User Profiles, 319–320  
 users  
   accessing, 322–323  
   adding to groups, 168–170  
   checking permissions for, 178–179  
 Users and Permissions section, 129–130

## • V •

validating  
 data entry, 96–98  
 settings for, 86–87  
 verifying  
   status of approval workflows, 300–302  
   user permissions, 178–179  
 version histories, 231  
 versioning settings, 79–82  
 View Only permission level, 183  
 views and viewing  
   Access view, 109  
   Ad Hoc views, 119  
   of apps, 107–108  
   built-in views, 122  
   Calendar view, 109, 120  
   choosing columns for, 112–113

Classic view, 224  
 Contemporary view, 224  
 creating for small screens, 224–225  
 data in apps, 107–123  
 Datasheet view, 109, 117–119  
 displaying via Web Parts, 123  
 document properties, 241  
 documents in browsers, 246–247  
 features listing, 150–151  
 filtering apps with, 113–114  
 formats, 109  
 Gantt view, 109, 120–121  
 group permissions, 177–178  
 managing existing, 121–122  
 Mobile view, 122  
 modifying, 113, 121–122  
 Office documents on phones/tablets, 226–227  
 RSS feeds, 212–214  
 RSS view, 122  
 search results, 263–264  
 setting default, 122  
 SharePoint on mobile devices, 223–224  
 site permissions, 181–184  
 split view, 120  
 Standard view, 109–112  
 Team Sites in browser, 43–44  
 Virtual Box (Oracle), 344  
 virtual labs, building, 344  
 Visio, 286  
 visited (followed) link color, 159  
 visitors, site, 168  
 Visual Studio, 286, 345  
 VMWare's Workstation, 344

## • W •

Warning! icon, 5  
 web address, 42, 216  
 web application. *See websites*  
 web content management, 22  
 Web Designer Galleries, 130–132  
 Web Operations Management, 339  
 web pages  
   about, 51  
   adding, 310–324

- choosing between Wiki Content pages and Web Part pages, 53–54
- choosing Web Part pages, 53
- choosing wiki pages, 52–53
- creating new Web Part pages, 60
- creating new Wiki Content pages, 55–59
- editing, 313–314
- functionality, 33–34
- reviewing, 310–311
- reviewing sources of, 345
- Ribbon, 51–52
- updating, 310–324
- updating properties, 314
- Web Part Gallery, 64–66
- Web Parts
  - about, 33–34, 34–35, 61
  - adding to pages, 61–63
  - changing properties of, 67–69
  - choosing, 63–66
  - choosing between Wiki Content pages and, 53–54
  - choosing pages, 53
  - connecting, 69–71
  - creating new pages, 60
  - deleting, 69
  - displaying views via, 123
  - inserting, 62–63
  - link, 131
  - minimizing, 69
  - navigation using, 146–147
  - reusing, 339
- web platform, 14–15
- Web Solution Package (WSP), 132
- web-based software platform, 9
- websites
  - adding apps to, 74–75
  - assigning permissions to, 167
  - changing icons, 154–156
  - changing look and logo, 49–50
- CodePlex, 345
- Delicious, 200
- Discussion Groups, 342
- Explore SharePoint, 330
- 15 Hive, 345
- following documents from other, 191–192
- Fpweb.net, 25
- Google, 264
- hierarchy, 140
- members, 168
- Microsoft Cloud Blog, 343
- Microsoft Download Center, 288, 342
- Microsoft Events and Webcasts, 343
- Microsoft TechNet, 26, 57, 329–333, 341–342
- Microsoft Virtual Hard Disks, 344
- Microsoft Virtual Labs, 344
- MSDN (Microsoft Developer Network), 342
- Office 365 portal URL, 44
- Office Online, 342
- Office Team Blogs, 343
- organizing, 48–49
- owners, 168
- Plan for SharePoint, 330
- public, 10, 305–315
- Search Center, 270–272
- Searching MSDN Blogs, 343
- SharePoint, 16–17
- SharePoint Online Administration Center, 306
- SharePoint Team Blog, 343
- sharing, 48
- SkyDrive, 190
- TechNet, 291, 329–333, 341–342
- technical updates for book, 6
- templates, 17, 31–32
- tracking favorites, 192–194
- viewing permissions, 129, 181–184
- visitors, 168
- Wikipedia, 202
- Workflow Resource Center, 291, 333
- Welcome Page link, 136
- Wiki Content pages
  - about, 53
  - choosing between Web Part pages and, 53–54
  - creating new, 55–59
- Wikipedia (website), 202

- wikis
  - about, 33–34, 202–203
  - adding pages to, 205–206
  - adding tags to, 59
  - categorizing pages, 59
  - choosing pages, 52–53
  - creating, 205
  - editing pages, 206–208
  - managing pages, 58
- wildcard (\*) searches, 259
- Windows Explorer, uploading files using, 234–235
- Windows Phones, pushing content to, 225–226
- Windows Server 2012, 344
- Windows Workflow Foundation, 288
- Withee, Ken (author)
  - Microsoft Business Intelligence For Dummies*, 18, 332
  - Office 365 For Dummies*, 12, 23
  - SharePoint 2010 Development For Dummies*, 330–331
- WORDS operator, 262
- workflow
  - about, 285–286
  - approval options, 296–297
  - approving items, 298–300
  - checking status of approval, 300–302
  - configuring approval, 293
- connecting to SharePoint sites, 288–289
- content approval compared with
  - approval, 292–293
  - creating, 290–291
  - initiating, 297–298
  - out-of-the-box, 292–302
  - platforms, 287–288
  - setting up approval, 293–295
  - in SharePoint 2013, 286–287
  - SharePoint Designer, 288–291
- Workflow Manager, 287, 288
- Workflow Resource Center (website), 291, 333
- Workstation (VMWare), 344
- WSP (Web Solution Package), 132



XSLT (Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations) template, 217



YouTube videos, embedding, 56–57

